

# TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE

By

H. R. WILLIAMSON  
M.A., B.D., D.Lit.



THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD  
102 NEWGATE STREET  
LONDON, E. C. 1

*First Printed, 1923*  
*This Impression, 1958*

*Printed in Great Britain by Wyman & Sons Ltd.,  
London, Reading and Fakenham*

## PREFACE

MUCH of the world's progress in mutual understanding and co-operation depends on our being able to understand one another's speech, and on our acquaintance with each other's literature. With the idea of contributing a little towards these worthy objectives, I have prepared this short introduction to the language of the Chinese people, many of whom I have learned to respect, and whose culture I greatly admire.

I am conscious of many imperfections in the work, which has been prepared mainly in the course of long journeys.

I am greatly indebted to many friends who have co-operated with me in preparing the book for publication. Such include Mr. and Mrs. Su Cheng of the Chinese section of the B.B.C. who, with other Chinese co-workers there, have helped with the Chinese translation of the dialogues. In addition Mr. Su has written the whole of the Chinese characters at the end of the book. Professor Edwards of the School of Oriental Studies has given me many helpful suggestions, and I have found Mr. Simon's book on the Study and Writing of Chinese Characters most useful. The Rev. A. J. Garnier, formerly General Secretary of the Christian Literature Society for China, has rendered generous help in the reading of the proofs. He has also prepared the valuable Dictionary and Character

Index at the end of the volume. I owe much also to my wife and daughter Evelyn for work on the manuscript itself.

Finally I should like to express my thanks to my publishers for their patience in waiting for the manuscript and for many courtesies attendant upon the preparation of the work for publication.

H. R. WILLIAMSON.



## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	6
SPELLING CHART OF CHINESE WORDS . . . . .	22
INTRODUCTION TO THE DIALOGUES—NOTES ON THE TONES . . . . .	27
 <b>DIALOGUES</b>	
1. A friend arrives . . . . .	30
2. The Chinese teacher arrives . . . . .	38
3. Conversation with Chinese teacher . . . . .	44
4. Illustrating basic rules A. . . . .	52
5.       "       "       "       " B. . . . .	60
6. Discussion on domestic matters . . . . .	66
7. A Chinese and a foreigner meet . . . . .	72
8.       "       "       "       " (cont.) . . . . .	84
9. On the use of the numerals, A & B . . . . .	92
10. Discussing the time, etc. . . . .	104
11.       "       " . . . . .	112
12. Windows, doors, wages and the well . . . . .	120
13. Domestic matters, (various) . . . . .	132
14. Weights and Measures . . . . .	142
15. A talk with the cook . . . . .	150
16. Hiring a rickshaw . . . . .	158
17. An intimate personal matter . . . . .	164
18. Expressions of comparison . . . . .	174

	PAGE
19. At the drapery store . . . . .	182
20. At the shoe shop . . . . .	190
21. Lighting, heating, etc. . . . .	196
22. Washing, waking, wages, etc. . . . .	202
23. The week's work in the home . . . . .	208
24. Talking accounts with the cook . . . . .	216
25. Travelling by road . . . . .	224
26. Travelling by train . . . . .	234
27. Travelling by steamer and train . . . . .	244
28. Some common idioms . . . . .	252
29. Clothing and personal matters . . . . .	258
30. Discussion on tones, dialects, etc. . . . .	264
31. On time idioms . . . . .	272
32. Talk with a Chinese official . . . . .	278
33. Doctor and patient . . . . .	288
34. Personal characteristics and relationships . . . . .	296
35. On scissors, the tailor, etc. . . . .	302
36. Idiomatic phrases . . . . .	308
37. A walk in the country . . . . .	314
38. Proverbs . . . . .	324
39. In the city . . . . .	332
40. On war and peace . . . . .	342
CHINESE TEXT OF THE DIALOGUES . . . . .	353
GRAMMAR NOTES . . . . .	425
CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM . . . . .	487
HOW TO USE A DICTIONARY FROM THE RADICALS . . . . .	503
INDEX TO CHINESE CHARACTERS ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED . . . . .	517

## INTRODUCTION

THIS book is issued in the hope that it will be useful to many who desire to acquaint themselves with the elements of the spoken and written language of the Chinese people. As a student of the language for nearly forty years I am well acquainted with the difficulties which confront the student who may have to work without the aid of a Chinese teacher. But I can assure the student at the outset, that if he or she will persevere for a period of six months, concentrating for two hours daily, genuine and satisfying progress will be made.

I recommend strongly that two friends should if possible study together. The main section of the book consists of forty dialogues. These should be recited aloud. If you can form a small group for study, the dialogues might be recited by couples in turn for the benefit and criticism of the rest. If you are working alone, by all means read the dialogues aloud, and endeavour to memorise them. As they are arranged in the main as connected discourses, memorising should be quite feasible.

If there should be a Chinese who knows the National Language (kuo yü) in your neighbourhood, avail yourself of his help. Your main difficulty will lie in acquiring the correct intonation of the words, and the right rhythm of the phrases and sentences. The best progress in this connection will be achieved by reading or conversing with a Chinese.

There are about 1,200 different characters in the book. These, if thoroughly learned, will enable the student to converse freely on matters of everyday importance. I urge the student to *write* the Chinese characters as the best means of memorising them, as the book is designed

to enable the student to read and write **Basic Chinese** as well as to speak it.

Don't let the difficulty of intonation unduly discourage you. For your comfort let me say that intonation varies considerably in different parts of China, and that the Chinese themselves experience difficulty in this respect as they move about the country.

### PLAN AND SCOPE OF THE BOOK

#### 1. *Sound Tables, Spelling Chart, Romanisation, Tone-marks.*

After reading this Introductory Chapter, the student should make himself thoroughly acquainted with the Table of Sounds and the Spelling Chart. From these it will be seen that there are 409 different sounds in the language, and that these are built up from sixty-two basic syllables, either independently or in combination.

No system of Romanisation has as yet been devised which reproduces the sounds of the Chinese language with perfect accuracy. But the divergencies between the sounds as actually spoken, and as reproduced by the system of Romanisation adopted in this book, are so slight that no discouragement need be felt on that account.

The system of Romanisation adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade. The writer has found that system extremely helpful himself, and many of the better known writers of Chinese text-books and dictionaries, both British and American, like Hillier, Goodrich, Soothill, Giles, Wells-Williams and MacGillivray, adopted it. Dictionaries and text-books by these noted sinologists are likely to be on the market for many years to come. The Chinese Government has recently promulgated a new system of Romanisation which aims at showing the tone as well as the actual pronunciation of the words without extraneous aids. But as yet there are no dictionaries published in that particular system, and that

is a serious obstacle to those who want to study Chinese now.

The tones are marked by numbers, 1, 2, 3 and 4, both in the vocabularies which accompany the dialogues, and in connection with the Chinese character index which is included at the end of the book. This also is in line with the method adopted by the aforementioned scholars.

## 2. *The Dialogues.*

There are forty dialogues on various topics designed to make the student familiar with the terminology of everyday affairs, domestic, social, travel, personal, political and the like. The selection of the themes of these dialogues has been guided by a desire to meet the need of a student making his first contacts with the Chinese people.

Chinese is a living language, and is constantly changing in form and terminology. I have sought with expert Chinese assistance to select phrases and sentences as they are spoken by Chinese of average intelligence to-day. A few phrases of modern newspaper Chinese are introduced here and there, and I have not ignored altogether the older and picturesque language of Chinese etiquette. But the aim of the writer is to make the student feel at home with the ordinary folk in China to-day. The language is rich in proverbial expressions, and so I have devoted one lesson to that particular aspect of the colloquial.

## 3. *The Vocabularies.*

Each dialogue is accompanied by a vocabulary, which includes the new characters as they appear in Romanised and Chinese form, with their meaning and intonation. Most Chinese characters have many meanings. The vocabularies do not give exhaustive definitions of the characters. But the particular meaning of the character as found in the lesson under review is given, together

with the other more important meanings as found in the popular dictionaries.

#### 4. *The Notes.*

Each dialogue also is followed by a few short notes, consisting chiefly of idiomatical and grammatical comments, designed to introduce the student gradually to the chief idioms and rules.

#### 5. *The Chinese Text of the Dialogues.*

This section follows the dialogues in the Romanised form. Some students will perhaps choose to confine themselves to the Romanised section, and the writer knows many good speakers of Chinese who scarcely recognise a single Chinese character. But it is hoped that the student will include this section in his studies, as it will not only add to his interest in the spoken language, but will also prepare him for reading a Chinese newspaper, most of which are now printed in the colloquial style.

The two sections are separated in the book so that the student can test himself by trying to reproduce the Chinese from the English and Romanised section, and *vice versa*. That is one of the most profitable ways of learning the language. The student will note that the lessons in the Chinese section read from right to left and from top to bottom of the page. That is the way that Chinese is printed.

#### 6. *The Grammar Section.*

The writer has endeavoured to introduce the student to the main rules of grammar gradually and piecemeal in the dialogues. But it seemed advisable to gather up the basic rules in this special section, which has been kept as compact as possible. The student can refer to this section at any time in the course of his study. The main purpose, however, in the mind of the student should

be to memorise the dialogues, sentence by sentence, phrase by phrase. If that is done the rules of grammar will be unconsciously acquired. Do not be too analytic in your approach to Chinese. Remember that a sentence in Chinese is the equivalent of a sentence in English. In other words, acquaint yourself with ideas and thoughts as they are expressed, rather than with individual words.

#### *7. The Writing of Chinese Characters.*

All the characters found in the dialogues have been reproduced as a Chinese writes them, and collated at the end of the book in the order in which they appear in the body of the book. The short introduction to this section gives the student the main rules of writing Chinese. He will be well advised to copy these characters, not only for the artistic interest which this will impart, but also for the aid it will afford to the memory. May I repeat that the best way to memorise the Chinese characters is to write them.

This section also forms a dictionary of the book, and is followed by a few paragraphs to guide the student in the use of a Chinese dictionary by means of the 214 Radicals.

In conclusion let me say that anyone of average intelligence and perseverance can gain a working knowledge of Chinese. So in the words of one of the Chinese proverbs which you will find in the book: "Don't mind going slow, as long as you keep going."

## GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION

This Chart or Guide represents an attempt to reproduce in the letters of the English alphabet the sounds of Chinese words as they are pronounced in the National or Official language. Admittedly any attempt of this kind is open to criticism, as the pronunciation of certain Chinese words cannot be exactly reproduced by the letters of the English alphabet. But the following table, comprising 409 different sounds, will be found to approximate sufficiently closely to the generally accepted Chinese pronunciation.

The system of "orthography" adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade, which is found in the popular dictionaries and text-books produced by British and American scholars, like Wells-Williams, Giles, MacGillivray, Hillier, Soothill, etc.

The famous dictionary of K'ang-Hsi contains over 40,000 different Chinese characters. Giles' dictionary contains 10,859. But the actual number of different sounds (if we exclude for the moment the device of "intonation", which multiplies the sounds by anything from four to eight times this number, according to the district in which the language is spoken), is just over four hundred, accepting the limitation referred to in the first paragraph above.

The multiplication of basic sounds arrived at by "intonation" will be referred to separately.

Here then are the 409 different sounds found in Chinese.

No.	Written form.	Approximate sound in English spelling.
-----	---------------	--

1. A. Ah!
2. Ai or Ngai. I as in bind, or ngai, the -ng being the final sound of -ing.
3. An or Ngan. As in man.



- | No. | Written form.   | Approximate sound in English spelling.  |
|-----|-----------------|---|
| 4.  | Ang or Ngang.   | Ahng.   |
| 5.  | Ao or Ngao.     | Ow as in how, owl, etc.   |
| 6.  | Cha.            | Jah as in jar.  |
| 7.  | Ch'a.           | Chah as in Charge, Charlie.   |
| 8.  | Chai.           | Ji, the -j sound being the equivalent of the soft g in gibe.                                |
| 9.  | Ch'ai.          | Chi as in China.  |
| 10. | Chan.           | Jan as in January.  |
| 11. | Ch'an.          | Chann as in channel.  |
| 12. | Chang.          | Jahng.  |
| 13. | Ch'ang.         | Chahng.   |
| 14. | Chao.           | Jou as in joust.  |
| 15. | Ch'ao.          | Chow, the Peking dog, or chow as in chowder.  |
| 16. | Chê.            | Jer as in Jeremiah, the -ch being the equivalent of the soft g in germ.                     |
| 17. | Ch'ê.           | Cher as in cherish.   |
| 18. | Chên.           | Jun as in junk.   |
| 19. | Ch'ên.          | Chun as in chunk.   |
| 20. | Chêng.          | Jung as in junction.  |
| 21. | Ch'êng.         | Chung, the "ung" as in bung.  |
| 22. | Chi.            | Jee as in jeep.   |
| 23. | Ch'i.           | Chee as in cheese.  |
| 24. | Chia.           | Jyah, the "y" being as short -i in bin, the whole being something like the -jia in Fujiama. |
| 25. | Ch'ia.          | Chyah, the medial "y" being like short -i as in chin.                                       |
| 26. | Ch'iai or K'ai. | Chi-eye, the -i being short as in chin, the -kai as in kite.                                |
| 27. | Chiang.         | Jiahng, the -i being short.   |
| 28. | Ch'iang.        | Chiahng, the -i being short.  |
| 29. | Chiao.          | Jiow, the -i being short and "ow" as in how.  |
| 30. | Ch'iao.         | Chiow, the -i being short and "ow" as in how.   |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.   |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 81. | Chieh.        | Jyeh, the -yeh being equivalent of -ye in yes, preceded by a short -i, e.g., jiye, the whole sound being like -gia in collegian.   |
| 82. | Ch'ieh.       | Chyeh, the yeh being equivalent of ye in yes, preceded by a short -i.  |
| 33. | Chien.        | Jyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin.  |
| 84. | Ch'ien.       | Chyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin.   |
| 85. | Chih.         | Jirr, like the initial sound in giraffe.   |
| 36. | Ch'ih.        | Chirr, the nearest being the chir in chiro-podist.   |
| 37. | Chin.         | Jin, the -j being like soft -g in ginger.  |
| 38. | Ch'in.        | Chin as in English or as in chink.   |
| 39. | Ching.        | Jing as in jingle.   |
| 40. | Ch'ing.       | Ching as heard in chink, without the final "k".  |
| 41. | Chio.         | Jeo or as -gio in prodigious.  |
| 42. | Ch'io.        | Cheo, the -eo as in geology.   |
| 43. | Chiu.         | Ju or Jew or Jioo, but the short -i sound must be pronounced between the -j and the -oo.   |
| 44. | Ch'iu.        | Chu or chioo, the -i being short as in bin, and the -oo sounding like -oo in ooze (cf. chew). For the above two sounds, parallels may be found in deuce, the -eu coming fairly close to the -iu of the Chinese, or tune, where the -u approximates fairly closely to the -iu in the Chinese. |
| 45. | Chiung.       | Jyung, in which the -y is like a short -i as in bin, and the -ung is sounded like -ong in mongrel. In fact it is practically the Lancashire hung as in hunger, hungry and the like.  |
| 46. | Ch'iuung.     | Chyung. And see the last.  |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.  |
|-----|---------------|---|
| 47. | Cho.          | Joh as in John, but drawled slightly like jorn, horn.   |
| 48. | Ch'o.         | Ch'oh, the -oh as in chores.  |
| 49. | Chou.         | Joe as in Jones.  |
| 50. | Ch'ou.        | Choe as in anchovy.   |
| 51. | Chu.          | Ju, the -u as -oo in moon. (N.B.—There is no suggestion of a short -i after the J as suggested for chiu above.) |
| 52. | Ch'u.         | Choo as in choose.  |
| 53. | Chua.         | Jwah.   |
| 54. | Ch'ua.        | Chwah.  |
| 55. | Chuai.        | Jwi, the -i being long as in wine.  |
| 56. | Ch'uai.       | Chwi, the -i being long as in wine.   |
| 57. | Chuan.        | Jwan, the -an as in man.  |
| 58. | Ch'uan.       | Chwan, the -an as in man.   |
| 59. | Chuang.       | Jwahng.   |
| 60. | Ch'uang.      | Chwahng.  |
| 61. | Chui.         | Jway.   |
| 62. | Ch'ui.        | Chway.  |
| 63. | Chun.         | Jun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).   |
| 64. | Ch'un.        | Chun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).  |
| 65. | Chung.        | Jung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).  |
| 66. | Ch'ung.       | Chung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).   |
| 67. | Ch'uo.        | Chwo, the -o being short as in lock.  |
| 68. | Chü.          | Jü, the -ü being as in French. Say -oo with pursed lips, the tip of the tongue being close to the front teeth.  |
| 69. | Ch'ü.         | Chü, the -ü being French as in the last.  |
| 70. | Chüan.        | Jüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man.  |
| 71. | Ch'üan.       | Chüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound 'in English spelling.   |
|------|---------------|---|
| 72.  | Chüeh.        | Jüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.  |
| 73.  | Ch'üeh.       | Chüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.   |
| 74.  | Chün.         | Jün, the -ü being French and -i very short.   |
| 75.  | Ch'un.        | Chün, the -ü being French and -i very short.  |
| 76.  | Ê or Ngê.     | Er as in hesitant speech, or as -er in herd.  |
| 77.  | Ên or Ngên.   | Un as in under.   |
| 78.  | Êrh.          | Er as in her, tip of tongue pointing to roof of the mouth and mouth slightly open.                      |
| 79.  | Fa.           | Fah as in father.   |
| 80.  | Fan.          | As in fancy.  |
| 81.  | Fang.         | Fahng.  |
| 82.  | Fei.          | Fay as in faint.  |
| 83.  | Fên.          | Fun as in funny.  |
| 84.  | Fêng.         | Fung, the fun as in English.  |
| 85.  | Fo.           | For as in fortune, or the -o as -oa in hoary.   |
| 86.  | Fou.          | Foe, the -oe sounded as the -o in photo.  |
| 87.  | Fu.           | Foo as in fool.   |
| 88.  | Ha.           | Hah as the har in harness, with the -r scarcely sounded.  |
| 89.  | Hai.          | Hi as in high.  |
| 90.  | Han.          | Han as in handy.  |
| 91.  | Hang.         | Hahng.  |
| 92.  | Hao.          | As in how.  |
| 93.  | Hê.           | Hu as in huddle.  |
| 94.  | Hei.          | As in hay.  |
| 95.  | Hên.          | As in hun.  |
| 96.  | Hêng.         | As in hung.   |
| 97.  | Ho.           | Hoar as in hoary.   |
| 98.  | Hou.          | As hoe.   |
| 99.  | Hsi.          | She, although the -h is a little lighter than in the English, with the upper teeth protruding slightly. |
| 100. | Hsia.         | Shya, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -a being short as in sham.               |
| 101. | Hsiang.       | Shyahng, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -a being long as in father.           |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.  |
|------|---------------|---|
| 102. | Hsiao.        | Shyow, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ow as in how.                                    |
| 103. | Hsieh.        | Shye, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ye as in yes.                                     |
| 104. | Hsien.        | Shyen, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and yen like the Japanese coin.                           |
| 105. | Hsin.         | Shin, the -h being light.   |
| 106. | Hsing.        | Shing, the -h being light.  |
| 107. | Hsio.         | Sheo, the -h being light, almost as in sheol, with -e like short -i.  |
| 108. | Hsiu.         | Shyou, the -h being light and you as in English.  |
| 109. | Hsiung.       | Shyung, the -h being light, the -y being like short -in in bin, and the -un in -ung being like the -on in motion. |
| 110. | Hsü.          | Shü, the -ü being the French -ü.  |
| 111. | Hsüan.        | Shüan, the -ü being the French -ü and the -an as in man.  |
| 112. | Hsüeh.        | Shüe, the -ü being the French -ü and the -e as in yes.  |
| 113. | Hsün.         | Shüin, the -ü being the French -ü and the -i short as in pin.   |
| 114. | Hu.           | Hoo as in hoot.   |
| 115. | Hua.          | Hwah.   |
| 116. | Huai.         | Why as in English.  |
| 117. | Huan.         | Hwan, with the -an as in can.   |
| 118. | Huang.        | Hwahng.   |
| 119. | Hui.          | Hway, the -way as in sway.  |
| 120. | Hun.          | 'Hun, the -un being like the -on in motion.   |
| 121. | Hung.         | Hung, the -un being like the -on in motion.   |
| 122. | Huo.          | Hwo, the -wo being like the -wo in wonder, or the whole like -hoa in hoary.                                       |
| 123. | I.            | Ee as in weed.  |
| 124. | Jan.          | Ran, the J being practically the English R.   |
| 125. | Jang.         | Rahng, the J being practically the English R.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.  |
|------|---------------|---|
| 126. | Jao.          | Row, the J being practically the English R and -ow as in how.                                     |
| 127. | Jê.           | Ru as in rubble.  |
| 128. | Jên.          | Run as in English.  |
| 129. | Jéng.         | Rung as in English.   |
| 130. | Jih.          | Rirr, the -irr being like the -hir in chiropodist, with the lightest possible emphasis on the -r. |
| 131. | Jo.           | Ro as in roster, robin, etc.  |
| 132. | Jou.          | Roe as in English.  |
| 133. | Ju.           | Rue as in English.  |
| 134. | Juan.         | Ruan, the -u being neither short nor long and the -an short as in man.                            |
| 135. | Jui.          | Ruay, the -u being neither short nor long and the -ay as in hay.                                  |
| 136. | Jun.          | Run, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion.  |
| 137. | Jung.         | Rung, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion.   |
| 138. | Ka.           | Gah as in garden.   |
| 139. | K'a.          | Kah as in card.   |
| 140. | Kai.          | Gi as the first syllable of gynecology.   |
| 141. | K'ai.         | Ki as in kind.  |
| 142. | Kan.          | Gan as in began.  |
| 143. | K'an.         | Kan as the English can.   |
| 144. | Kang.         | Gahng, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ah as the long -a in father.                       |
| 145. | K'ang.        | Kahng, the -ah being like long -a in father.  |
| 146. | Kao.          | Gow, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ow as in cow.  |
| 147. | K'ao.         | Cow as in English.  |
| 148. | Kei.          | Gay as in English.  |
| 149. | Kên.          | Gun as in English.  |
| 150. | K'ên.         | Kun sounded as the first syllable in country.   |
| 151. | Kéng.         | Gung, the gun being as in English.  |
| 152. | K'éng.        | Kung, the -un as in English gun.  |
| 153. | Ko.           | Go as in gore, with -o modified by -r.  |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.                                  |
|------|---------------|---|
| 154. | K'o.          | Ko as in cord, with the -ó modified by the -r.                          |
| 155. | Kou.          | Go as in English.   |
| 156. | K'ou.         | As coa in coat.   |
| 157. | Ku.           | Goo, the -g being hard as in gum and the -oo as in moon.                |
| 158. | K'u.          | Coo as in English.  |
| 159. | Kua.          | Gwah, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah long as in father.        |
| 160. | K'ua.         | Kwah as in quarrel.   |
| 161. | Kuai.         | Gwi, the -g being hard as in guy and the -i as in wine.                 |
| 162. | K'uai.        | Kwi, the -i being long as in wine, the whole as -qui in quite.          |
| 163. | Kuan.         | Gwan, the -g being hard as in gun and -an as in man.                    |
| 164. | K'uan.        | Kwan, the -an as in man.  |
| 165. | Kuang.        | Gwahng, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah like long -a in father. |
| 166. | K'uang.       | Kwahng, the -ah like long -a in father.                                 |
| 167. | Kuei.         | Gway, hard -g.  |
| 168. | K'uei.        | Kway, as the -qua in equator.   |
| 169. | Kun.          | Gun, -g being hard and -un as the -on in motion.                        |
| 170. | K'un.         | Kun, the -un as the -on in motion.                                      |
| 171. | Kung.         | Gung, the -g being hard and the -un as -on in motion.                   |
| 172. | K'ung.        | Kung, the -un as the -on in motion.                                     |
| 173. | Kuo.          | Gwo, hard -g and the -wo like the carter's whoa!                        |
| 174. | K'uo.         | Kwo. See 173; like the -qua in equal.                                   |
| 175. | La.           | As la in pentatonic scale.  |
| 176. | Lai.          | Lie as in English.  |
| 177. | Lan.          | As in languor.  |
| 178. | Lang.         | Lahng.  |
| 179. | Lao.          | Low, the -ow as in cow.   |
| 180. | Lê.           | Lo as in gallon.  |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.                     |
|------|---------------|--|
| 181. | Lei.          | Lay as in English.   |
| 182. | Lêng.         | Lung as in English.  |
| 183. | Li.           | Lee as in leeward.   |
| 184. | Lia.          | Liah, the -i short as in gin, the -ah long as in yard.     |
| 185. | Liang.        | Liahng. See 182.   |
| 186. | Liao.         | Liow, the -i short and the -ow as in cow.                  |
| 187. | Lieh.         | Lieh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt.          |
| 188. | Lien.         | Lien, the -i short as in bin and the -en as in hen.        |
| 189. | Lin.          | As in linen.   |
| 190. | Ling.         | As in filling.   |
| 191. | Liu.          | Lioo, the -i being short as in bin and the -oo as in ooze. |
| 192. | Lo.           | Like the -lo in lord.                                      |
| 193. | Lou.          | Low as in below.   |
| 194. | Lu.           | Like the -loo in balloon.                                  |
| 195. | Luan.         | Lu-an, the -lu as the -loo in look and -an as in man.      |
| 196. | Lun.          | The -un as the -on in motion.                              |
| 197. | Lung.         | The -un as the -on in motion.                              |
| 198. | Lü.           | The French -ü.   |
| 199. | Lüan.         | The French -ü and -an as in man.                           |
| 200. | Lüeh.         | The French -ü and the -eh as the -u in butt.               |
| 201. | Ma.           | As in English. Ma, nearly mar.                             |
| 202. | Mai.          | My as in English.  |
| 203. | Man.          | As in English.   |
| 204. | Mang.         | Mahng.   |
| 205. | Mao.          | Mow, the -ow as in how.                                    |
| 206. | Mei.          | As in English may.   |
| 207. | Mên.          | As Mon in Monday.  |
| 208. | Mêng.         | The -en as -on in Monday.                                  |
| 209. | Mi.           | As English me.   |
| 210. | Miao.         | Miow, the -i being short as in bin and the -ow as in cow.  |



- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.   |
|------|---------------|--|
| 211. | Mieh.         | Mieh, the -i being short as in bin and the -eh as -u in butt.                                    |
| 212. | Mien.         | Mi-en, the -i being short as in bin and the -en as in hen.                                       |
| 213. | Min.          | As in English mint.  |
| 214. | Ming.         | As in English looming.   |
| 215. | Miu.          | As in English mew.   |
| 216. | Mo.           | More.  |
| 217. | Mou.          | Mow a meadow.  |
| 218. | Mu.           | Moo as cows do.  |
| 219. | Na.           | As in English nasty.   |
| 220. | Nai.          | Nigh.  |
| 221. | Nan.          | As in English Nancy.   |
| 222. | Nang.         | Nahng.   |
| 223. | Nao.          | Now, meaning at present.   |
| 224. | Nei.          | Nay.   |
| 225. | Nen.          | Nun, as in English.  |
| 226. | Neng.         | Nung, the -ung as in lung.   |
| 227. | Ni.           | Knee.  |
| 228. | Niang.        | Ni-ahng, the -i being short as in bin and the -ah long as in father.                             |
| 229. | Niao.         | Ni-ow, the -i short and the -ow as in cow.   |
| 230. | Nieh.         | Ni-eh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt. An alternative would be the -ia in brilliant. |
| 231. | Nien.         | Ni-en, the -i short and the -en as in hen.   |
| 232. | Nin.          | As in nincompoop.  |
| 233. | Ning.         | Ning as in beginning.  |
| 234. | Nio.          | Nio as in quaternion.  |
| 235. | Niu.          | New as in English.   |
| 236. | No.           | Noah of the Ark.   |
| 237. | Nou.          | No as in English.  |
| 238. | Nü.           | Noo as in noon.  |
| 239. | Nüan.         | Nüan, the -ü as in French and the -an as in man.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.                 |
|------|---------------|--|
| 240. | Nung.         | Nung, the -un as -on in motion.                        |
| 241. | Nü.           | Nü, the French -ü.                                     |
| 242. | O or Ngo.     | Oar as in English, or Ngoar.                           |
| 243. | Ou or Ngou.   | Owe as in English, or Ngowe.                           |
| 244. | Pa.           | Bah! as in English.                                    |
| 245. | P'a.          | Pa as in English.                                      |
| 246. | Pai.          | Buy.   |
| 247. | P'ai.         | Pie as in piebald.                                     |
| 248. | Pan.          | Ban as in band.  |
| 249. | P'an.         | Pan as in English.                                     |
| 250. | Pang.         | Bahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father.         |
| 251. | P'ang.        | Pahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father.         |
| 252. | Pao.          | Bow, the -ow as in how.                                |
| 253. | P'ao.         | Pow as in powder.                                      |
| 254. | Pei.          | Bay as in English.                                     |
| 255. | P'ei.         | Pay as in English.                                     |
| 256. | Pên.          | Bun as in bundle.                                      |
| 257. | P'ên.         | Pun as in pundit.                                      |
| 258. | Pêng.         | Bung as in English.                                    |
| 259. | P'êng.        | Pung, the -ung as in the last.                         |
| 260. | Pi.           | Bee.   |
| 261. | P'i.          | Pea.   |
| 262. | Piao.         | Bi-ow, the -i being short as in bin and -ow as in how. |
| 263. | P'iao.        | Pi-ow, the -i being short as in pin and -ow as in how. |
| 264. | Pieh.         | Bi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.       |
| 265. | P'ieh.        | Pi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.       |
| 266. | Pien.         | Bi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental.           |
| 267. | P'ien.        | Pi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental.           |
| 268. | Pin.          | Bin as in English.                                     |
| 269. | P'in.         | Pin as in English.                                     |
| 270. | Ping.         | Bing as in scrubbing.                                  |
| 271. | P'ing.        | Ping as in shopping.                                   |
| 272. | Po.           | Boa as in feather-boas.                                |

No.	Written form.	Approximate sound in English spelling.
273.	P'o.	Por as in port but the -r only lightly sounded.
274.	Pou.	Bow, rhyming with show.
275.	P'ou.	Poe, Edgar Allan, rhyming with toe.
276.	Pu.	Bu as in bush.
277.	P'u.	Poo as in pool.
278.	Sa.	Sah, sounded as in sartorial, with light -r sound.
279.	Sai.	Sigh as in sight.
280.	San.	San as in sanatorium.
281.	Sang.	Sahng, the -ah long as the -a in father.
282.	Sao.	Sow, rhyming with now.
283.	Sê.	Su as in sun.
284.	Sên.	Sun as in English.
285.	Sêng.	Sung as in English.
286.	Sha.	Shah of Persia.
287.	Shai.	Shy as in English.
288.	Shan.	Shan as in shanty.
289.	Shang.	Shahng, the -ah like long -a in father.
290.	Shao.	Shou as in shout, rhyming with snout.
291.	Shê.	Like shir in shirt.
292.	Shên.	Shun as in English.
293.	Shêng.	Shung, the -un as in the last.
294.	Shih.	Shih, almost like the chi- in chivalry, but with the -i carrying a slight -r sound after it.
295.	Shou.	Show as in English.
296.	Shu.	Shoe as in English.
297.	Shua.	Shwah.
298.	Shuai.	Shwy, the -wy as in why.
299.	Shuan.	Shwan, the -an as in man.
300.	Shuang.	Shwahng.
301.	Shui.	Shway.
302.	Shun.	Sh-un, the -un as the -on in motion.
303.	Shuo.	Shwo, the -wo as in won.
304.	So.	Soa as in soar.
305.	Sou.	Sow, rhyming with mow.

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.   |
|------|---------------|--|
| 306. | Ssu.          | The sound when men are hissing, Ssss . . . ssss . . . followed by the -u lightly sounded. If you say bus as in omnibus, carry on the final -s with the sound of the preceding -u to follow; you will get somewhere near the correct pronunciation. |
| 307. | Su.           | Soo as in soothing.  |
| 308. | Suan.         | Swan as in swank.  |
| 309. | Sui.          | Sway.  |
| 310. | Sun.          | S followed by -un with the sound of -on in motion.   |
| 311. | Sung.         | S followed by -un as -on in motion and -g.   |
| 312. | Ta.           | Dah as in dart, but with -r very lightly sounded.  |
| 313. | T'a.          | Ta as the child says thank you.  |
| 314. | Tai.          | Dye as in English.   |
| 315. | T'ai.         | Tie as in English.   |
| 316. | Tan.          | Dan as in Daniel.  |
| 317. | T'an.         | Tan as in English.   |
| 318. | Tang.         | Dahng.   |
| 319. | T'ang.        | T'ahng.  |
| 320. | Tao.          | Dow, rhyming with now as in down.  |
| 321. | T'ao.         | Tow, rhyming with now as in town.  |
| 322. | Tê.           | Der, almost as the -der in yonder, but with -r scarcely sounded.   |
| 323. | T'ê.          | Ter, almost as the -ter in daughter, but with -r scarcely sounded.   |
| 324. | Tei.          | Day.   |
| 325. | T'ei.         | Tay, the river of that name.   |
| 326. | Têng.         | Dung as in English.  |
| 327. | T'êng.        | Tung as in tungsten.   |
| 328. | Ti.           | Dee, the river of that name.   |
| 329. | T'i.          | Tea as in English.   |
| 330. | Tiao.         | Di-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how.   |
| 331. | T'iao.        | Ti-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how.   |
| 332. | Tieh.         | Di-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.                                 |
|------|---------------|--|
| 333. | T'ieh.        | Ti-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in <i>brilliant</i> .               |
| 334. | Tien.         | Di-en, short -i as in <i>bin</i> , with -en as in <i>hen</i> .         |
| 335. | T'ien.        | Ti-en, short -i as in <i>bin</i> , with -en as in <i>hen</i> .         |
| 336. | Ting.         | Ding as in <i>pudding</i> .  |
| 337. | T'ing.        | Ting as in <i>putting</i> .  |
| 338. | To.           | Doa, almost like the -dore in <i>adore</i> , with -r lightly stressed. |
| 339. | T'o.          | Toa, almost like <i>tore</i> , but -r scarcely stressed.               |
| 340. | Tou.          | Doe as in <i>English</i> .   |
| 341. | T'ou.         | Toe as in <i>English</i> .   |
| 342. | Tsa.          | Dzah, nearly like <i>Tsar</i> of <i>Russia</i> .                       |
| 343. | Ts'a.         | Tsah.  |
| 344. | Tsai.         | Dzigh, rhyming with <i>sigh</i> .                                      |
| 345. | Ts'ai.        | Tsigh, rhyming with <i>sigh</i> .                                      |
| 346. | Tsan.         | Dzan, the -an as in <i>man</i> .                                       |
| 347. | Ts'an.        | Tsan, the -an as in <i>man</i> .                                       |
| 348. | Tsang.        | Dzahng.  |
| 349. | Ts'ang.       | Tsahng.  |
| 350. | Tsao.         | Dzow, the -ow as in <i>how</i> .                                       |
| 351. | Ts'ao.        | Tsow, the -ow as in <i>how</i> .                                       |
| 352. | Tsê.          | Dzu, the -u sound as in <i>sun</i> .                                   |
| 353. | Ts'ê.         | Tsu, the -u sound as in <i>sun</i> .                                   |
| 354. | Tsei.         | Dzay, rhyming with <i>hay</i> .  |
| 355. | Tsên.         | Dzun, rhyming with <i>run</i> .  |
| 356. | Ts'ên.        | Tsun, rhyming with <i>run</i> .  |
| 357. | Tsêng.        | Dzung, rhyming with <i>bung</i> .                                      |
| 358. | Ts'êng.       | Tsung, rhyming with <i>bung</i> .                                      |
| 359. | Tso.          | Dzoa, rhyming with <i>boa</i> .  |
| 360. | Ts'o.         | Tsoa, rhyming with <i>boa</i> .  |
| 361. | Tsou.         | Dzoe, rhyming with <i>doe</i> .  |
| 362. | Ts'ou.        | Tsoe, rhyming with <i>toe</i> .  |
| 363. | Tsu.          | Dzoo, rhyming with <i>zoo</i> .  |
| 364. | Ts'u.         | Ts'oo, rhyming with <i>too</i> .                                       |
| 365. | Tsuan.        | Dzwan, the -an as in <i>man</i> .                                      |
| 366. | Ts'uan.       | Tswan, the -an as in <i>man</i> .                                      |
| 367. | Tsui.         | Dzway.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.  |
|------|---------------|---|
| 368. | Ts'ui.        | Tsway.  |
| 369. | Tsun.         | Dzun, the -un as the -on in motion.   |
| 370. | Ts'un.        | Tsun, the -un as the -on in motion.   |
| 371. | Tsung.        | Dzung, the -un as the -on in motion.  |
| 372. | Ts'ung.       | Tsung, the -un as the -on in motion.  |
| 373. | Tu.           | Do as in English.   |
| 374. | T'u.          | Too as in English.  |
| 375. | Tuan.         | Dwan, the -an as in man.  |
| 376. | T'uan.        | Twan, the -an as in man.  |
| 377. | Tui.          | Dway.   |
| 378. | T'ui.         | Tway.   |
| 379. | Tun.          | Dun, but with the -un as the -on in motion.   |
| 380. | T'un.         | Tun, but with the -un as the -on in motion.   |
| 381. | Tung.         | Dung, but with the -un as the -on in motion.  |
| 382. | T'ung.        | Tung, but with the -un as the -on in motion.  |
| 383. | Tzu.          | Dzuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth.   |
| 384. | Tz'u.         | Tsuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth. Take guts, say the -ts and carry on some of the preceding -u. |
| 385. | Wa.           | Wah, the -ah as the -a in jar.  |
| 386. | Wai.          | Wye as the river of that name.  |
| 387. | Wan.          | Wan, the -an as in man.   |
| 388. | Wang.         | Wahng.  |
| 389. | Wei.          | Way.  |
| 390. | Wên.          | Won as in English.  |
| 391. | Wêng.         | Wung, to rhyme with lung as in English.   |
| 392. | Wo.           | Whoa as the carter to his horse.  |
| 393. | Wu.           | Woo as in English.  |
| 394. | Ya.           | Yah, almost like -yar in yard, but with scarcely any -r sound.  |
| 395. | Yai.          | Yigh, to rhyme with sigh.   |
| 396. | Yang.         | Yahng.  |
| 397. | Yao.          | Yow, to rhyme with cow.   |

- | No.  | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling.                            |
|------|---------------|---|
| 398. | Yeh.          | Ye as in yes.   |
| 399. | Yen.          | Yen, the Japanese coin.   |
| 400. | Yi.           | Yih, the -i short as in bin.                                      |
| 401. | Yin.          | Yin.  |
| 402. | Ying.         | Ying.   |
| 403. | Yo.           | Yoa, to rhyme with boa.   |
| 404. | Yu.           | You as in English.  |
| 405. | Yung.         | Yung, with the -un as the -on in motion.                          |
| 406. | Yü.           | Y, with French -ü.  |
| 407. | Yüan.         | Yü-an, the -ü being French and the -an as in man.                 |
| 408. | Yüeh.         | Yü-eh, the -ü being French and the -eh like -u in butt.           |
| 409. | Yün.          | Yün, the -ü being French and the -i very short, almost unsounded. |

## SPELLING CHART OF CHINESE WORDS

The 409 different sounds, which are found in the Guide to Pronunciation, and which, within the limits of the Roman alphabet, represent all the sounds in the Chinese language as spoken to-day, are made up of sixty-two separate syllabic sounds, if we confine ourselves to what are usually termed Initials and Finals. Chinese has often been designated a monosyllabic language. That is true in the sense that all the separate characters, or words, in the language can be pronounced as one syllable. However, on close analysis, it is found that many of these so-called monosyllables can be more accurately regarded as di-syllables or even tri-syllables, allowing for a Medial between the Initial and Final sounds. Moreover, in the language as spoken to-day, very frequently two or even three separate characters are required to denote a single concept or term.

The student will find below a chart of the sixty-two sounds which, in various combinations, form the 409 different sounds of the language. These are divided primarily into two sections, called respectively Initials and Finals. There are twenty-four Initials and thirty-eight Finals. Of the Finals, however, eleven sounds are used independently to form separate words, although they also enter into combination with other sounds. These eleven sounds are listed in a separate Section III.

### I. INITIALS

Written No. form.	English equivalent.
1. Ch. J	as in jeep.
2. Ch'. Ch	as in cheap.
3. F. F	as in fan.
4. H. H	the aspirate, as in hand.



- | Written<br>No. form. | English equivalent.  |
|----------------------|--|
| 5. Hs.               | Sh, a sound varying in different parts of China between a real -sh as in shell, and a pure -s as in sell, varying according to the extent to which the upper teeth are advanced beyond the lower when the sound is made. |
| 6. J.                | R as in run, ran, etc., varying again between -r and -y.   |
| 7. K.                | G hard as in gay, gum, etc.  |
| 8. K'.               | K as in kerb, and many initial hard c's like can, card.  |
| 9. L.                | L as in lane, long, etc.   |
| 10. M.               | M as in man, maze, etc.  |
| 11. N.               | N as in nap, near, nose, etc.  |
| 12. P.               | B as in bow, band, bin, etc.   |
| 13. P'.              | P as in pin, pool, pan, etc.   |
| 14. S.               | S as in sand, sum, sin, etc.   |
| 15. Sh.              | Sh as in shun, shot, etc., but also varying between this and -s, approximating especially to the latter when preceding -a, -ai, -an.   |
| 16. Ss.              | Ss, a hissing initial sound as in snake. To produce this sound say "bus" as in omnibus, then add the sound of the "-u" which precedes. Put "the b-us" in reverse!  |
| 17. T.               | D as in done, dab, etc.  |
| 18. T'.              | T as in time, tan, tin, etc.   |
| 19. Ts.              | Dz, the terminal sound of pods -ds, or the initial of Tsar.  |
| 20. Ts'.             | Ts, the terminal sound of pots -ts.  |
| 21. Tz.              | Z, the terminal sound of goods -ds, or as the -z in zebra. It is difficult to distinguish between 19 and 21. If possible make the sound in 19 a little lighter.  |
| 22. Tz'.             | Ts as you hear the terminal in blitz -tz.  |
| 23. W.               | W as in wand, win, won, etc.   |
| 24. Y.               | Y as in you, yellow, etc.  |

## II. FINALS

[*Note.*—Di-syllables with medial vowels -i, -ü or -ü are eighteen in number. They are 35-40, 44-46, 50-54, 57 and 59-61.]

Written No. form.	English equivalent.
25. A.	Ah, the long "a" in father, rather, etc.
26. Ai.	I as in wine, sigh, lime, etc.
27. An.	An, shortly sounded as in man, can, tan, etc.
28. Ang.	Ahng, with the "a" always long as in father, etc.
29. Ao.	Ow as in owl, how, etc.
30. E.	Er, like the -ea in earn, learn, etc., the -r scarcely being heard.
31. Ei.	Ay as in way, pay, say, etc.
32. En.	Un as in junk, hung, under, etc.
33. Eng.	Ung as in bung, lung, sung, etc.
34. I.	Ee as in peep, jeep, deep, etc.
35. Ia (medial -i).	Ya, the -a being short as in Yankee, yam, etc.
36. Iai (medial -i).	Yai, a short -i as in bin, followed by a long -i as in high. The sound is represented by the e-i- in b-e(h)-i(nd).
37. Iang (medial -i).	Yang, short -i as in 36, followed by -ahng as in 28.
38. Iao (medial -i).	Yao, short -i as in 36, followed by -ow as in 29.
39. Ieh (medial -i).	Yeh, short -i, followed by the -u sound in butt, or like the -ie in experience.
40. Ien (medial -i).	I-en like the -ien in experience, or short -i as in 36, followed by -en as in hen.
41. Ih.	Irr as -ir in chiroprapist or in giraffe.
42. In.	In as in English, bin, gin, etc.
43. Ing.	Ing as in English, telling, willing, etc.
44. Io (medial -i).	Yo like the -io sound in prodigious.
45. Iu (medial -i).	Yiu as in view or the initial -u in union.

- | Written<br>No. form.  | * English equivalent.  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 46. Iung (medial -i). | Yung, in which an initial short -i as in 86 is followed by -ung sounded like -ong in mongrel, or as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry. |
| 47. O.                | Either -oa as in oar, soar, etc., or as in whoa!, the carter's "halt" to his horse.  |
| 48. Ou.               | Oe as in toe, foe, etc.  |
| 49. U.                | Oo as in choose, noose, etc.   |
| 50. Ua (medial ŭ).    | Wa like the -ua in suave.  |
| 51. Uai (medial ŭ).   | Wi as in wine, wide, etc.  |
| 52. Uan (medial ŭ).   | Wan, with the -an short as in man, can, etc.   |
| 53. Uang (medial ŭ).  | Wang, with the -a long as -ah in 25.   |
| 54. Ui (medial ŭ).    | Way, but approximating to the French oui (the difference between 31 and 54 lies here).   |
| 55. Un.               | Un as the Lancastrian pronounces the -un in hungry.  |
| 56. Ung.              | Ung as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry.  |
| 57. Uo (medial ŭ).    | Wo as in woman, wooden, etc.   |
| 58. Ū.                | Ū as in French, as you would say "oo" with pursed lips, with the tip of the tongue close to the front teeth.                                       |
| 59. Ūan (medial ŭ).   | U-an, the French -ü, followed by -an as in man.  |
| 60. Ūeh (medial ŭ).   | U-eh, the French -ü, followed by -u as in butt.  |
| 61. Ūn (medial ŭ).    | U-in, the French -ü, followed by -in with -i very short.   |
| 62. Ērh.              | Er as in earnest, the -r with a burr, thus distinguishing between this and 80.   |

## III. FINALS USED INDEPENDENTLY

Eleven of the Final sounds as found in Section II are also used as rather independent sounds. But when so used some of them, as indicated below, are preceded by either an -ng or a -w in certain districts of China. In others there is no such modification, but as the modification is very common it is well to note it.

The eleven sounds referred to are as follows:—

63. A *or* Nga, as 25.
64. Ai *or* Ngai, as 26.
65. An *or* Ngan, as 27.
66. Ang *or* Ngang, as 28.
67. Ao *or* Ngao, as 29.
68. E *or* Nge, as 30.
69. En *or* Ngen, as 32.
70. I, as 34.
71. O *or* Ngo *or* Wo, as 47.
72. Ou *or* Ngou, as 48.
73. Erh, as 62.

## INTRODUCTION TO THE DIALOGUES

### NOTES ON THE TONES

The tones in Chinese are inflections of the voice, and the particular inflection of the voice when pronouncing a word determines the meaning. To put the matter in another way, tones serve the purpose of distinguishing one word from another. It is therefore important that attention should be paid to them.

As indicated in Dialogue No. 30, five tones are recognised in what used to be called Mandarin, or the official language of China. This is being gradually supplanted by the National language, "kuo yü", but in pronouncing this National language, the five tones of the old Mandarin are still current. It is true that the tendency is for the "Ju shêng" (entering or fifth tone) to die out. But it is still in common use in many parts of China, particularly in the north-west, so it is just as well that the student should be prepared for it.

The names of the tones are—

1. Shang P'ing Shêng, or Upper even.
2. Hsia P'ing Shêng, or Lower even.
3. Shang Shêng, or Rising tone.
4. Ch'ü Shêng, or Departing tone.
5. Ju Shêng or Entering tone.

As commonly heard in the vicinity of Peking, the true home of the Mandarin language with its four tones (1-4), the first is a falling tone, uttered somewhat sharply; the second is a curt upper rising tone; the third is a long rising tone broken in the middle; while the fourth is what its designation more or less suggests, namely, a short finishing falling away intonation. The "Ju shêng", as the writer is familiar with it, is a very abrupt

intonation in which the vowel sounds are shortened and hardened. It is usual to show this by romanising the characters in this tone by a final "h". *E.g.*, in Shansi the character "ch'u" 出 to go out, is spoken as a "Ju shêng" and pronounced "ch'üh". "Cho tzu" 棹子 table, normally in the first tone, is pronounced "Chüh tzu" in the "Ju shêng".

It is practically impossible to convey the actual sounds of these tones in writing, but try to find a Chinese to repeat the lessons with you, and observe the inflections of his voice as he pronounces the different words.

It should be noted that the tones alter in different combinations, and also that they vary considerably in different parts of China.

I have tried to indicate the character of the tones as pronounced in Peking and vicinity, with the addition of the "Ju shêng" as I am familiar with it in Shansi province.

THE DIALOGUES





## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 1

- 第 Ti.<sup>4</sup> Number, degree, used to introduce ordinal numbers.
- 一 I.<sup>1</sup> One.
- 課 K'o.<sup>4</sup> Task, exercise.
1. 門 Mên.<sup>2</sup> Door, gate.
- 口 K'ou.<sup>3</sup> Mouth, opening.
- 有 Yu.<sup>3</sup> There is, there are, has, have.
- 人 Jên.<sup>2</sup> Man.
2. 誰 Shui.<sup>3</sup> Who, whom.
3. 我 Wo.<sup>3</sup> I, me.
4. 是 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Is, are, am, etc.
5. 不 Pu.<sup>1</sup> No, not.
- 知 Chih.<sup>1</sup> To know.
- 道 Tao.<sup>4</sup> Way, truth.
- 知道 Chih-tao. To know.
6. 去 Ch'ü.<sup>4</sup> To go.
- 看 K'an.<sup>4</sup> To look, to look at.
- 看一看 K'an i k'an. To look, see.
7. 用 Yung.<sup>1</sup> Need, use.
- 叫 Chiao.<sup>4</sup> To call, cause, order.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 8. <i>H. Lung Fu.</i>  | 8. Lung Fu!   |
| 9. <i>S. Ai.</i>   | 9. Ai! (the servant's<br>response).                           |
| 10. <i>H. Lai pa.</i>  | 10. Come here!  |
| "Pa" is used to add emphasis to the verb, especially when giving a command. It has other uses which will be explained later. But you should not use "pa" when addressing your equals or superiors, unless you are on extremely familiar terms with them. |   |
| 11. <i>S. Ai!</i>  | 11. Yes!  |
| 12. <i>H. Mên k'ou yu jên.<br/>Ni ch'ü, k'an i<br/>k'an shih shui.</i>   | 12. There is someone at<br>the door. Go and<br>see who it is. |

The use of "Ni" you, in addressing servants, etc., is permissible. Care should be exercised in using it in speaking directly to others. Sometimes the word "Nin" is used to address superiors.

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 13. <i>S. Ai.</i>  | 13. Right!                     |
| 14. <i>S. (to friend at door).<br/>Hsien shêng kuei<br/>hsing.</i> | 14. What is your name,<br>sir? |

"Kuei" honourable, the commonest form of polite epithet in addressing others. There are equivalents of question marks in Chinese, but in sentences like this they are unnecessary. See sentence 15 for an example.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 15. <i>F. Wo hsing Li. Wang<br/>Hsien shêng tsai<br/>chia ma.</i> | 15. My name is Lee. Is<br>Mr. Wang at home? |
|---|---|

I have said (see 5 above) that the first personal pronoun is often omitted. It is, however, more commonly used than, say, thirty years ago. There are at least three ways of replying to the question in sentence 14:—

Chien hsing Li. Humble name Li.

Wo chien hsing Li. I humble name Li.

Pu kan tang, wo chien hsing Li. I am unworthy, I humble name Li.

Pu kan tang. Lit. "not dare bear (such honorific address)" is a very common reply to any complimentary or polite remarks. "Ma" is one of the Chinese marks of interrogation.

8. 隆福 Lung-Fu. A name (for the servant in this case).
9. 哎 Ai.<sup>3</sup> Exclamation.
10. 來 Lai.<sup>2</sup> to come.  
吧 Pa.<sup>4</sup> Final particle.
14. 先生 Hsien.<sup>1</sup> Before, formerly, first.  
先生 Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Born, to beget, life.  
先生 Hsien-shêng. Teacher, Mr., Mrs.  
貴 Kuei.<sup>4</sup> Honourable, dear, costly.  
姓 Hsing.<sup>4</sup> Surname, clan.
15. 李 Li.<sup>3</sup> A surname. Plum.  
王 Wang.<sup>2</sup> A surname. King, prince.  
在 Tsai.<sup>4</sup> At, in, on, present, living.  
家 Chia.<sup>1</sup> Home, house, family, class.  
嗎 Ma.<sup>1</sup> Interrogative.

16. *S.* Tsai chia. Ch'ing chin lai. 16. Yes he is. Please come in.

17. *F.* Hao. 17. Good (thank you).

Here we might have used "pu kan tang" (see on 15 above), instead of "Hao" which means good. But "hao" may be used in expressing appreciation of favours offered.

18. *S.* (to host). Li Hsien shêng lai lo (la). 18. Mr. Lee has come.

"Lo" is short for "liao", which denotes the completed action of the verb (perfect tense).

19. *H.* Ch'ing chin lai pa. 19. Ask him to come in.  
20. *H.* (to friend). Ya, 20. Hello Mr. Lee, how  
(ah) Li Hsien are you?  
shêng hao ya  
(ah).

"Ah" or "ya" at the end of sentences has mainly euphonic value, i.e., it helps to round off the sentence smoothly.

21. *F.* Hao. Wang Hsien shêng, Chang Hsien shêng, tou hao ya (ah). 21. Quite well. Are you Mr. Wang and Mr. Chang, both well?

"Tou" or "tu" both, all. Note that it follows nouns, or pronouns, to which it refers.

22. *H. and V.* Hao, hao. 22. Quite well. Please  
Ch'ing tso, take a seat.  
Ch'ing tso.

The duplication of polite forms of speech is very common.

23. *F.* Hsieh hsieh. 23. Thank you, thank you.

24. *H.* (to servant). P'ao ch'a. 24. Prepare tea!

16. 請  
進  
進來  
17. 好
- Ch'ing.<sup>3</sup> Invite, please, call, engage.  
Chin.<sup>4</sup> Enter, advance.  
Chin-lai. To enter.  
Hao.<sup>3</sup> Good, well, complete.
18. 了
- Liao.<sup>3</sup> Lo.<sup>3</sup> La.<sup>3</sup> To end, finish, sign of past tense.
20. 呀
- Ya.<sup>1</sup> Particle, exclamation, initial or final.
21. 張  
都
- Chang.<sup>1</sup> A surname, also classifier of nouns.  
Tou,<sup>1</sup> tu.<sup>1</sup> Both, all, together.
22. 坐
- Tso.<sup>4</sup> To sit, a seat.
23. 謝
- Hsieh.<sup>4</sup> To thank, thanks.
24. 泡  
茶  
泡茶
- P'ao.<sup>4</sup> To brew, soak, bubble, infuse.  
Ch'a.<sup>2</sup> Tea.  
P'ao ch'a. To make tea (in the teapot).

25. *S.* Shuo hua, chiu lai. 25. Coming in a moment.  
(Lit. "as you speak I come").

"Chiu" is a word of many uses. Here it implies sequence, with a suggestion of immediacy.

26. *H.* Ch'ing Li Hsien 26. Take some tea Mr. Lee.  
shêng ho ch'a.

27. *F.* Pu kan tang. 27. Thank you. (Lit.  
"unworthy").

28. *H.* (as friend rises to 28. (Can't you) stay a  
leave). Tsai tso little longer.  
i hui'rh.

Lit. Again sit awhile, "i hui erh" awhile. But in speech the hui and erh coalesce and are pronounced huerh.

29. *F.* Tui pu chu. Yu 29. Sorry! There is some-  
jên têng cho wo, one waiting for me.  
tê hui ch'ü. I must return.

"Tui pu chu"—a common phrase signifying regret or apology.

"Cho" is the sign of the present participle, and denotes the continuing action of the verb. "Têng" wait; "têng cho" waiting.

"Tê" must, or should, in the sense of ought.

"Hui" return, "ch'ü" go, another instance of the double verb, the second of which indicates completion of the action.

30. *F.* (as host rises to 30. Stay where you are.  
see him off). Pu Lit. "don't escort  
sung, pu sung. me").

31. *H. and V.* Na'erh ti 31. Never heard of such a  
hua. thing! (Lit.  
"where does such  
talk come from?").

32. (All together.) Tsai 32. Good-bye, good-bye.  
chien, tsai chien. (Lit. "again see").

25. 說 Shuo.<sup>1</sup> To speak, say, narrate.  
     話 Hua.<sup>4</sup> Words, language, speech.  
     說話 Shuo-hua. To speak.  
     就 Chiu.<sup>4</sup> Immediately, then, so, etc.
26. 喝 Ho.<sup>1</sup> To drink.
27. 敢 Kan.<sup>3</sup> Dare, presume.  
     當 Tang.<sup>1</sup> To bear, act as, ought.  
     不敢當 Pu-kan-tang. I am unworthy, I dare not  
     presume, etc.
28. 再 Tsai.<sup>4</sup> Again, repeat.  
     會 Hui.<sup>2</sup> A time, a turn, able to, etc.  
     兒 Erh.<sup>1</sup> Enclitic, added to nouns, suffix.  
     一會兒 I-hui-ih. Awhile, a little time.
29. 對 Tui.<sup>4</sup> To face, pair, opposite.  
     住 Chu.<sup>4</sup> To dwell, to stop.  
     對不住 Tui-pu-chu. To offend, apologise, regrets.  
     等 Têng.<sup>3</sup> To wait, a class.  
     着 Cho.<sup>2</sup> Particle, sign of present, participle.  
     得 Tê.<sup>2</sup> Must, ought, get.  
     回 Hui.<sup>2</sup> To return, go back.  
     回去 Hui-ch'ü. To return.
30. 送 Sung.<sup>4</sup> To send, escort, accompany.
31. 那 Na.<sup>3 4</sup> Where, how, why? There, that.  
     的 Ti.<sup>1</sup> Sign of possessive 's.
32. 見 Chien.<sup>4</sup> To see, perceive.  
     再見 Tsai-chien. Good-bye.

## DIALOGUE No. 2

*The Chinese Teacher Arrives*

Lady, *L.* Teacher, *T.* Servant, *S.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>S.</i> Wang Hsien shêng<br>lai la.             | 1. Mr. Wang has come.  |
| 2. <i>L.</i> Ch'ing t'a chin lai.                    | 2. Ask him to come in  |
| 3. <i>L.</i> Wang Hsien shêng<br>hao ya.             | 3. How are you, Mr.<br>Wang?                                 |
| 4. <i>T.</i> Hao. T'ai t'ai ch'ih<br>kuo fan mei yu. | 4. Well, (thank you)<br>Have you Lady par-<br>taken of food? |

This illustrates the full form of common questions in the Past or Perfect tenses. "Ch'ih liao (kuo) mo yu". Lit. Eaten—not have (eaten)? The object "food" comes between the two halves of the question form.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 5. <i>L.</i> Ch'ih la. Hsien<br>shêng ch'ih la<br>ma. | 5. Yes, have you (teacher)<br>eaten? |
|---|--------------------------------------|

Now you see that the interrogative sign "ma" is but a shortened form of "mo yu" or mei yu as used in sentence 4 (above).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. <i>T.</i> Hai mei yu ch'ih<br>(or) P'ien kuo la. | 6. I have not yet eaten<br>(or) Yes I have (I am<br>ashamed to say). |
|---|--|

Chinese avoids redundancy wherever possible. If the tense is otherwise indicated there is no need to add extra words to the verb to show the tense. Here the word "huan" pronounced "hai", yet, serves in that way. So it is unnecessary to use "la" or "liao" after "ch'ih".

Inquiries about food form the usual method of greeting, particularly in the earlier parts of the day.

The alternative in sentence 6. "p'ien kuo la" is the very polite form of reply, and means "I have deprived you of your share", or "I have acted in a selfish or improper manner".

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 7. <i>L.</i> Ch'ing Hsien shêng<br>tso (or) Hsien<br>shêng ch'ing tso. | 7. Please (teacher) take a<br>seat. |
|--|-------------------------------------|



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 2

- 二 Erh.<sup>4</sup> Two. Second.
2. 他 T'a.<sup>1</sup> He, she, it.
4. 太 T'ai.<sup>4</sup> Too, very, superlative, exalted.  
 太太 T'ai-t'ai. Madame, Lady.  
 喫 Ch'ih.<sup>1</sup> To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.  
 過 Kuo.<sup>4</sup> Sign of past tense, to pass over.  
 飯 Fan.<sup>4</sup> Rice, food.  
 沒 Mei, mu, mo.<sup>4</sup> Negative, used with the verb "yu" to have.
6. 還 Huan, hai.<sup>2</sup> Still, yet, precedes negative.  
 偏 P'ien.<sup>1</sup> Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.

8. T. Ch'ing T'ai t'ai      8. Please (Lady) be seated  
hsien tso.                      first.
9. L. Hsien shêng t'ai k'o      9. You (teacher) are much  
ch'i.                              too polite (Lit.  
   "too much guest's  
   flavour").
10. T. Pu k'o ch'i. Shih li      10. Not at all. Noblesse  
tang ti.                              oblige.

"Li" courtesy: "tang" ought: "ti" the possessive sign, used to turn verbal, adjectival or other phrases into composite noun clauses. Here, e.g., it makes this sense—"It is something that courtesy demands".

11. L. (to servant). K'o i      11. Make tea for the  
kei Hsien shêng                      teacher.  
p'ao ch'a (or)  
ch'i ch'a.

The "k'o i" modulates the sense of command, and so is appreciated by servants. Use it frequently if you want to get good service.

12. S. Ya. (Ah) Yü pei      12. Right, it is ready.  
hao la.
13. (L. to teacher). Ch'ing      13. Take a cup of tea  
Hsien shêng ho                      (teacher).  
ch'a.
14. T. Hsieh, hsieh.              14. Thank you, thank you.
15. L. Chung kuo hua, wo      15. I don't understand  
pu ta tung.                              Chinese very well.

Note the order of words. "Chung kuo hua", lit. Middle Kingdom words, is placed first for the sake of emphasis.

"Ta" is used to qualify the verb and has adverbial use, "greatly".

16. T. T'ai t'ai, chi shih      16. When did you (Lady)  
tao pi kuo lai ti.                      arrive in our  
   country?

Note that "lai" without "la" or "liao" indicates past tense, because that is obvious from the context.

9. 客 K'o.<sup>4</sup> Guest, traveller.  
氣 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Breath, air, vapour, flavour.
10. 理 Li.<sup>3</sup> Right, principle, arrange, fitting.
11. 可 K'o.<sup>4</sup> May, might, can, be able.  
以 I.<sup>3</sup> To take, by means of.  
可以 K'o-i. May, can, will do.  
給 Kei. Chi.<sup>3</sup> Give, for, to, sign of dative.  
沏 Ch'i.<sup>3</sup> Infuse, brew, alternative for  
“p'ao”.
12. 預 Yü.<sup>4</sup> Beforehand.  
備 Pei.<sup>4</sup> Prepare, ready.  
預備 Yü-pei. To prepare, make ready.
15. 中 Chung.<sup>1</sup> Middle.  
國 Kuo.<sup>2</sup> Country, kingdom.  
中國 Chung-kuo. China, the Middle Kingdom.  
大 Ta.<sup>4</sup> Big, great, much  
懂 Tung.<sup>3</sup> To understand.
16. 幾 Chi.<sup>3</sup> Many, interrogative how much?  
幾 how many?  
時 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Time, season.  
幾時 Chi-shih. When?  
到 Tao.<sup>4</sup> Arrive, reach.  
敵 Pi.<sup>4</sup> Humble, my (polite).

17. *L.* Wo shih shang yüeh ts'ai tao kuei kuo lai ti. 17. I came to your country only last month.
- “Ts'ai” is a connecting word, here indicating the definite point of time, with a certain qualifying sense of “only, just then”, etc.
18. *T.* T'ai t'ai ti Chung kuo hua, shuo tê hao. 18. But you (Lady) speak Chinese well (Lit. “Lady’s China country words speak get well”).
19. *L.* Kuo chiang, kuo chiang. 19. You flatter me (Lit. “over-praise”).
20. *T.* Chên ti. Shih tsai hao. 20. It is the truth. (You speak) really well.
21. *L.* Chung kuo hua yung i hsüeh pu yung i hsüeh. 21. Is Chinese easy to learn?
22. *T.* Ping pu t'ai nan. 22. Not too difficult.  
“Ping”—really—for emphasis.
23. *L.* Wo yüan i pa Chung kuo hua, hsüeh hao. 23. I should like to learn Chinese well.
24. *T.* Wo chin hsin ti chiao ni, chiu shih la. 24. Then I will do my best to teach you.

Lit. “I exhaust heart teach give you”.

“Chiu shih la”—a final rounding off phrase.

17. 上 Shang.<sup>4</sup> The last in point of time, above,  
on, go up.  
月 Yüeh.<sup>4</sup> Month, moon.  
才 Ts'ai.<sup>2</sup> Just, thereupon, scarcely.
19. 獎 Chiang.<sup>3</sup> Praise, commend.  
過 Kuo-chiang. Excessive praise, flattery.  
獎
20. 真 Chên.<sup>1</sup> True, real.  
實 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Solid, sincere, true, real.  
實 Shih-tsai. Truly, really.  
在
21. 容 Yung.<sup>2</sup> Jung.<sup>2</sup> Easy, contain, face, looks.  
易 I.<sup>4</sup> Easy.  
學 Hsüeh.<sup>2</sup> Learn.
22. 並 Ping.<sup>4</sup> Together, abreast, all.  
難 Nan.<sup>2</sup> Difficult.
23. 願 Yüan.<sup>4</sup> Wish, willing.  
意 I.<sup>4</sup> Idea, wish, intention, meaning.  
願 Yüan-i. Willing, wish, desire.  
意  
把 Pa.<sup>3</sup> Take, take hold. Introduces object  
of verb.
24. 盡 Chin.<sup>4</sup> Limit, exhaust, utmost.  
心 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> Heart, mind.  
教 Chiao.<sup>1</sup> Teach, instruct.  
你 Ni.<sup>3</sup> You.

## DIALOGUE No. 3

*Conversation with Teacher*

Teacher, T. Pupil, P.

1. P. Chê ko shih shih-  
mo. 1. What is this?

Note the order of words, exactly the reverse of English. "This is what?"

2. T. Na shih i pên shu. 2. That is a book.

"Pên" is a classifier of the noun "shu". There are many of these, such as pên, ko, kuan. "Ko", a piece, is the most common, and may be almost universally used. But if you want to speak Chinese well, you must learn to use the appropriate classifier with its noun. A list of the more common classifiers is given in Grammar Lesson, p. 427.

3. P. Shih shih-mo shu. 3. What (kind of) book  
is it?  
4. T. Shih i pên tzu tien. 4. It is a dictionary.

5. P. Na ko tung hsi  
chiao shih mo. 5. What is that (thing)  
called?

6. T. Na shih i kuan  
ch'ien pi. 6. That is a pencil.

7. P. Wo mên k'o i tso  
shih-mo. 7. What shall we do?

Note the use of "k'o i". Let us, we may, may we, shall we, etc., generally speaking of permissive significance.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 3

- 三 San.<sup>1</sup> Three.
1. 這 Chê.<sup>4</sup> This.  
 個 Ko.<sup>4</sup> Piece, classifier of nouns.  
 這 個 Chê-ko. This.  
 甚 什 Shen.<sup>2</sup> Shih.<sup>2</sup> What, very, any, the second  
 什 form being more commonly used.  
 麼 Mo.<sup>1</sup> Interrogative particle.  
 什 麼 Shih-mo. What? anything.
2. 本 Pên.<sup>3</sup> Classifier of books, documents, root,  
 書 Shu.<sup>1</sup> Book.
4. 字 Tzu.<sup>4</sup> Word, written word.  
 典 Tien.<sup>3</sup> Constant, rule, record.  
 字典 Tzu-tien. Dictionary.
5. 東 Tung.<sup>1</sup> East.  
 西 Hsi.<sup>1</sup> West.  
 東西 Tung-hsi. Thing, things.
6. 管 Kuan.<sup>3</sup> Tube, classifier of tubular things.  
 鉛 Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> Lead (metal).  
 筆 Pi.<sup>3</sup> Pen, pencil, brush.  
 鉛筆 Ch'ien-pi. Lead-pencil.  
 們 Mên.<sup>2</sup> Sign of plural.
7. 我 Wo-mên. We, us.  
 們 們  
 作 Tso.<sup>4</sup> To do, to make, to act.  
 做

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 8. T. Wo mên k'o i nien<br>shu.              | 8. Let us read.  |
| 9. P. Wo mên k'o i nien<br>shih-mo shu.      | 9. What book shall we<br>read?                           |
| 10. T. Wo mên k'o i nien<br>chê ko tu pên.   | 10. Let us read this<br>Reader.                          |
| 11. P. Ch'ing hsien shêng<br>nien, wo t'ing. | 11. Will you please read<br>(teacher). I will<br>listen. |
| 12. T. Na ko fa tzu pu ta<br>hao.            | 12. That is not a very good<br>method.                   |

The verb "shih", is, are, etc., is usually omitted in direct speech where no special emphasis is needed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 13. P. Na mo, hsien shêng<br>hsien nien, wo<br>chiu kên cho<br>nien, hsing pu<br>hsing. | 13. Then will you (teacher)<br>read first, and I will<br>read after you. Will<br>that do? |
|---|---|

Na mo, a very common phrase in conversation, indicating connective logical sequence, as in English we say, "Then", "That being so", "In that case", etc.

"Nien" usually indicates reading aloud. "Tu" or "k'an", which also mean to read, are used of reading to oneself.

"Hsing pu hsing", a very common way of finishing up a sentence, seeking, or assuming the approval of the person addressed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 14. T. Hsing. Chê ko fa<br>tzu hên hao.                                 | 14. Yes, that's a very good<br>method.  |
| 15. P. Yao shih wo nien<br>ts'o la, ch'ing<br>hsien shêng kao<br>su wo. | 15. You (teacher) will<br>please tell me if I<br>make mistakes in<br>reading. |

Your first introduction to the Conditional Mood. "Yao shih", if.

The "la" is short for "Liao", which latter is not often heard in colloquial. Here it indicates the future-perfect tense, as the act of reading wrongly would have been completed before the teacher would be called upon to correct.



8. 唸 Nien.<sup>4</sup> To read aloud.  
唸書 Nien-shu. To study, read aloud.
10. 讀 Tu.<sup>2</sup> To read.  
讀本 Tu-pên. A reader (book).
11. 聽 T'ing.<sup>1</sup> To listen.  
聽一聽 T'ing-i-t'ing. To listen.
12. 法 Fa.<sup>2 3 4</sup> Method, way of doing things, law.  
子 Tzu.<sup>3</sup> Son, terminal of nouns, child.
13. 那麼 Na-mo. Then, seeing that it is so.  
跟 Kên.<sup>1</sup> To follow, accompany, the heel,  
with.  
行 Hsing.<sup>2</sup> To go, to do.  
行不行 Hsing-pu-hsing. Will that do? Is it possible?
14. 很 Hên.<sup>3</sup> Extreme, very.
15. 要 Yao.<sup>4</sup> If, necessary, want.  
錯 Ts'o.<sup>4</sup> Mistake, error, wrong.  
告 Kao.<sup>4</sup> Inform, accuse.  
訴 Su.<sup>4</sup> Inform, explain.  
告訴 Kao-su. Tell, inform.



17. 現 Hsien.<sup>4</sup> Now, at present.  
 現在 Hsien-tsai. At present, now. 'At this  
 完 point.  
 Wan.<sup>2</sup> To finish, complete, end.
18. 寫 Hsieh.<sup>3</sup> To write.
19. 喜 Hsi.<sup>3</sup> Joy, pleased, glad.  
 歡 Huan.<sup>1</sup> Rejoice, take pleasure.  
 喜歡 Hsi-huan. To rejoice, be pleased, happy.
21. 可 K'o.<sup>3</sup> But.
24. 紙 Chih.<sup>3</sup> Paper.  
 塊 K'uai.<sup>4</sup> Piece.  
 墨 Mo. Mei.<sup>4</sup> Ink.  
 和 Ho.<sup>2 4</sup> With, together, harmony.  
 方 Fang.<sup>1</sup> Square, classifier of pieces of  
 Chinese ink.  
 硯 Yen.<sup>4</sup> Ink-slab.  
 台 T'ai.<sup>2</sup> Slab.  
 硯台 Yen-t'ai. Slab for mixing Chinese ink.  
 加 Chia.<sup>1</sup> To add.

25. *P.* Wo pa chê hsieh tung hsi na lai.  
Wo mên chiu hsieh tzu.
25. I will get these things, and we will (begin to) write.
26. *T.* Hao. Wo mên hsieh tzu pa.
26. Good, we will (begin to) write.

24. 點 Tien.<sup>3</sup> A little, point, dot.  
一點兒 I tie'rh. A little.  
水 Shui.<sup>3</sup> Water.  
研 Yen.<sup>2</sup> To grind, as ink on the slab. To inquire.
25. 把 Pa.<sup>3</sup> To take, handle, grasp.  
些 Hsieh.<sup>3</sup> A few, some, sign of plural, with adjectives.  
拿 Na.<sup>2</sup> To take.  
拿來 Na-lai. To bring.

## DIALOGUE No. 4

Between two friends A and B who are learning Chinese together. This dialogue provides some basic rules of grammar in the form of useful sentences. Learn this lesson thoroughly, and you will be well repaid.

1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi      1. What is this called?  
    chiao shih-mo.

Note again the order of the words. "This thing called what?"

2. B. Na shih i ko ch'a      2. That is a teacup.  
    pei (wan).

It is not necessary to use "ko" after "na" if "ko" comes later in the sentence in reference to the same thing.

3. A. Ch'a pei ho ch'a      3. What is the difference  
    wan yu shih-mo              between a ch'a pei  
    fên pieh.                      and a ch'a wan?

Notice carefully the framework of this sentence, "Cup with bowl have what difference?"

4. B. Ch'a pei yu pa'rh,      4. A ch'a pei has a handle  
    ch'a wan mu yu              while a ch'a wan has  
    pa'rh.                          not.

5. A. Na shih shih-mo      5. What is that?  
    tung hsi.

6. B. Na shih i ko (pa)      6. That is a teapot.  
    ch'a hu.

"Pa" is the correct classifier of teapots, but "ko" is also used.

7. A. Ch'a hu ho shui hu,      7. Is a ch'a hu the same  
    i yang pu i yang.              as a shui hu?

Lit. "Teapot with (compared with) kettle one kind not one kind?"

8. B. Pu i yang. Ch'a hu      8. No. A teapot is used  
    shih p'ao ch'a              for making tea and  
    yung ti, shui hu              a kettle for boiling  
    shih shao shui              water.  
    yung ti.

Note "ti" after "yung" making an adjectival phrase. "A teapot is making tea's use". So "used for".

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 4

- 四            Ssu.<sup>4</sup> Four.
2. 盃            Pei.<sup>1</sup> Cup, with or without handle, glass.  
碗            Wan.<sup>3</sup> Cup, bowl, usually without handle.
3. 分            Fên.<sup>1 4</sup> (1) Verbal form, to divide. (4)  
                  Part, tenth.  
    別            Pieh.<sup>2</sup> To distinguish, also "do not".  
    分別        Fên-pieh. Difference.
4. 把            Pa.<sup>4</sup> Handle, classifier of teapots, etc., also  
                  introduces object of verbs.
6. 壺            Hu.<sup>2</sup> Kettle, pot.  
    茶壺        Ch'a-hu. Teapot.
7. 水壺        Shui-hu. Kettle.  
    樣            Yang.<sup>4</sup> Pattern, way, manner.  
    一樣        I-yang. The same, similar.
8. 燒            Shao.<sup>1</sup> To burn, bake (to boil).





9. 這些 Chê-hsieh. These.  
 煙 Yen.<sup>1</sup> Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.  
 捲 Chüan.<sup>3</sup> A roll, to roll up.  
 煙捲兒 Yen-chüan-rh. Cigarettes ("rh" being short for "êrh").
10. 誰的 Shui-ti. Whose?  
 那些 Na-hsieh. Those.  
 我的 Wo-ti. My, mine.
11. 洋 Yang.<sup>2</sup> Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.  
 火 Huo.<sup>2</sup> Fire.  
 柴 Ch'ai.<sup>2</sup> Firewood, fuel.  
 火柴 Huo-ch'ai. Matches.
13. 喫煙 Ch'ih-yen. To smoke (lit. to eat smoke).  
 抽 Ch'ou.<sup>1</sup> To draw, pull out.  
 抽煙 Ch'ou-yen. To smoke, as tobacco.
14. 兩 Liang.<sup>3</sup> Two, preceding nouns.
15. 鋼 Kang.<sup>1</sup> Steel.  
 鋼筆 Kang-pi. Steel pen.
16. 那一管 Na-i-kuan. Which one? Note that the tone is 3 for na.  
 呢 Ni.<sup>1</sup> Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.
17. 毛 Mao.<sup>2</sup> Hair.  
 毛筆 Mao-pi. The hair-brush, Chinese pen.  
 你的 Ni-ti. Your, yours.

18. B. Pu shih wo ti. Shih wo p'êng yu ti. 18. No, it is not mine. It belongs to my friend.

There is no need to use "ti" the possessive after "wo" in the second half of this sentence. It would be too clumsy to say "Shih wo ti p'êng yu ti". Where the sense is clear, Chinese prefer to avoid repetition of these small words.

19. A. Na i p'ing mo shui, yeh shih t'a ti ma. 19. Is that bottle of ink his too?  
 20. B. Pu shih t'a ti, shih hsien shêng ti. 20. No, it belongs to the teacher.  
 21. A. Chê hsieh yen chüan'rh hao pu hao. 21. Are these good cigarettes?  
 22. B. Pu ta hao. 22. Not very good.  
 23. A. Ni tsai na'rh mai ti. 23. Where did you buy them?

Notice carefully the two words spelled the same "mai", but meaning respectively "buy" and "sell". In the Chinese character (see Chinese exercises at end of book) these two words are written differently. But the tones for "buy" and "sell" are different. For "buy" use the third tone, and for "sell" the fourth.

Tsa-men is a friendly familiar form for "wo-mên", "we". Tsa-men-lia a shortened form for "Tsa-men liang ko".

24. B. Tsai shih ch'ang shang mai ti. 24. In the market.  
 25. A. Tsai chê li yu mai ti mei yu. 25. Are there any on sale here?  
 26. B. Tsai chê li mei yu mai ti. 26. No, there are none on sale here.  
 27. A. Tsai na li yu mai ti ni. 27. Where are there any on sale?  
 28. B. Shang ta chieh shang ch'ü, huo che k'o i mai. 28. If you go on to the main street, you may be able to buy some.

18. 朋 友 朋 友  
 P'êng.<sup>2</sup> Companion, friend, mate.  
 Yu.<sup>3</sup> Intimate acquaintance, friend.  
 P'êng-yu. Friend, mate.
19. 瓶 也  
 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> Bottle.  
 Yeh.<sup>3</sup> Also.
23. 那 兒  
 Nà.<sup>3</sup> 'rh. Where?  
 Mai.<sup>3</sup> To buy.
24. 市 場 市 場  
 Shih.<sup>4</sup> The market.  
 Ch'ang.<sup>2</sup> An open place, square.  
 Shih-ch'ang. The public market.
25. 裡 裏 這 裡 賣  
 Li.<sup>3</sup> In, inside, within.  
 Chê-li. Here.  
 Mai.<sup>4</sup> To sell. (Notice the tone is 4; cf. with mai 3, to buy.)  
 Mai-mai. Business, trade.
27. 那 裡  
 Na-li. Alternative for "na'rh", where?, tone 3.
28. 街 或 者  
 Chieh.<sup>2</sup> Street.  
 Huo.<sup>4</sup> Perhaps, if, someone.  
 Che.<sup>3</sup> Particle, to form adverbs, abstract nouns, etc.

29. A. Tsa men lia, k'o i    29. Let us two go on the  
       shang chieh ch'ü,        ' street to buy a few.  
       mai chi ko pa.

30. B. Hao. Tsa mên i    30. Right, let us go to-  
       k'uai'êrh ch'ü.        gether.

I-k'uai-êrh. Lit. one piece, so together.

29. 咱 Tsa.<sup>2</sup> We (familiar).  
    倆 Lia.<sup>3</sup> Two.  
    咱們倆 Tsa-mên-lia. We two.
30. 一塊兒 I-k'uai-êrh. Together (all one piece).

## DIALOGUE No. 5

Between two friends A and B, comprising a series of short sentences, to be fired at one another in quick rotation, and illustrating grammatical rules of a basic character.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A. T'a lai la mei yu.   | 1. Has he come?  |
| 2. B. T'a mci yu lai.  | 2. No he has not.  |
| 3. A. Ni lai pu lai.   | 3. Are you coming?   |
| 4. B. Wo lai.  | 4. Yes, I am coming (in reference to the place where they are standing). |
| 5. A. Tso t'ien t'a mên lai la ma.   | 5. Did they come yesterday?  |
| 6. B. T'a men lai la.  | 6. Yes, they did.  |
| 7. A. Ming t'ien ni mên lai pu lai.  | 7. Are you coming to-morrow?   |
| 8. B. Ming t'ien wo mên pu lai.  | 8. No, we are not coming to-morrow.                                      |
| 9. A. Chin t'ien ni ch'ü pu ch'ü.  | 9. Are you going to-day?   |
| 10. B. Wo ch'ü.  | 10. Yes, I am going.   |
| 11. A. Ming t'ien ni hui lai pu hui lai.   | 11. Are you coming back to-morrow?                                       |
| 12. B. Ming t'ien pu hui lai.  | 12. No, I shall not come back to-morrow.                                 |
| 13. A. Ming t'ien t'a (f) hui ch'ü pu hui ch'ü.  | 13. Will she go back to-morrow?  |
| <p>Note that expressions of time usually precede everything else in simple direct questions and answers.</p> |  |
| 14. B. Shih ti, ming t'ien t'a hui ch'ü.   | 14. Yes, she will go back to-morrow.                                     |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 5

- 五            Wu.<sup>3</sup> Five.
5. 昨            Tso.<sup>3</sup> Yesterday.  
天            T'ien.<sup>1</sup> Day, Heaven.  
昨天        Tso-t'ien. Yesterday.
7. 明            Ming.<sup>2</sup> The dawn, also bright, clear, open.  
明天        Ming-t'ien. To-morrow.
9. 今            Chin.<sup>1</sup> Now, the present.  
今天        Chin-t'ien. To-day.
11. 回來        Hui-lai. To return (here).
13. 她            T'a.<sup>1</sup> She. Note feminine form of character.
12. 是的        Shih-ti. Yes, affirmation. Often expressed by "shih" alone.

15. A. Ni shang na li ch'ü. 15. Where are you going?

Note that the verb ch'ü comes last in these sentences. That is because it is part of the composite verb shang-ch'ü. Sometimes this verb is put first, e.g., 18. "Ni ch'ü kan shem-mo".

16. B. Wo shang chieh ch'ü. 16. I am going on the street.

17. A. Wo yeh ch'ü. 17. I am going too.

18. B. Ni ch'ü kan shih mo. 18. What are you going for?

19. A. Wo ch'ü mai tung hsi. 19. I am going to buy some things.

20. B. Mai shih mo tung hsi. 20. What are you going to buy?

21. A. Mai i ting mao tzu, ho i shuang hsieh. 21. A hat and a pair of shoes.

Note "ting", the classifier of "mao tzu".

22. B. Tao kuo Pei-ching mei yu. 22. Have you ever been to Peking?

Pei-ching (Northern Capital), styled Pei-p'ing (Northern Peace) since the old Pei-ching was captured by Chiang K'ai Shek in 1926, when Nanking (Southern Capital) became the new capital of all China.

23. A. Mei yu tao kuo. 23. No, I have never been.

24. B. Ch'i lai, wo mên tsou pa. 24. Get up, let us go.

Tsou is simply to go, without any goal being indicated. If you use "ch'ü", some idea of a goal is implied.

25. A. Têng i têng, tê na. chi ko ch'ien. 25. Wait a bit, I must get some money.

26. B. Na pu yao chin, wo tai tê yu ch'ien. 26. That doesn't matter, I have some money on me.

The "tê" in "tai tê", followed by "yu", which some would consider redundant, is really equivalent to "la", the past tense.



18. 幹 Kan.<sup>4</sup> To do, manage, ability.
21. 頂 Ting.<sup>3</sup> The classifier of hats, caps, etc.,  
top, button.  
帽 Mao.<sup>4</sup> Hat, cap.  
雙 Shuang.<sup>1</sup> A couple, both, pair.  
鞋 Hsieh.<sup>2</sup> Shoe.  
一雙鞋 I-shuang-hsieh. A pair of shoes.
22. 北 Pei.<sup>3 4</sup> North.  
京 Ching.<sup>1</sup> Capital city.  
北京 Pei-ching. Old name for Peking, now  
called Peiping.
24. 起 Ch'i.<sup>3</sup> To get up, rise, mount.  
起來 Ch'i-lai. To get up, rise.  
走 Tsou.<sup>3</sup> To walk, to go (without reference  
to a specific goal).
25. 等 Têng-i-têng. To wait a bit.  
一錢 Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Money.
26. 緊 Chin.<sup>3</sup> Tight, pressing.  
要緊 Yao chin. Important (lit. want urgent).  
帶 Tai.<sup>4</sup> To carry on the person.

27. A. K'o shih chieh jên      27. But borrowing other  
       ti ch'ien pu ta                people's money is not  
       hao.                                a very good (habit).

"Chieh" means both to borrow and to lend, and there is no difference in tone to help in differentiating the two meanings. You have to look to the context to discover the difference. As a help, sometimes "chieh-lai" is used for "to borrow", and "chieh-ch-ü" for "to lend". "Chieh-kei" is also used in the latter sense.

28. B. Na yao k'an ch'ing      28. That depends on cir-  
       hsing tsên yang.                cumstances.

"Yao", must, need to.

"K'an" is used in the sense of "depends on", as well as of "look at".

29. A. Yu ti shih hou hao,      29. Sometimes it is all right,  
       yu ti shih hou pu                sometimes not, isn't  
       hao, shih pu shih.                it?

"Yu ti shih hou", sometimes. Lit. "There are times".

30. B. Tui la.                        30. Right.

Note how "tui" means "right" as well as agreeing, etc.

27. 借 Chieh.<sup>4</sup> To borrow anything, also means to lend!
28. 看 K'an.<sup>4</sup> To look at, regard, depends (in the sense as translated).  
 情形 Ch'ing.<sup>2</sup> Facts, affairs, feelings, nature.  
 形 Hsing.<sup>4</sup> Form, appearance.  
 情形 Ch'ing-hsing. Circumstances.  
 怎 Tsên.<sup>3</sup> How? In what way?  
 怎樣 Tsên-yang. How? In what way, manner, etc.
- 29 時 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Time, season.  
 候 Hou.<sup>4</sup> A time or period, to wait, expect.  
 時候 Shih-hou. Time, season, time of day.
30. 對 Tui.<sup>4</sup> Right, to agree with.

## DIALOGUE No. 6

Mistress and Servants discuss domestic matters.

Mistress, *M.*      Servant(s), *S.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai chiao wo pa.  | 1. Did you (Lady) call me?  |
| 2. <i>M.</i> Shih ti. Chiao ch'u tzu ho k'an mên ti (mên fang) lai, wo yao ho ni mên shuo chi chü hua. | 2. Yes, call the cook and gate-man. I want to say something to you (lit. say a few sentences to you). |
| 3. <i>S.</i> T'a mên chiu lai. Ai, lai la.   | 3. They will be along shortly. Ah, here they come!  |
| 4. <i>M.</i> Tso hsia pa.  | 4. Sit down!  |
| 5. <i>S.</i> (In a body.) Pu yung tso. Wo mên chan cho ti hao.   | 5. No need for us to sit. It is more fitting that we stand.   |

Servants naturally expect to stand in the presence of their mistress.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. <i>M.</i> Chin t'ien wo hên mang, yao ta chia pang mang. | 6. I am very busy to-day, and want you all to help. |
|---|---|

"Ta-chia", a frequently used expression for "All of you".

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai chiao wo mên tso shih-mo. Wo mên chao pan chiu shih la. | 7. What do you want us to do? We will do as you say (lit. we according to just so). |
|--|---|

"Chao-pan". According—act. Do as you say.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 8. <i>M.</i> Hsien pa ch'ih fan ti chia chü na lai, wo yao k'an i k'an. | 8. First bring the cutlery and crockery (lit. the eating utensils) and let me see them. |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 6

- 六            Liu.<sup>4</sup> Six.
2. 厨            Ch'u.<sup>3</sup> Kitchen, cook.  
房            Fang.<sup>2</sup> Room, house, with preceding  
              means, kitchen, or cook.
- 句            Chü.<sup>4</sup> Sentence, phrase.
- 
4. 下            Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Down, beneath, below.
5. 站            Chan.<sup>4</sup> To stand, station, post, etc.
- 
6. 忙            Mang.<sup>2</sup> Busy.  
家            Chia.<sup>1</sup> Home, family.  
大 家        Ta-chia. All, everybody.  
帮            Pang.<sup>1</sup> Help, assist.
- 
8. 傢            Chia.<sup>1</sup> Utensils.  
具            Chü.<sup>4</sup> Utensils.

9. S. T'ai t'ai shih chiao      9. Do you want us to bring  
     wo mên pa tao              the knives, forks,  
     tzu, ch'a tzu,                spoons and ladles,  
     t'iao shih ho shao           the whole lot?  
     tzu, tou yao na  
     lai ma.

Notice the position of " tou ", meaning all. It follows the enumeration of the things which form the compound subject, gathering them all up as it were.

10. M. Shih ti, yeh yao na      10. Yes, I also want you to  
     ch'a pei, wan,                bring the tea-cups,  
     tieh tzu ho p'an              bowls, saucers and  
     tzu.                              plates.

The " ho ", meaning " and ", usually precedes the last of a number of items enumerated together.

11. S. Chê hsieh tung hsi      11. When we have brought  
     na lai la, chiao                them, where do you  
     wo mên fang tsai              want us to put them?  
     na li ni.
12. M. Pa t'a mên tou fang      12. Put them all on the  
     tsai cho tzu shang.            table.

" T'a-men ", here applied to inanimate things.

13. S. T'ai t'ai chin t'ien      13. Aren't you inviting  
     wan shang, pu                somegueststo-night?  
     shih ch'ing k'o  
     ma.
14. M. Pu shih wan shang      14. No, not this evening.  
     ch'ing k'o, shih                I am asking a few  
     chin t'ien hsia wu              folk to tea this after-  
     ch'ing chi ko jên                noon.  
     lai ho ch'a.
15. S. Na mo, t'ai t'ai tê      15. Then you should tell  
     chiao ch'u fang                the kitchen (cook) to  
     to k'ao mien pao                bake a lot of bread  
     ho tien hsin.                    and cakes.

Note the position of " to ", meaning more. It precedes the verb.

- 9 刀 叉 調 匙 勺  
 Tao.<sup>1</sup> Knife, blade.  
 Ch'a.<sup>1</sup> Fork.  
 T'iao.<sup>2</sup> To stir, mix.  
 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Ch'ih.<sup>2</sup> Spoon, key.  
 Shao<sup>2</sup> (tzu). Scoop, ladle.
10. 碟 盤  
 Tieh<sup>2</sup> (tzu). Plate, saucer.  
 P'an<sup>2</sup> (tzu). Plate, dish.
11. 放  
 Fang.<sup>4</sup> Put, place.
12. 桌  
 Cho<sup>1</sup> (tzu). Table.
13. 晚  
 Wan.<sup>3</sup> Evening, late.
14. 午 下午  
 Wu.<sup>3</sup> Noon.  
 Hsia-wu. Afternoon.
15. 多 烤 麵 包  
 To.<sup>1</sup> Much, many, how (in figures).  
 K'ao.<sup>2</sup> To bake, roast.  
 Mien.<sup>4</sup> Flour, bread.  
 Pao.<sup>1</sup> Parcel, wrap, with the preceding, a loaf, bread.

16. *M.* Huang yu ho kuo tzu chiang, to pu to. 16. Is there a fair quantity of butter and jam (in the house)?

17. *S.* Chê hsieh, tou kou shih lai ko k'o jen ch'ih. 17. There is enough of these for about ten guests.

"Lai", come, is used in multiples of ten, to indicate roughly that number.

18. *M.* Chia chü, yeh kou shih lai ko jên yung ma. 18. Are the table utensils (crockery, cutlery, etc.), sufficient for about ten people?

19. *S.* Pu ta kou. Yao shih tao tzu, ch'a tzu pu kou ti shih hou, k'o i yü pei k'uai tzu, chiao t'a mên shih. 19. Not quite enough. (But) if the knives and forks are insufficient, we might have chopsticks ready for them to use.

20. *M.* Chih p'a yu ti jên pu hui shih k'uai tzu. 20. My fear is that some of them will not be able to use chopsticks.

"Chih p'a". Only fear, A mental reservation.

21. *S.* Na tao mei yu fa tzu la. 21. Then there is nothing we can do.



15. 點 Tien.<sup>3</sup> A dot, mark out, with the next, cakes, pastry.  
 心 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> Heart, with the preceding, cakes, pastry.
16. 黃 Huang.<sup>2</sup> Yellow, with the next, butter.  
 油 Yu.<sup>2</sup> Oil, with preceding, butter.  
 果 Kuo<sup>3</sup> (tzu). Fruit, consequences, etc., with the next, jam, preserve.  
 醬 Chiang.<sup>1</sup> Thick, paste, etc., with preceding, jam, preserve.
17. 够 Kou.<sup>4</sup> Enough, sufficient.  
 十 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Ten.  
 十來個 Shih-lai-ko. About ten.

19. 筴 K'uai<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Chopsticks.  
 使 Shih.<sup>3</sup> To employ, use.

20. 只 Chih.<sup>3</sup> Only.  
 怕 P'a.<sup>4</sup> To fear.

21. 倒 Tao.<sup>3</sup> On the contrary, used for emphasis as, then in that case.

## DIALOGUE No. 7

Between a Chinese villager, *V.*, and a foreigner, *F.*, meeting for the first time.

The student will note that in Chinese, as in many other languages, there are different ways of addressing a person, according to his education or social status. In this dialogue alternatives are offered for a number of sentences. These are marked respectively *C.* for common, and *P.* for polite. You can never go wrong in using the polite form of speech, even to the most rusticated. But if you find that they are embarrassed you can readily adopt the more common and familiar form.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>F.</i> Hsien shêng hao ma.  | 1. Good morning sir, are you well?  |
| 2. <i>V.</i> Hsieh hsieh, hsien shêng ni hao. ( <i>C.</i> )<br>Ch'êng wen. Ch'êng wen. ( <i>P.</i> )                | 2. Thank you, I hope you are well?<br>(Thank you) I have received your inquiry. |
| 3. <i>F.</i> Hsien shêng (nin) ch'ih la fan mei yu.   | 3. Have you eaten?  |
| 4. <i>V.</i> Ch'ih la. Hsien shêng (nin) ch'ih la ma. <i>or</i><br>Hai mei yu ch'ih. Hsien shêng (nin) ch'ih la ma. | 4. Yes, have you had your meal?<br>No, not yet; have you had your meal?         |
| 5. <i>F.</i> P'ien kuo la. ( <i>P.</i> )  | 5. Yes, I am ashamed to say.  |
| 6. <i>V.</i> Kuei hsing. ( <i>P.</i> )<br>Hsing shih mo. ( <i>C.</i> )  | 6. What is your name?   |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 7.

- 七 Ch'i.<sup>1</sup> Seven.
2. 承 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> To receive.  
問 Wên.<sup>2</sup> To inquire, ask, a question.  
承問 Ch'êng-wên. Used together politely, in  
reply to any personal inquiry.
3. 您 Nin.<sup>2</sup> Polite form of Ni—You, Sir.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. <i>F.</i> Chien (pi) hsing<br>Wang. (P.)<br>Wo hsing Wang.<br>(C.)           | 7. My humble name is<br>Wang.<br>My name is Wang.                      |
| 8. <i>V.</i> T'ai fu. (P.)  | 8. What is your honour-<br>able appellation?                           |
| 9. <i>F.</i> Ts'ao tzu Ch'ing<br>Chang. (P.)                                    | 9. My unworthy (lit.<br>grass) is Ch'ing<br>Chang.                     |
| 10. <i>V.</i> Ming tzu chiao shih<br>mo. <i>or</i><br>Shih mo ming tzu.<br>(C.) | 10. What is your name?,<br><i>i.e.</i> , given or Chris-<br>tian name. |
| 11. <i>F.</i> Ming chiao Ch'ing<br>Chang. <i>or</i><br>Ch'ing Chang. (C.)       | 11. My name is Ch'ing<br>Chang.<br>Ch'ing Chang.                       |
- The Chinese usually have at least two names, in addition to the surname, one for everyday use and the other for special occasions.
- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 12. <i>V.</i> Hsien shêng to ta<br>nien chi. <i>or</i><br>Hsien shêng to ta<br>sui shu. (C.) | 12. How old are you sir? |
|--|--------------------------|
- Note the expression "to", introducing questions about quantities, size, age, distance, etc., equivalent to our "how". "Ma" is sometimes added, *e.g.*, "to ma yuan", how far?
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 13. <i>F.</i> Wu shih wu. <i>or</i><br>Wu shih wu sui. | 13. Fifty-five.<br>Fifty-five years (old). |
|--|--|

7. 賤 Chien.<sup>4</sup> Humble, mean, low, cheap.
8. 甫 Fu.<sup>3</sup> Designation, title or rank, etc., surname.
9. 草 Ts'ao.<sup>3</sup> Grass, so humble, used as a term of self-depreciation.
- 字 Tzu.<sup>4</sup> The ordinary character for a name, used here in contrast with the very honourable appellation used by the inquirer.
- 清 Ch'ing.<sup>1</sup> Clear, used as a name.
- 長 Chang.<sup>4</sup> A staff, used as a name.
10. 名 Ming.<sup>7</sup> Name, not surname, fame.
12. 多 To.<sup>1</sup> Much, many, how many. With "mo" means How much, how many?
- 大 Ta.<sup>4</sup> Big, great.
- 大多 To-ta. How big, great; etc.
- 年 Nien.<sup>2</sup> Year, years.
- 紀 Chi.<sup>4</sup> To record.
- 年紀 Nien-chi. One's age.
- 歲 Sui.<sup>4</sup> The year, years.
- 數 Shu.<sup>4</sup> Number, to count, etc.
- 歲數 Sui-shu. One's age.

14. V. Hsien shêng kuei 14. What is your esteemed  
kêng. or age?  
Hsien shêng kuei  
chia tzu. (P.)

A question like "kuei chia tzu" might elicit a cryptic reply, as the person asked might indicate the animal which presides over the year of birth. There is a clear question relating to this, viz., "Hsien shêng shu shêmno ti": "What (animal) do you belong to?" The "chia tzu" refers to the ten stems, which, with the twelve branches combined in pairs, give the Chinese sexagenary cycle (sixty years). Cf. Tennyson's lines in Locksley Hall: "Better fifty years of Europe than a cycle of Cathay." I wonder whether Tennyson knew there was only ten years' difference between the two! The older Chinese were very fond of guessing ages by means of the "animal" system. There are twelve animals, corresponding to the twelve "branches" or horary characters referred to above. The animals, in order of sequence, are: rat, ox, tiger, hare, dragon, serpent, horse, sheep, monkey, cock, dog, boar. These again correspond with certain constellations, and ultimately the calculation of age is based on the particular constellation which was paramount at the time of birth.

15. F. Hsien shêng kao 15. What is your exalted  
shou. (P.) age sir?  
16. V. Hsiung ti hai hsiao, 16. I (younger brother) am  
hsü tu la wu shih still young. I have  
wu sui. (P.) lived vainly for fifty-  
five years.

17. V. Hsien shêng kuei 17. Which is your honour-  
kuo. or able country?  
Kuei kuo shih na i  
kuo. or Where is your honour-  
Kuei kuo shih na able country?  
li. (P.)  
18. F. Pu kan tang. Pi 18. My humble country is  
kuo Ying Kuo. \* England.  
(P.)

Ying-kuo is England. Ta Ying-kuo is Great Britain.

14. 庚子 Kêng.<sup>1</sup> Age, used only in polite language.  
甲子 Chia-tzu. The first term of the Sexagenary cycle, which the Chinese use for the reckoning of time. Here it is a honorific.
15. 高 Kao.<sup>1</sup> High.  
壽 Shou.<sup>4</sup> Age, old age, long life.
16. 兄 Hsiung.<sup>1</sup> Elder brother.  
弟 Ti.<sup>4</sup> Younger brother.  
兄弟 Hsiung-ti. Younger brother. Used in self-depreciation.
- 小 Hsiao.<sup>3</sup> Small, young.  
虛 Hsü.<sup>1</sup> In vain, empty, useless.  
度 Tu.<sup>4</sup> To ford, pass over, pass.
17. 英 Ying.<sup>1</sup> Brave, illustrious. Used for England.

19. *V.* Hsien shêng shih na li lai ti. (C.) 19. Where do you hail from? *or*  
Where have you come from?
20. *F.* Wo shih Nan Ching lai ti. 20. I (have) come from Nanking.
21. *V.* Hsien shêng kuei ch'u. *or*  
Fu shang tsai na li. (P.) 21. Where do you reside?
22. *F.* Pu kan tang. Pi ch'u Peip'ing. (P.) 22. Unworthy, my humble abode is at Peip'ing.
23. *V.* Peip'ing li chê li to yuan. (C.) 23. How far is Peip'ing from here?  
Lit. Peip'ing distant here how far?
24. *F.* San pai to li lu. 24. Over three hundred li.
25. *V.* Hsien shêng wang na li ch'ü. 25. Where are you going sir?
26. *F.* Wo shang Han k'ou ch'ü. 26. I am going to Hankow.
27. *V.* Ko hsia shih tsou shui lu, hai shih tsou han lu lai ti ni. 27. Did you travel by sea or overland sir?
28. *F.* Wo mei yu tsou shui lu, yeh mei yu tsou han lu, wo shih tsou fei chi lai ti. 28. I travelled neither by sea nor by land. I came by plane.



20. 南 Nan.<sup>2</sup> South.  
 南 Nan-Ching. Nanking. Lit. Southern Ca-  
 京 Ching. Nanking. Lit. Southern Ca-  
 府 pit.
21. 處 Ch'u.<sup>3</sup> Place, dwelling place.  
 府 Fu.<sup>3</sup> Home, residence (polite).  
 府上 Fu-shang. Residence.  
 平 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> Peace, level, tranquil, ordinary.
23. 離 Li.<sup>2</sup> Apart from, separated from.  
 遠 Yüan.<sup>3</sup> Far, distance, distant.
24. 百 Pai. Po.<sup>3 2 4</sup> Hundred.  
 里 Li.<sup>3</sup> The Chinese measure of distance.  
 "Li" about one-third of a mile.  
 路 Lu.<sup>4</sup> Road.  
 往 Wang.<sup>3 4</sup> Towards, synonym for "Shang".
26. 漢 Han.<sup>4</sup> The word for ancient Chinese dy-  
 nasty. Part of Hankow.
27. 閣 Ko.<sup>2</sup> Council, title of respect. With next  
 means Sir.  
 閣下 Ko-hsia. Sir.  
 旱 Han.<sup>4</sup> Dry, dry land.
28. 飛 Fei.<sup>1</sup> To fly.  
 機 Chi.<sup>1</sup> A machine, opportunity.  
 飛機 Fei-chi. Aeroplane.

29. V. Tsou la chi t'ien ti . 29. How many days were  
kung fu. you en route?
30. F. I kung ssu t'ien ti 30. Four days in all.  
kung fu.
31. V. Ai ya, fei ch'ang ti 31. I say, that is quick.  
k'uai.

29. 工 Kung.<sup>1</sup> Work. With the next means time.  
夫 Fu.<sup>1</sup> A man. With the preceding means time.
30. 工夫 Kung-fu. Time in which to do things.  
一共 I-kung. Altogether.
31. 非 Fei.<sup>1</sup> Not. With the next means unusual.  
常 Ch'ang.<sup>2</sup> Usual, ordinary. With the preceding means unusual, extraordinary.
- 非常 Fei-ch'ang. Unusual, extraordinary.  
快 K'uai.<sup>4</sup> Quick, lively.

## DIALOGUE No. 8

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. F. Chia li yu chi ko<br>jên.                              | 1. How many are there in<br>your family?                           |
| 2. V. T'ung kung liu ko.                                     | 2. Six in all.   |
| 3. F. Fu mu hai tsai ma.<br>or<br>Fu mu tou tsai pu<br>tsai. | 3. Are your parents<br>living?                                     |
| 4. V. Fu ch'in tsai, mu<br>ch'in pu tsai la.                 | 4. My father is living, but<br>my mother is dead.                  |
| 5. F. Ling tsun kao shou.<br>(P.)                            | 5. What is the exalted age<br>of your esteemed<br>father?          |
| 6. V. Pa shih erh sui.                                       | 6. Eighty-two.   |
| 7. F. Ling t'ang ch'ü<br>shih, shih to ta<br>nien chi.       | 7. What was the age of<br>your honoured mo-<br>ther when she died? |
| 8. V. Wu shih liu sui.                                       | 8. Fifty-six.  |
| 9. F. K'o hsi. K'o hsi.                                      | 9. How sad! (what a<br>pity).                                      |
| 10. V. Hsien shêng yu pao<br>chüan mei yu.                   | 10. Have you a family?<br>(precious wife).                         |
| 11. F. Hai mei yu ch'êng<br>chia.                            | 11. I have not yet set up<br>a home (not yet<br>married).          |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 8

- 八 Pa.<sup>1</sup> Eight.
2. 統 T'ung.<sup>2</sup> Together, connected.  
 共 Kung.<sup>4</sup> Together, combined.  
 統共 T'ung-kung. All together.
3. 父 Fu.<sup>4</sup> Father.  
 母 Mu.<sup>3</sup> Mother.  
 父母 Fu-mu. Parents.  
 在 Tsai.<sup>4</sup> Note special meaning of "to be living".
4. 親 Ch'in.<sup>1</sup> Close relationship, especially in family or clan.  
 父親 Fu-ch'in. Father.  
 母親 Mu-ch'in. Mother.
5. 令 Ling.<sup>4</sup> Honourable, used in ceremonious language.  
 尊 Tsun.<sup>1</sup> Honourable, used in ceremonious language.
- 令尊 Ling-tsun. Your honourable father.
7. 堂 T'ang.<sup>2</sup> The hall, principal room, honorific for mother.  
 令堂 Ling-t'ang. Your mother.  
 Shih.<sup>4</sup> The world, this life, generation.
9. 惜 Hsi.<sup>1</sup> To pity, sympathise.  
 可惜 K'o-hsi. What a pity! pitiable.
10. 寶 Pao.<sup>3</sup> Precious, valuable.  
 眷 Chüan.<sup>4</sup> Family, wife.  
 寶眷 Pao-chüan. Your family, or wife.
11. 成 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> Complete, finish, accomplish, become.

12. *V.* Hsien shêng ting la      12. Are you engaged?  
       hun mei yu.
13. *F.* Ting la.                      13. Yes.

*Alternative questions and answers to the foregoing.*

14. *V.* Hsien shêng chieh      14. Are you married?  
       la hun ma.
- “Ch’ü ch’in” is still heard for “to marry”. But “chieh hun” is more up to date.
15. *F.* Chieh la hun la.            15. Yes, I am.
16. *V.* Hsien shêng yu chi      16. How many children  
       ko hai tzu.                      have you?
17. *F.* Ssu ko.                        17. Four.
18. *V.* Nan ti yu chi ko          18. How many boys?  
       [wei. (P.)].
19. *F.* Liang ko nan ti,          19. Two boys and two girls.  
       liang ko nü ti.
20. *V.* Hao fu ch’i.                20. You have great happiness.
21. *F.* T’o fu, t’o fu. (P.)      21. My happiness is due to you.

The expression “t’o fu” is frequently used after a person has been congratulated, the idea being that such felicity as has been gained is due to the other person’s merit.

22. *V.* Hsien shêng ling      22. How many boys (noble  
       lang chi wei.                    princes) have you?
23. *F.* Hsiao ch’üan liang      23. Two (small puppies).  
       ko.
24. *V.* Ling ai yu chi wei.      24. How many daughters  
       (P.)                              (esteemed loved ones).

These sentences are included here for the convenience of the student. They are not often heard in China now. But it is just possible they may be used, and it is well to be ready for the emergency.

12. 訂           Ting.<sup>4</sup> Fix, settle, become engaged to be  
          married.  
    婚           Hun.<sup>1</sup> Marriage, marry.  
    訂 婚       Ting-hun. To be engaged to be married.
14. 結           Chieh.<sup>2</sup> To tie a knot, join together.  
    結 婚       Chieh-hun. To marry, to be married.
16. 孩           Hai.<sup>2</sup> Child, children.  
    男           Nan.<sup>2</sup> Male (of human beings).  
    位           Wei.<sup>4</sup> Classifier of persons (polite).
19. 女           Nü.<sup>3</sup> Female (of persons).
20. 福           Fu.<sup>2</sup> Happiness, felicity.  
    福 氣       Fu-ch'i. Happiness, felicity.
21. 托           T'o.<sup>4</sup> Rely upon, due to, depend on.  
    郎           Lang.<sup>2</sup> Prince, your son.
23. 犬           Ch'üan.<sup>3</sup> Dog, pup.
24. 嫪           Ai, ngai.<sup>4</sup> Loved, beloved, used of other  
          people's daughters.





25. 差事  
差事  
辦事  
公
- Ch'ai.<sup>1</sup> Commission, send.  
Shih.<sup>4</sup> Affair, matter, business.  
Ch'ai-shih. Commission, public work, appointment.  
Pan.<sup>4</sup> To do, manage, transact.  
Kung.<sup>1</sup> Public, official.
26. 商
- Shang.<sup>1</sup> Commerce.
27. 奉教
- Fêng.<sup>4</sup> To join, attach oneself to.  
Chiao.<sup>1</sup> Instruction, church.
29. 耶穌  
基督  
天主  
天主
- Yeh<sup>1</sup>-su.<sup>1</sup> Jesus.  
Chi<sup>1</sup>-tu.<sup>1</sup> Christ, Christian, Protestant.  
Chu.<sup>3</sup> Lord, used of Christ.  
T'ien<sup>1</sup>-chu.<sup>3</sup> Roman Catholic (lit. Heaven's Lord).

31. *V.* Chê li yu Yeh su Chiao t'ang. *or* Chê li yu fu yin t'ang. 31. There is a Protestant Church here (Gospel hall).
32. *F.* Yu mu shih, nü chiao shih, tsai chô li ma. 32. Is there a pastor or a woman missionary here?
33. *V.* Yu chiao shih, mei yu mu shih. 33. There is a woman missionary, but no pastor.
34. *V.* Hsien shêng shih mo shih hou tao ti Chung Kuo. 34. When did you come to China?
35. *F.* Wo shih san ko yüeh i ch'ien lai ti. 35. I came over three months ago.
36. *V.* Ai ya. Hsien shêng shuo ti Chung Kuo hua chên hao. 36. My! you speak Chinese really well.
37. *F.* Kuo chiang, kuo chiang. Wo pu kuo hui chiang chi chü. 37. You flatter me. I can speak only a few sentences.

"Chiang" is the usual term for "preaching". But as here indicated it also means to speak, perhaps intelligibly!

38. *V. and F.* Tsai chien, tsai chien. 38. Good-bye, good-bye.

31. 堂 T'ang.<sup>2</sup> Hall, church.  
     音 Yin.<sup>1</sup> Sound.  
     福音 Fu-yin. Gospel.
32. 牧 Ma.<sup>4</sup> Shepherd, pastor.  
     師 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Teacher.  
     士 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Scholar, teacher.  
     教士 Chiao-shih. Teacher (used of missionaries).
35. 前 Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Before, formerly.  
     以前 I ch'ien. Before, ago.
37. 不過 Pu-kuo. But.  
     講 Chiang.<sup>1</sup> Expound, preach, say.

## DIALOGUE No. 9A

## THE NUMERALS

## I. CARDINALS

A. The numbers one to ten are as follows:—

1. One. I.
2. Two. Erh. Liang.
3. Three. San.
4. Four. Ssu.
5. Five. Wu.
6. Six. Liu.
7. Seven. Ch'i.
8. Eight. Pa.
9. Nine. Chiu.
10. Ten. Shih.

Note that "erh" and "liang" both mean "two". Amongst the numerals "liang" is used with 2,000, *i.e.*, "liang ch'ien", and 20,000, which is "liang wan". In **most** other cases "erh" is used.

However, when "two" is used as a numeral adjective, *i.e.*, when it precedes nouns in a qualifying sense, "liang" is the correct form, *e.g.*:—

11. Two men. Liang ko jen.
12. Two books. Liang pen shu.

B. The numbers eleven to nineteen are made up of 10 plus the digit, *e.g.*:—

13. Eleven. Shih i. *i.e.*, ten-one.
14. Seventeen. Shih ch'i. *i.e.*, ten-seven, etc.

C. Exact multiples of ten, *i.e.*, 20–90, are made up by the reverse process, *viz.*, the digit followed by 10, as follows:—

15. Twenty. Erh shih. *i.e.*, two-ten.
16. Eighty. Pa shih. *i.e.*, eight-ten, etc.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 9A

9. 九      Chiu.<sup>9</sup> Nine.

D. Hundreds and compound numbers above a hundred (pai) are as follows:—

17. One hundred. I pai.
18. Six hundred. Liu pai.
19. Nine hundred. Chiu pai, etc., for the exact hundreds.
20. 110. I pai i shih. (or) i pai i.
21. 112. I pai i shih erh.
22. 115. I pai i shih wu.
23. 170. I pai ch'i.
24. 768. Ch'i pai liu shih pa.

Now exercise yourself and your fellow-student in these numbers, using the following sentence:—

25. Che ko shu mu tzu, fan      25. How do you translate  
     ch'u lai, shih tsen              this number?  
     yang ti nien ni.

E. Where a "nought" comes in the middle of the figures, it is usual, though not the universal practice, to insert "ling", e.g.:—

26. 105. I pai ling wu.
27. 209. Erh pai ling chiu.

To leave out the "ling" in combinations of this kind would lead to confusion, as "i pai wu" would be 150.

F. "Thousand" is "ch'ien". Compounds and multiples of thousands follow these examples, viz.:—

28. 2,000. Liang ch'ien (erh ch'ien is sometimes used).
29. 1,089. I ch'ien ling pa shih chiu. or I ch'ien pa shih chiu.

There is no possibility of confusion in this instance, so the use of "ling" is optional.

30. 8,908. San ch'ien chiu pai ling san ("ling" is necessary).
31. 3,980. San ch'ien chiu pai san (cf. 30).
32. 10,000. I wan.

25. 目            Mu.<sup>4</sup> Index, list, eye.  
                  Shu-mu-tzu. Number(s), figures.  
     緡            Fan.<sup>1</sup> To translate, turnover.
26. 零            Ling.<sup>2</sup> Nought, cipher.
28. 千            Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> Thousand.
32. 萬            Wan.<sup>4</sup> Ten thousand, myriad.

83. 11,042. I wan i ch'ien *ling* ssu shih erh.

84. 30,056. San wan *ling* wu shih liu.

85. 40,007. Ssu wan *ling* ch'i ko. *or*  
Ssu wan *ling ling* ch'i.

The device of adding "ko" in the first of these two alternatives serves to indicate that "seven" is a digit. Only multiply the "ling" when it is absolutely essential for clarity. In reading out complex numbers for records more frequent use is made of "ling".

## II. ORDINALS

These are formed by the simple expedient of preceding the Cardinal numbers by "ti", as follows:—

36. The first. Ti i.

T'ou i ko. (This is a common alternative,  
lit. Head one piece.)

37. The eighteenth. Ti shih pa.

38. The 135th. Ti i pai san shih wu, etc.

## III. FRACTIONS

39. A half. I pan. (One and a half is "i ko pan".)

40. A tenth. Shih fen chih i.

41. Three-quarters. Ssu fen chih san.

42. Seven-eighths. Pa fen chih ch'i.

All fractional numbers are formed in this way, *i.e.*, by putting the greater number, *i.e.*, the denominator, first, add "fen", which means "part", follow this by "chih", which is a possessive, and then finish by the smaller number, *i.e.*, the numerator. *E.g.*, a tenth is "ten parts one", or one out of ten, etc.



36. 頭 T'ou.<sup>2</sup> Head, first, beginning.

39. 半 Pan.<sup>4</sup> Half.

40. 分 Fên.<sup>1</sup> A tenth, portion, part.

之 Chih.<sup>1</sup> Sign of possessive, like "ti", etc.

## DIALOGUE No. 9B

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Tsai ti hsia yu chi<br>ko tung-hsi. | 1. How many things are<br>there on the floor?  |
| 2. B. Têng i têng, wo<br>shu shu pa.      | 2. Wait a moment while I<br>count them.  |
| 3. A. Tung hsi kou shu<br>pu kou shu ni.  | 3. Are there any things<br>missing? (lit. are the<br>full number of things<br>there) ? |

" Kou shu ", enough number, so the full number.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 4. B. Wo k'an shao (ch'a,<br>tuan) cho i ko. | 4. I think there is one<br>short. |
| 5. A. Na mo t'a mên pi<br>hsü pu shang.      | 5. Then they must make<br>it up.  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. B. Chin t'ien shih hsing<br>ch'i (li pai) chi. | 6. What is the day of the<br>week to-day? |
|---|---|

" Hsing ch'i chi ". Note how the " chi " comes at the end, What is the number? (Lit. Day of the week how many?)

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 7. A. Chin t'ien shih hsing<br>ch'i (li pai) san. | 7. To-day is Wednesday. |
|---|-------------------------|

" Li pai san ". Here again note the position of " san ", three.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 8. B. Chin t'ien ch'u chi.<br>Chin t'ien shih-chi.<br>Chin t'ien êrh shih<br>chi. | 8. What day of the month<br>is it to-day (applies<br>only from first to<br>tenth), 2. from<br>eleventh to twen-<br>tieth, 3. to the rest. |
|---|---|

- |                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 9. A. Chin t'ien shih ch'u<br>pa. | 9. It is the eighth. |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|

" Ch'u pa ". The expression " ch'u " applies to the first ten days of the month.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 9B

1. 地           Ti.<sup>4</sup> Earth, floor, locality.
4. 少           Shao.<sup>3</sup> Few, little, short of.
5. 必           Pi.<sup>4</sup> Must, certainly, necessary.  
   須           Hsü.<sup>1</sup> Necessary, must, wait, a moment.  
   補           Pu.<sup>3</sup> Patch, repair, mend, make up for.
6. 星           Hsing.<sup>1</sup> Star, spark.  
   期           Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Date, appointed time, expect.  
               Hsing-ch'i, week.
7. 禮           Li.<sup>3</sup> Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.  
   拜           Pai.<sup>4</sup> Worship, pay respect. Li-pai, week.
8. 初           Ch'u.<sup>1</sup> Beginning, first.

10. B. T'ou i ko yüeh chiao chêng yüeh, mo i ko yüeh (huo ti shih êrh ko yüeh) chiao la yüeh. 10. The first month of the year is called Cheng Yueh, and the last month (or the twelfth) is called La Yueh.
11. A. Ch'i yü na chi ko yüeh chiao shên-mo. 11. What are the rest of the months called?

"Ch'i yü", the remainder. "Ch'i" is equal to "the", "that", etc.

12. B. Êrh yüeh, san yüeh, ssu yüeh i chih tao shih i yüeh tou shih i yang (tou shih chao li ti). 12. The second, third, fourth, up to the eleventh are the same (or follow the same rule).

"I chih tao", up to, in a series.

Note that in speaking of the months the numeral precedes, just contrary to what has been said above regarding the days of the week.

13. A. K'o shih shih i yüeh yeh chiao tung yüeh. 13. But the eleventh month is also called Tung Yueh (Winter month).
14. B. Nien ti shih shên-mo i ssu. 14. What is meant by "nien ti"?
15. A. Nien ti chiu shih la yüeh tsui hou chi t'ien ti i ssu. 15. It means the last few days of the twelfth month.

Compare the expressions for the first and the last. "T'ou" is used for the former and "mo" for the latter. "T'ou chi t'ien", the first few days. "Mo chi t'ien", the last few days, when the reference is to a fraction of the whole.

16. B. Kuo nien shih shên-mo i ssu. 16. What does "kuo nien" mean?

10. 月 Yüeh.<sup>4</sup> Moon, month.  
     正 Chêng.<sup>4</sup> Right, correct, chief, first month.  
     末 Mo.<sup>4</sup> Last, end, dust, not, branches.  
     腊 La.<sup>4</sup> Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.
11. 其 Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> He, she, it.  
     餘 Yü.<sup>2</sup> Surplus. Ch'i yü, the remainder,  
         surplus.
12. 至 Chih.<sup>4</sup> Reach, reach to, send.  
     隨 Sui.<sup>2</sup> Comply with, according to, follow.  
     一直 I chih. Straight.
13. 冬 Tung.<sup>1</sup> Winter.
14. 思 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Think on, ponder, thought.

17. A. "Kuo nien" chiu shih hsin nien, t'ou i t'ien ti i ssu. 17. That is the first day of the New Year.
18. B. Pa chê hsieh wan i êrh, fen k'ai kei hai tzu wan. 18. Divide these toys up and give them to the children to play with.
19. A. Pa chê hsieh t'ang yeh fên kei t'amen. 19. Divide this toffee amongst them too.
20. B. K'o i, mei i ko jên kei t'a i fen. 20. Yes, let each have a portion.
21. A. Wo i ching fên la liang tz'u. 21. I have divided it twice already.

17. 新 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> New.
18. 玩 Wan.<sup>4</sup> Enjoy, amuse, play.  
 藝 I.<sup>4</sup> Skill, craft.  
 玩藝兒 Wan-i-erh. Playthings, toys.  
 耍 Shua.<sup>3</sup> To play, sport, joke.
19. 糖 T'ang.<sup>2</sup> Sugar, sweets.
20. 每 Mei.<sup>3</sup> Each, every.  
 份 Fên.<sup>1</sup> A portion.
21. 經 Ching.<sup>1</sup> Pass through, manage.

## DIALOGUE No. 10

Time by the clock, and other temporal expressions.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A. Ni shên shang tai la<br>piao mei yu.         | 1. Have you a watch with<br>you?                  |
| 2. B. Mei yu. Tan shih<br>tui mie'rh yu<br>chung.  | 2. No, but there is a clock<br>opposite.          |
| 3. A. Ni k'an yu chi tien<br>chung.                | 3. What time is it? or<br>See what time it is.    |
| 4. B. Wo chin shih yen,<br>k'an pu ch'ing<br>ch'u. | 4. I am short-sighted, and<br>cannot see clearly. |

"K'an pu ch'ing ch'u", an illustration of two words being used together, with the negative in between to denote a qualification of the verbal action—"see . . . not clear".

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. A. Wo k'an chien la.<br>Hsien tsai shih<br>(yu) i tien chung. | 5. I can see. It is one<br>o'clock now. |
|--|---|

"Shih", is, or "yu", have, are both in common use for expressions of time.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. B. Ai. Wo yo la i ko<br>p'êng yu, shih êh<br>tien pan chung<br>chien mien. I<br>ching tan wu la. | 6. Oh dear! I made an<br>appointment with a<br>friend to see him at<br>12.30. I am already<br>late. |
|---|---|

"Tan shih" or "k'o shih" for "but" might be included before "i ching tan wu liao". But, as has been frequently hinted, Chinese are disinclined to use extra words if the sense is already clear.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. A. Yeh hsü t'a hai tsai,<br>têng ni. | 7. Perhaps he is still there,<br>waiting for you. |
|---|---|



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 10

1. 身 Shên.<sup>1</sup> Body, self.  
 身上 Shên-shang. On one's person.  
 表 Piao.<sup>3</sup> Watch.
2. 面 Mien.<sup>4</sup> Face, front, side, aspect.  
 對面 Tui-mien. Opposite, the opposite side.  
 鐘 Chung.<sup>1</sup> Clock, bell.
3. 點 Tien.<sup>3</sup> A stroke, mark, dot.  
 幾點鐘 Chi-tien-chung. What is the time?
4. 近 Chin.<sup>4</sup> Near.  
 視 Shih.<sup>4</sup> See, look.  
 近視眼 Chin-shih-yen. Near-sighted.  
 眼 Yen.<sup>3</sup> Eye, the eye.
5. 見 Chien.<sup>4</sup> To see, perceive.
6. 約 Yüeh.<sup>1</sup> Yo.<sup>1</sup> To make an appointment,  
 covenant, bind, agree.  
 見面 Chien-mien. To see anyone, interview.  
 已 I.<sup>3</sup> Particle used as sign of perfect tense  
 already.  
 經 Ching.<sup>1</sup> Pass through, pass.  
 已經 I-ching. Already, past action.  
 耽 Tan.<sup>1</sup> Obstruct, prevent, delay.  
 誤 Wu.<sup>4</sup> To thwart, hinder, delay.
7. 許 Hsü.<sup>3</sup> Perhaps, may be.  
 也許 Yeh-hsü. Perhaps, implying a certain  
 doubt, but not too strong a doubt.

8. B. K'ung p'a t'a têng pu tao wo, tsou la. 8. I fear he will not have been able to wait and will have gone.
- "Teng pu tao", cannot wait. Lit. wait not arrive. "Pu tao" is commonly used with verbs to express inability.
9. A. Hsien tsai chi tien chung. 9. What time is it now?
10. B. I tien kuo i k'o. or I tien i k'o. 10. A quarter past one.
11. A. Yao shih shih êrh tien i k'o, wo Hai k'oikantêshang. 11. If it were a quarter past twelve I could still be there in time.
- "Kan tê shang". Lit. catch up get up. Notice the use of "shang", which with "tê" is commonly used for ability to do this or that. Cf. note 8 above.
12. B. Yao shih shih êrh tien ch'a i k'o, na chiu kêng hao. 12. If it were a quarter to twelve, it would be better.
- "Kêng", more, is the most common form of expressing the comparative degree.
13. A. Hsien tsai chi tien chung. 13. What time is it now?
14. B. I tien êrh shih wu fen. 14. Twenty-five minutes past one.
15. A. Na mo, tsai têng shih fen chung, chiu shih liang tien ch'a êrh shih wu fên, shih pu shih. 15. Then in ten minutes time (lit. again wait ten minutes), it will be twenty-five minutes to two, won't it?

Note "liang" for two. The other form "erh" is used with most numeral expressions. "Liang" is commonly used before nouns.

"Shih pu shih", is not is, right not right, commonly used at the end of statements to throw what precedes into question form, like the French *n'est ce pas*, and many other Continental languages.

8. 恐 K'ung.<sup>3</sup> Fear.  
     怕 P'a.<sup>4</sup> Fear, afraid.  
     恐怕 K'ung-p'a. Fear, I fear.
10. 刻 K'o.<sup>4</sup> A quarter, fifteen minutes.
11. 趕 Kan.<sup>3</sup> To catch up, pursue, drive.
12. 更 Kêng.<sup>4</sup> Sign of comparative, more, more  
     so.  
     差 Ch'a.<sup>1</sup> Short of, to err, differ, also read  
     Ch'ai<sup>1</sup>, to send.

16. *B.* Pu ts'o, pu ts'o.      16. Quite so (lit. not wrong).

"Pu ts'o", not wrong, a common alternative to "tui la", right, and used in same sense.

17. *A.* Ch'ü nien hsia t'ien,  
ni shang na'erh  
pi shu ch'ü ti.      17. Where did you go last  
Summer, to avoid  
the great heat?

18. *B.* Ch'ü nien wo mên  
na'erh yeh mei yu  
ch'ü. Ch'ien nien  
wo mên tao Lao  
Shan ch'ü, pi shu  
ti.      18. We did not go any-  
where last year, but  
the year before last  
we went to Lao Shan  
to escape the heat.

"Na'erh yeh mei yu ch'ü", "anywhere also have not gone", so "we went nowhere". This is a very common idiom. Cf. sentence 20 for another example.

19. *A.* Ni ts'ung Lao Shan  
hui lai i hou, tso  
la shih mo.      19. What did you do after  
you returned from  
Lao Shan?

"I hou", after, like "i ch'ien", before (see 11<sup>29</sup>) follows the verb to which it refers.

20. *B.* Shih mo yeh mei yu  
tso, wo tsai chia  
li hsien cho.      20. I did nothing. I just  
remained idly at  
home.

21. *A.* Ts'ung ch'ien ni pu  
shih ai ta wang  
ch'iu ma.      21. Weren't you fond of  
tennis at one time?

22. *B.* Na ko shih hou, ta  
wang ch'iu, t'i  
chüeh ch'iu, tou  
shih wo hsi huan  
ti.      22. In those days I liked  
both tennis and foot-  
ball.

16. 錯           Ts'o.<sup>4</sup> Wrong, fault.
17. 夏           Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Summer.  
     避           Pi.<sup>4</sup> Avoid, escape, flee.  
     伏           Fu.<sup>2</sup> Summer heat.  
     暑           Shu.<sup>3</sup> Summer heat.
18. 前           Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Before.  
     前年       Ch'ien nien. The year before last.  
     嶗           Lao.<sup>3</sup> Name of hill.  
     山           Shan.<sup>1</sup> Hill, mountain.
19. 從           Ts'ung.<sup>2</sup> From, follow, obey.  
     後           Hou.<sup>4</sup> After, behind.
20. 閒           Hsien.<sup>2</sup> Leisure, idle.
21. 愛           Ai.<sup>4</sup> To love, to like.  
     打           Ta.<sup>3</sup> To beat, strike, to play at . . .  
     球           Ch'iu.<sup>4</sup> Ball.  
     打球       Ta ch'iu. To play with a ball, tennis.  
     打網球   Ta wang ch'iu. Tennis, to play tennis.
22. 網           Wang.<sup>3</sup> Net; see the last.  
     脚           Chiao.<sup>2</sup> Chüeh.<sup>2</sup> Foot.  
     脚球       Chüeh-ch'iu. Football.  
     踢           T'i.<sup>1</sup> To kick.  
     喜           Hsi.<sup>3</sup> Joy, glad, pleased.

23. A. Na mo, ni hou t'ien lai, ho wo ta wang ch'iu, hao ma. 23. Then come and play tennis with me the day after to-morrow; does that appeal?
24. B. Ta hou t'ien hsing pu hsing. 24. Will three days hence do?
25. A. Pu kan shuo, yin wei ch'ien t'ien wo ho i ko p'êng yu yo hao, ta hou t'ien ho t'a ta p'ai. 25. I can't say. The day before yesterday I fixed up with a friend to play cards with him three days hence.
26. B. Na mo, chiu shih hou t'ien pa. 26. Then let it be the day after to-morrow.
27. A. Hao, ni tai liang ko ch'iu p'ai tzu lai. 27. Good, bring two rackets with you.

22. 歡 Huan.<sup>1</sup> Rejoice, pleased.  
 喜歡 Hsi-huan. To be pleased.
24. 大後天 Ta-hou-t'ien. The day after to-morrow.
25. 因 Yin.<sup>1</sup> Cause, because.  
 爲 Wei.<sup>2</sup> Because, do, make, be.  
 朋友 P'êng.<sup>2</sup> Friend, comrade, associate.  
 友 Yu.<sup>3</sup> Friend.  
 定 Ting.<sup>4</sup> Fix, settle, certain.  
 規 Kuei.<sup>1</sup> Rule, fix.  
 定規 Ting-kuei. To have arranged, settled, settle,  
 fix.
- 牌 P'ai.<sup>3</sup> Cards, dominoes.  
 打牌 Ta p'ai. To play cards, etc.
27. 拍 P'ai.<sup>2</sup> To beat, clap, etc.  
 球拍子 Ch'iu-p'ai-tzu. Tennis racquet.

## DIALOGUE No. 11

More about watches, and expressions of time.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A. Ni yu piao mei yu.                                | 1. Have you a watch?                    |
| 2. B. Mei yu. Tan shih<br>wo chia li yu i tso<br>chung. | 2. No, but there is a clock<br>at home. |

Note that expressions of place or time tend to come early in Chinese sentences. Here "tsai chia li", or "chia li", at home, comes first, whereas in English we put such expressions last.

"Tso", a classifier for clock, bell, etc.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. A. Na ko chung tui pu<br>tui.           | 3. Is the clock right?                         |
| 4. B. Pu tui, na ko chung<br>tsou tê man.  | 4. No, that clock is slow<br>(lit. goes slow). |
| 5. A. Wo ti piao tsou tê<br>k'uai.         | 5. My watch gains (lit.<br>goes fast).         |
| 6. B. Na mo, tê pa k'uai<br>man kai i kai. | 6. Then you must alter<br>the regulator.       |

"K'uai man", lit. quick, slow, a good illustration of the way in which adjectives of opposite meaning are joined together to express the abstract noun connected with the idea of both. Here, *e.g.*, "k'uai man" means speed, regulator.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. A. Kai la, yeh mei yu<br>yung.        | 7. I have altered it, but<br>without effect.                 |
| 8. B. Tsên yang mei yu<br>yung ni.       | 8. How is that?  |
| 9. A. Wo ti piao tsou ti<br>mei yu chun. | 9. My watch is unreliable<br>(goes without a stan-<br>dard). |
| 10. B. Na mo, ni ti piao tê<br>hsiu li.  | 10. Then your watch should<br>be repaired.                   |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 11,

2. 座           Tso.<sup>4</sup> The classifier of clocks, bells, etc.
4. 走           Tsou.<sup>3</sup> To go, walk, movement of any kind.  
     慢           Man.<sup>4</sup> Slow.
5. 快           K'uai.<sup>4</sup> Quick, quickly.  
     快慢       K'uai-man. The speed, speed.
6. 改           Kai.<sup>3</sup> Alter, change.
7. 用           Yung.<sup>4</sup> Use, usefulness.
9. 準           Chun.<sup>3</sup> Standard, a standard.  
     能           Nêng.<sup>2</sup> Can, able.  
     替           T'i.<sup>4</sup> For, instead of, substitute.
10. 修          Hsiu.<sup>1</sup> Repair, put in order.  
     理          Li.<sup>3</sup> Adjust, arrange.

11. A. Pu ts'ò. K'ò shih pu chih tao shui nêng t'i wo hsiu li. 11. Quite right, but I do not know who can repair it for me.

"T'i" or "kei" are used for the Dative Case, to do anything for anyone.

12. B. Wo jên tê i ko chung piao Chiang. 12. I know a watch and clock maker.

"Jên tê", to know a person. "Chih tao", to know, is used mostly of things and affairs.

18. A. Hao, ni na wo ti piao, chiao t'a k'an k'an, hao pu hao. 13. Good, would you be good enough to take my watch and let him see it?

"Hao pu hao", lit. good not good, used at end of statements, like "shih pu shih" above (see Dialogues 10, 15) to throw statement into polite form of question.

14. B. K'ò i. Pu kuo chin t'ien shang wu, wo mei yu kung fu. 14. Certainly, but I have no time this morning.

15. A. Hsia wu ni yu kung fu mei yu. 15. Will you have time this afternoon?

16. B. Pu i ting. Ni pa piao kei wo, Yao shih hou pan t'ien yu kung fu, wo chiu kei ni sung ch'ü. 16. I am not sure. But give me the watch, and if I have time this afternoon I will take it for you.

17. A. Lao chia, lao chia. 17. Thank you very much. Sorry to trouble you.

18. B. Na mei yu shih mo. 18. That's nothing.

10. 修理 Hsiu-li. To repair.
12. 認 Jên.<sup>4</sup> To recognise, to know, acknowledge.  
 認得 Jên-tê.<sup>2</sup> To recognise, be acquainted with,  
 to know.  
 匠 Chiang.<sup>4</sup> An artisan.  
 鐘表匠 Chung-piao-chiang. A watch-maker.
13. 拿 Na.<sup>2</sup> To take, take hold of.
14. 午 Wu.<sup>3</sup> Noon.  
 上午 Shang-wu. Forenoon.  
 工 Kung.<sup>1</sup> Work, task.  
 工夫 Kung-fu. Time, leisure.
15. 下 Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Below, beneath.  
 下午 Hsia-wu. Afternoon.
16. 定 Ting.<sup>4</sup> Fix, settle, certain.  
 一定 I-ting. Certainly, without doubt.  
 要 Yao.<sup>4</sup> In the sense of "if"; introducing  
 the Conditional mood.  
 後 Hou.<sup>4</sup> After, afterwards, later.  
 後半天 Hou-pan-t'ien. Afternoon (later half day).
17. 勞 Lao.<sup>2</sup> To trouble, hinder.  
 駕 Chia.<sup>4</sup> Chariot, progress.

19. A. Chin t'ien wan shang, wo ch'ing chi ko p'êng yu ch'ih fan. Ni nêng lai pu neng lai. 19. I am inviting a few friends to dinner this evening. Can you come?

"Neng lai pu neng lai", lit. can come no can come", the usual form of verbal question.

20. B. Pu kan tang. Wo hai yu shih. 20. Thank you, but I have something else on.  
21. A. Ni tsui hao nêng lai. Wo ch'ing ni p'ei k'o. 21. I do hope you can come. I want you to help to entertain the guests (lit. best you can come, I want, etc.).

22. B. Ch'ih fan yao chi ko chung t'ou. 22. How long will the meal last?

"Chung t'ou" is actual hours of protracted time. "Tien" in "tien chung" is used of hours of time by the clock.

23. A. Ta kai yung liang ko chung t'ou. 23. Probably about two hours.

"Ta-kai", probably, on the whole, etc. "Kai" means a summary of anything. "Ta" is big, so big summary, summarising the matter.

24. B. Ch'ih la fan i hou, yao ta p'ai ma. 24. Are you going to play cards after dinner?

25. A. Sui pien. Wo tzu chi tao hsiang hsia chi p'an ch'i. 25. Just as you please. For myself I should like a few games of chess.

17. 勞駕 Lao-chia. Polite expression of thanks. Lit. I have hindered your chariot.
19. 晚上 Wan-shang. Evening.
21. 最 Tsui.<sup>4</sup> Most, every.
- 
- 陪 P'ei.<sup>2</sup> To accompany, entertain, help to entertain.
- 陪客 P'ei-k'o. Help to entertain guests.
- 
22. 鐘頭 Chung-t'ou.<sup>2</sup> An hour, an hour's time.  
概 Kai.<sup>4</sup> All, general.
- 
23. 大概 Ta-kai. Probably, presumably.
- 
25. 便 Pien.<sup>4</sup> Convenient; read p'ien, cheap.  
隨便 Sui-pien. Suit your own convenience, be at ease.
- 自己 Tzu.<sup>4</sup> Self, natural, from.  
自己 Chi.<sup>3</sup> Self, personal.  
自己 Tzu-chi. Oneself.
- 盤 P'an.<sup>2</sup> Plate, board, classifier of games of chess.
- 下 Hsia.<sup>4</sup> To play (chess), with the following.  
棋 Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Chess.

26. B. Ni mên hsia ch'i, ta chia k'o i ch'u ch'ü, kuang i kuang. 26. You play chess, the rest (lit. all) will go out for a stroll.
27. A. Na tao pu hsing. Nü k'o k'o i tso chên hsien, nan k'o ch'ih yen, t'an t'an pa. 27. That won't do. The ladies can get on with their sewing, while the gentlemen smoke and chat.

Here "tao" comes in again—meaning "on the contrary".

28. B. Tsa mên pu tao pan yeh i ch'ien, pu hui fên shou ti. 28. (In that case) we shall not be able to break up before midnight.

"Fên shou", lit. divide or separate hands, is used of "taking one's leave or departure".

29. A. Shih i tien chung i ch'ien, hui ch'ü chiu hao. 29. If you leave before eleven, that should be all right.

26. 大家 Ta-chia. All together, the group.  
 逛 Kuang.<sup>4</sup> Stroll, visit.  
 逛逛 Kuang-kuang. To take a stroll.
27. 倒 Tao.<sup>3</sup> A strong adversative, but, nevertheless, on the contrary, to fall.  
 鍼 Chên.<sup>1</sup> Needle, needle-work (with the next).  
 線 Hsien.<sup>4</sup> Thread, needle-work (with the last).  
 鍼線 Chên-hsien. Needle-work.  
 男 Nan.<sup>2</sup> Male.  
 客 K'o.<sup>4</sup> Guest, traveller.  
 喫煙 Ch'ih-yen. To smoke.  
 抽煙 Ch'ou-yen. To smoke.  
 譚 T'an.<sup>2</sup> To chat, talk, gossip.  
 譚譚 T'an t'an. To have a chat.
28. 夜 Yeh.<sup>4</sup> Night.

## DIALOGUE No. 12

Between Master and Servant on domestic matters, such as windows, doors, boxes, buckets and the well.

Master, *M.*      Servant, *S.*

1. *M.* Pa ch'uang hu kuan      1. Close the window.  
shang.

Note again that "pa" introduces the object of the verb, and that the main verb comes after the object in this construction.

2. *S.* K'ung p'a kuan pu      2. I fear I cannot close it.  
shang.

Here we have another illustration of the rule of a negative coming between the two parts of a composite verb to express "impossibility" of the action being performed.

3. *M.* Tsê-mo kuan pu      3. How is that?  
shang.

4. *S.* Yu mao ping.      4. There is something  
wrong.

"Mao" is a fault—a defect.

"Ping" is a positive flaw—like a sickness.

"Mao ping" together equals "something wrong".

5. *M.* Yu shih mo mao      5. What is wrong with it?  
ping.

6. *S.* Chê chi t'ien, t'ien      6. The weather has been  
ch'i fa ch'ao,      very damp the last  
chiao ch'uang hu      few days, and the  
k'uang tzu tsou      window-frame has  
" la fêng.      become warped.

"T'ien"—notice the various uses of this one word—day, weather, heaven, the heavens, etc.

Learn to use "fa" in the sense of "to be", "to become", "to be in a state of"; e.g., "hsin li fa mên"—I am sad. Literally—In my heart is produced sadness.

"Chiao"—to cause, causing, equivalent to our English "so that", and when used with a verb forming the passive voice.



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 12

1. 窗 Ch'uang.<sup>1</sup> Window.  
 戶 Hu.<sup>4</sup> A hole, opening, screen.  
 窗戶 Ch'uang-hu. Window.
4. 毛 Mao.<sup>2</sup> Defective, hair, surface.  
 病 Ping.<sup>4</sup> Disease, illness.  
 毛病 Mao-ping. Fault, defect, flaw.
6. 氣 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Atmosphere, air, etc.  
 天 T'ien.<sup>1</sup> Heaven, the upper air.  
 天氣 T'ien-ch'i. The weather.  
 發 Fa.<sup>1</sup> To produce, become.  
 潮 Ch'ao.<sup>2</sup> Damp, dampness, humid, tide.  
 框 K'uang.<sup>4</sup> Frame.  
 縫 Fêng.<sup>2</sup> A seam, split, crack.

7. *M.* Na mo, tê chiao mu      7. Then we had better call  
     chiang lai, hsiu li,              in a carpenter to put  
     hsiu li.                              it right.

The Chinese are fond of repetition of the verb, especially when positive action is to be expressed.

8. *S.* Shih ti. Wo chiao      8. Yes, I will call in Crafts-  
     Li Ssu fu lai, k'an              man Lee to come and  
     i k'an.                              look at it.

"Shih ti"—equal to "right!", "yes!", etc

9. *M.* Ch'ien mên so shang      9. Is the front door  
     la mej yu.                          locked?

10. *S.* So shang la. or      10. Yes, it is locked. or  
     So pu shang. Na              I can't lock it. The  
     ko so shang la                  lock is rusty.  
     hsiu.

"Shang la hsiu". "Shang" is "to add to", "become"; "hsiu" is rust. So "add rust"—rusty.

11. *M.* Na yao shih lai,      11. Bring the key and let  
     shih i shih.                          us try it.

You could say "Pa yao shih na lai". Both constructions are common and equally correct.

"Shih i shih"—try a try—one the verbal form, the other a noun.

12. *S.* Tsui hao hsien t'u i      12. We had better try a  
     tie'rh yu.                              little oil first.

"Tsui hao"—literally "the best"—indicating that any course of action other than the one suggested would be inferior—so "It would be best to do . . . so and so".

13. *M.* Ni shuo ti tui, hsien      13. You are right, first put  
     t'u i tie'rh yu pa.                  a little oil on.

"Ni shuo ti" is a shortened form of the relative clause "Ni so shuo ti"—what you have said.

14. *M.* Pa hou mên k'ai      14. Open the back door.  
     k'ai pa.

"K'ai k'ai". You could also use "K'ai i k'ai"—"open an opening"—on lines of 11 above.

7. 木 Mu.<sup>4</sup> Wood, timber.  
木匠 Mu-chiang. Carpenter, joiner.
8. 司 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Master, manager, control.  
夫 Fu.<sup>1</sup> A master of craft.  
司夫 Ssu-fu. A leading workman, foreman,  
skilled artisan.
9. 前 Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Front, before.  
鎖 So.<sup>3</sup> Lock, to lock.
10. 銹 Hsiu.<sup>4</sup> Rust, to rust.
11. 鑰 Yao.<sup>4</sup> Yo.<sup>4</sup> A key.  
匙 Shih.<sup>3</sup> A key, a spoon.  
鑰匙 Yao-shih. A key.  
試 Shih.<sup>4</sup> To try, to test, experiment.
12. 塗 T'u.<sup>2</sup> To grease, to oil, smear.  
油 Yu.<sup>2</sup> Oil, fat, grease.
14. 開 K'ai.<sup>1</sup> To open.

15. S. Na ko mên wo i ching k'ai la. 15. I have already opened it.

"I ching"—already passed—so "already", the commonest expression for things already done.

16. M. Pu yao tsai kuan shang. 16. Keep it open (lit. don't close it again).

17. S. Yao shih pa mên ch'angk'ai, k'ung p'a hsiao t'ou chin lai, t'outung hsi. 17. But if we leave the door wide open, I fear that thieves might come in and steal some things.

"Yao" usually means "want", and so it may be interpreted here—"if you want" to leave, etc., and so it becomes a sign of the Conditional mood.

18. M. K'o pu shih ma. Pu ju pa mên kuan shang. 18. That is so. You had better close the door.

"K'o pu shih ma"—But is it not so? so That is so!

19. S. Chê ko p'ing tzu ti sai tzu, wo ch'ü pu ch'u lai. 19. I can't extract the cork out of this bottle.

"Ch'ü pu ch'u lai"—literally take not come out.

20. M. Na shih yin wei mei yu ho shih ti tung hsi. Têyung i ko lo ssu chuan. 20. That is because you haven't a suitable gadget. You must use a corkscrew.

21. M. Pa chô ko hsiang tzu ta k'ai. 21. Open this box.

16. 關 Kuan.<sup>1</sup> To close, bar, put to.
17. 敞 Ch'ang.<sup>3</sup> To open, wide open, disclose.  
偷 T'ou.<sup>1</sup> To steal, a thief.
19. 瓶 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> Bottle, vase.  
塞 Sai.<sup>4</sup> Se.<sup>4</sup> Cork, stopper.  
取 Ch'ü.<sup>2</sup> To take off or out.
20. 因 Yin.<sup>1</sup> Cause, reason.  
爲 Wei.<sup>4</sup> Because, on account of.  
因爲 Yin-wei. Because.  
式 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Pattern, shape, fashion.  
合式 Ho-shih. Suitable.  
螺 Lo.<sup>2</sup> Conch, small screw.  
絲 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Wire, thread.  
轉 Chuan.<sup>3</sup> To turn—*re*, again.  
螺絲轉 Lo-ssu-chuan. A corkscrew.
21. 箱 Hsiang.<sup>1</sup> Box.  
匣 Hsia.<sup>2</sup> Small box, crate.

- Pa chē ko hsia tzu**      **Open this small box.**  
**ta k'ai.**
- Pa chē ko ho tzu ta**      **Open this tin.**  
**k'ai.**
- Pa chē ko t'ung tzu**      **Open this tin, bucket,**  
**ta k'ai.**                      **etc.**
- 22. S. K'ai chē ko hsiang**      **22. This box is hard to**  
**tzu, hên fei shih.**              **open.**
- 23. M. Tsên yang fei shih**      **23. What is the trouble?**  
**ni.**

Note "ni" at the end of a question which already contains an interrogative word or phrase; here "tsên-ni"—how?

- 24. S. Ting tzu t'ai to,**      **24. There are too many**  
**ch'üan tou shang**              **nails and they are all**  
**hsiu la.**                              **rusty.**

Note position of "tou"; it always comes "second". At any rate it never occupies the first place in a sentence or clause.

- 25. M. Na ko hao pan. Ni**      **25. That's a small matter**  
**shang Wanghsien**              **(lit. easy to manage).**  
**shêng na li ch'ü,**              **Go over to Mr.**  
**chieh t'a ti ch'ien**              **Wang's and borrow**  
**tzu.**                                      **his pincers.**

You cannot say "Ni shang Wang hsien shêng ch'ü". You must add the "na-li" after the name to express motion towards a person.

- 26. S. Yao shih Wang**      **26. But suppose Mr. Wang**  
**hsien shêng pu**                  **is not at home, whom**  
**tsai chia, wên**                  **shall I ask for the**  
**shui ch'ü chieh**                  **loan of them?**  
**ni.**

Note "pu tsai chia" for not at home. Do not say "pu tsai" or "pu tsai la", as that would mean "he is dead".

"Wên", "k'en" or "ho" are all permissible—meaning "of" or "from" whom.

- 27. M. T'a chia li tsung yu**      **27. There must be a servant**  
**yung jên, chiu**                  **at home, ask him for**  
**hsiang t'a chieh,**              **the loan (of the pin-**  
**hao la.**                                  **cers).**

"Tsung yu" or "pi shih yu" for "there must be".

21. 盒  
筒      Ho.<sup>2</sup> A tin or box, casket.  
T'ung.<sup>2</sup> A tin, container.
22. 費  
事      Fei.<sup>4</sup> Waste, expend.  
Fei-shih. A wasteful affair, difficult.
24. 釘      Ting.<sup>1</sup> A nail, to nail.
25. 鉗      Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Pincers, tongs.
27. 用人      Yung-jen. Servant, one used.

28. S. Shih ti, wo chiu ch'ü. 28. Right, I will go along.  
ch'ü.
29. M. Ni ching kuo yüan tzu ti shih hou, k'an k'an shui ching, kai shang la mei yu. 29. As you pass through the garden (yard), just look to see if the well is covered.

Note this circumlocutory clause with the "when" represented by "ti-shih-hou" at the end. Literally "your passing over the yard's time".

30. S. Wo chin t'ien ch'ing tsao, ta wan la shui, chiu pa ching kai shang la. 30. I covered the well, after I had finished drawing water, early this morning.
31. M. Ni na chi ko t'ung tzu, tou ch'êng (tao) man la shui ma. 31. Have you filled all those buckets with water?
32. S. Chia li so yu ti t'ung tzu, wo tou ch'êng man la shui. 32. I have filled all the buckets there are in the house with water.

"So yu ti" = "what there are", equal to "all that there are".

33. M. Yüan tzu li na ko ta shui kang, chuang ti shih tsang shui, ni tao ch'u ch'ü la mei yu. 33. That big water butt in the garden was full of dirty water. Have you poured it all out?

After "yuan tzu li" you don't need to add "ti", the possessive, although the sense seems to require it. The "na ko" takes the place of the "ti".



29. 園 Yüan.<sup>2</sup> Courtyard, garden.  
井 Ching.<sup>3</sup> A well.  
蓋 Kai.<sup>4</sup> To cover.
30. 清 Ch'ing.<sup>1</sup> Dawn, daybreak.  
早 Tsao.<sup>3</sup> Early.  
打 Ta.<sup>3</sup> To draw up.  
完 Wan.<sup>2</sup> To finish, complete.
31. 桶 T'ung.<sup>3</sup> A bucket, barrel.  
盛 Ch'êng. To fill, fill up; to contain. Also  
read sheng<sup>4</sup>, abundant, flourishing.  
滿 Man.<sup>3</sup> Full, to fill.
32. 所 So.<sup>3</sup> The relative pronoun. That which,  
those which, etc.  
所有的 So-yu-ti. What there is.
33. 缸 Kang.<sup>1</sup> Butt, large vessel for water, etc.,  
cistern.  
裝 Chuang.<sup>1</sup> To contain—fill in, load, pack.  
髒 Tsang.<sup>1</sup> Dirty, filthy.  
倒 Tao.<sup>4</sup> To pour, upset.  
倒出去 Tao ch'u ch'ü. To pour away.

## DIALOGUE No. 13

Talk with Servant on domestic matters—*continued*.

1. M. Pa ché i chang cho tzu pan tao lou shang ch'ü.      1. Take this table up-stairs.

Note "chang" as the classifier of tables, benches, etc., also that verbs of movement usually carry an auxiliary, like "tao", to arrive.

2. S. I ko jên pan pu tung, tê chiao chi ko jên lai pang mang.      2. But one man can't move it. I must get a few men to help.

The positive of "pan pu tung"—"can't move it"—is "pan tung la"—"can be moved, or can move it"; so with all expressions of this kind.

3. M. Yao chi ko jên pang mang.      3. How many men will you need to help?

"Pang mang"—literally "help busy".

4. S. Chih shao yao san ko jên.      4. Three men at least.

5. M. Ku san ko jên lai t'ai cho tzu, ching chi pu shang suan.      5. But to hire three men solely for this is not economical.

"Pu shang suan"—"not up reckon"—no advantage.

6. S. K'o chên pu shang suan. Pu ju ku t'a men i t'ien ti kung fu, hai k'o i chiao t'a mên tso pieh ti shih ch'ing.      6. Truly it is not economical. We had better hire them for the day so that we can give them other things to do as well.

"Chiao" is "to cause" give them to do.

"Pieh ti"—something different.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 13

1. 張  
桌  
搬  
樓  
Chang.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of tables, etc.  
Cho.<sup>1</sup> Table.  
Pan.<sup>1</sup> To move, remove, transport.  
Lou.<sup>2</sup> A second storey, tower, upper storey,
2. 幫  
忙  
Pang.<sup>1</sup> Help, assist.  
Mang.<sup>2</sup> Busy.
4. 至  
少  
5. 雇  
經  
濟  
經 濟  
算 算  
上 算  
6. 別  
Chih.<sup>4</sup> Extreme, reach to, utmost.  
Shao.<sup>3</sup> Few, little (of quantity).  
Ku.<sup>4</sup> To hire.  
Ching.<sup>1</sup> To manage.  
Chi.<sup>4</sup> To help, save, up to the mark.  
Ching chi. Economic.  
Suan.<sup>4</sup> To reckon, calculate.  
Shang suan. To be of advantage, economical. Lit. reckon on top side.
- Pieh.<sup>2</sup> Other, another, extra, part from, separate.

7. M. Na shih tzu jan ti. Hai yu shên-mo shih, chiao t'a mên tso ni. 7. That is naturally so (quite so). What other things can we give them to do?
8. S. Shih ch'ing tao pu shao. T'a mên k'o i ta sao yüan tzu, shou shih ch'u fang. 8. There are many things to do. They can sweep the yard, and put the kitchen straight (tidy up).

"Shih ch'ing tao pu shao"—"affairs on contrary not few". "Tao" is used to express something different from what has been proposed, either explicitly or implicitly.

9. M. Ku chê chung jen, i t'ien tê kei to shao kung ch'ien. 9. How much in wages will this type of man want if hired?

"I t'ien"—one day—also a whole day.

"Tê to shao"—ought how much?

10. S. Chê yang ti jên tu suan hsiao kung. I t'ien kei t'a liu mao ch'ien chiu hsing. 10. This type of man counts as a labourer (small workman). To hire one such man for a day would take 60 cents.
11. M. Ku liang ko jên pu kou ma. 11. Wouldn't two men be enough?
12. S. Pu kou. Chê ko cho tzu hên chung, liang ko jên t'ai pu tung. 12. No, the table is very heavy, and two men couldn't carry it.

"T'ai"—to carry—is used when two or more people are employed. For one person to carry on one's shoulder "tan" or "t'iao" is used.

13. M. Na mo chiu ku san ko jên pa. T'a mên chi tien chung shang kung. 13. Then hire three men. What time will they start work?

"Shang kung"—go up to work. Note the verbal use of "shang"—it is in the third tone when used as a verb.

7. 自 Tzu.<sup>4</sup> Natural, self, from.  
自然 Tzu-jan. Naturally.
8. 掃 Sao.<sup>3</sup> To sweep.  
打掃 Ta sao. Sweep, big sweep.  
收 Shou.<sup>1</sup> To receive, collect, gather.  
拾 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Arrange, pick up.  
收拾 Shou-shih. Arrange, tidy up.  
廚 Ch'u.<sup>2</sup> Cook (house)—kitchen cook.  
房 Fang.<sup>2</sup> A room.  
廚房 Ch'u-fang. Kitchen.
10. 都 Tu.<sup>1</sup> Tou. All, both, altogether.  
工 Kung.<sup>1</sup> Work, labour.  
小工 Hsiao-kung. Coolie, labourer (lit. small labour).  
毛 Mao.<sup>3</sup> A ten cent. coin, ten cents.
11. 夠 Kou.<sup>4</sup> Enough, sufficient.
12. 重 Chung.<sup>4</sup> Heavy, cumbersome.  
抬 T'ai.<sup>2</sup> Lift, carry between two, or on shoulders.

14. S. Tsao shang liu tien chung shang kung, wan shang liu tien chung hsia kung. 14. They will start at six a.m. and finish at six p.m.
15. M. Hsiu hsi chi ko chung t'ou. 15. How many hours off for rest?
- “Chung t'ou”—not “chung tien”—the latter being confined to time by the clock. If you want to use “chung tien” you must add “ti kung fu”; e.g., “hsiu hsi chi . . . tien chung ti kung fu”.
16. S. Chung wu t'a mên yao hsieh I ko pan chung t'ou. 16. They will rest an hour and a half at noon.  
One and a half—“i ko pan”.
17. M. Chiu chê yang ti pan pa. 17. Then we will proceed along these lines.
18. M. Pa chê chi pa i tzu pan tao na pien ch'ü. 18. Move these chairs to that side.
19. S. Na pien mei yu k'ung ti, wo hsiang fang tsai wai t'ou hao. 19. There is no room over there. I think it will be good (better) to put them outside.
20. M. K'o shih pa i tzu lao tiu tsai wai pien, pu ta hao, hai pu ju na tao ti yin tzu li mien ch'ü. 20. But to leave chairs outside for any length of time (lao) is not very good. It would be better to take them into the cellar.

14. 早上 Tsao<sup>3</sup> shang. Early in the morning.  
       下 Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Down, to put down, to go down.
15. 休息 Hsiu.<sup>1</sup> Rest, recuperate, relax. .  
       Hsi.<sup>2</sup> Rest, to rest.  
       鐘頭 Chung-t'ou. Hour, of protracted time.
16. 中午 Chung-wu.<sup>3</sup> Mid-day, noon.  
       歇 Hsieh.<sup>1</sup> To rest, ease off.
18. 把 Pa.<sup>3</sup> Classifier of chairs, etc.  
       椅 I.<sup>3</sup> Chair, couch.  
       到 Tao.<sup>4</sup> To arrive, get to, at.  
       邊 Pien.<sup>1</sup> Side, one side.
19. 地 Ti.<sup>4</sup> Ground, floor, etc.  
       空 K'ung.<sup>1</sup> Empty.  
       空地 K'ung-ti. Room, in the sense of space.  
           Lit. empty ground.  
       想 Hsiang.<sup>3</sup> To think, reflect.  
       放 Fang.<sup>4</sup> To put, place, set down, to let go.  
       外 Wai.<sup>4</sup> Outside, foreign.  
       外頭 Wai-t'ou. Outside, in the open.
20. 老 Lao.<sup>3</sup> A long time, old.  
       丟 Tiu.<sup>3</sup> To leave.  
       外邊 Wai-pien. Outside, out of doors.  
       蔭 Yin.<sup>1</sup> A cellar, underground, secret.  
       地蔭子 Ti-yin-tzu. The cellar, basement.

21. S. Wo hsiang ch'i i ko hao fa tzu lai. 21. I have thought of a better idea.  
 "Hsiang ch'i . . . lai" is the usual expression. Note how much comes between the parts of this compound verb—the whole subject of thought.
22. M. Shih shêm-mo fa tzu. 22. What is your plan?
23. S. Hsien pa chê i t'iao ch'ang cho tzu, pan tao k'o fang li ch'ü. 23. First take that long table into the guest room.
24. M. Shih ti, i hou tsai tso shêm-mo ni. 24. All right, and what will you do after that?
25. S. Tsai pa chê i t'iao têng tzu tiao kuo lai, chiu yu ti fang, fang chê chi pa i tzu la. 25. Then turn this bench (form) round, and there will be room for these chairs.
26. M. Shih ti, chiu chê yang ti pan pa. 26. Good, do it that way.
27. S. Hsien-shêng tê hsien jang wo pa cho tzu shang ti tung hsi pan tsou. 27. But you must first allow me to move the things (from the table).
28. M. Tzu jan. Tsai huan i chang kan ching ti cho pu. 28. Naturally. After that change the table-cloth for a clean one.  
 "Chang"—classifier of table-cloth.
29. S. Wan shang ch'ing k'o pu ch'ing k'o. 29. Are you inviting any guests to dinner to-night?
30. M. Ch'ing ssu wei k'o, so i yao shou shih fan t'ing. 30. Yes, four. So you must put everything tidy in the dining-room.

"So i", generally speaking, is equivalent to our "so", "and so", "therefore", etc.



21. 起 Ch'i.<sup>3</sup> To rise, arise, get up, spring up.  
 想起 Hsiang-ch'i. To think of a thing.  
 法 Fa.<sup>3</sup> Method, manner, rule.  
 法子 Fa-tzu. Method, way of doing things.
23. 先 Hsien.<sup>1</sup> First, in the front.  
 條 T'iao.<sup>2</sup> Classifier of long things, like long  
 tables, benches, etc.  
 客房 K'o-fang. Guest-room, drawing-room.  
 裡 Li.<sup>3</sup> Inside, within.
24. 以後 I-hou. Afterwards, behind.
25. 凳 Têng.<sup>4</sup> Form, bench, long-seat.  
 掉 Tiao.<sup>4</sup> To change round, turn round, twist  
 round.  
 掉過來 Tiao-kuo-lai. To turn around.
26. 辦 Pan.<sup>4</sup> To do, transact, manage.
27. 讓 Jang.<sup>4</sup> To allow, permit.
28. 換 Huan.<sup>4</sup> To change.  
 乾 Kan.<sup>1</sup> Dry, clean.  
 淨 Ching.<sup>4</sup> Clean.  
 乾淨 Kan-ching. Clean.
30. 所以 So-i. Therefore, so (logical conclusion).  
 廳 T'ing.<sup>1</sup> Court, hall.  
 飯廳 Fan-t'ing. Dining-room.



31. 大司夫 Ta-ssu-fu. The skilled person, ganger, cook.  
 曉 Hsiao.<sup>3</sup> To know.  
 曉得 Hsiao-tê To know (concerning affairs), not  
 persons.
32. 吩 Fên.<sup>1</sup> To order, command.  
 咐 Fu.<sup>4</sup> To commission, order.  
 吩咐 Fên-fu. To order, command, instruct (in  
 the sense of issuing an order).
33. 預 Yü.<sup>4</sup> Beforehand, prepare.  
 備 Pei.<sup>4</sup> Get ready, prepare.  
 預備 Yü-pei. To prepare, to get ready.
34. 毯 T'an.<sup>3</sup> Carpet, felt.  
 席 Hsi.<sup>2</sup> Mat, reed mat.  
 翻 Fan.<sup>2</sup> To turn over.  
 器具 Ch'i-chü. Utensils, furniture.  
 洗 Hsi.<sup>3</sup> To wash, bathe, rinse.  
 端 Tuan. To serve, as a waiter, put on the  
 table.  
 伶 Ling.<sup>2</sup> Clever, active, adjust.  
 俐 Li.<sup>4</sup> Lively, quick, smart.  
 整齊 Chêng<sup>3</sup>-ch'i.<sup>2</sup> In good order, straight,  
 orderly, arranged.

## DIALOGUE No. 14

## Exercise on Weights and Measures

*Weights.*

A Chinese catty, "chin", is equal to about 21 ozs. (English), but consists of 16 "liang" (oz.). The "liang" is again divided into "ch'ien", each of which is a tenth of a "liang". Below that the metric system continues into several divisions, the "fên" being a tenth of a "ch'ien" and the "li" being a tenth of a "fên". Other extremely fine measures of weight need not bother us here. The picul, in China about 133 lbs., is used for heavier articles. The word for this is "tan".

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Chê ko tung hsi yu to chung. | 1. What is the weight of this? |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|

"Yu to chung"—has how much weight? Alternative expressions are "Yu to shao fên liang", "Fên liang to chung", "Yu to ma ch'ing chung".

- |                         |                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 2. I tan chiu chin pan. | 2. One picul nine and a half catties. |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. Ch'ing ni kei wo ch'êng i ch'êng chô ko pao kuo. Mei yu kuo chung pa. | 3. Please weigh this parcel for me. It isn't overweight is it? |
|--|--|

- |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. Kuo la chung la. | 4. Yes it is overweight. |
|---------------------|--------------------------|

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 5. Chiu ching yu to chung. | 5. How heavy is it then? |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|

"Chiu ching"—really, getting to the heart of the matter.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 6. Pa chin ch'i liang pa ch'ien. | 6. Eight catties seven ozs. and eight drams. |
|----------------------------------|--|

In measuring grain the Chinese use standard vessels, called "tan", "tou", "shêng", etc. The "tan", which for want of a better term we will call bushel, is equal to ten "tou" (peck), and the "tou" again is equal to ten "shêng", which we will call pint.

VOCABULARY TO DIALOGUE AND  
EXERCISE No. 14

2. 擔 Tan.<sup>1</sup> A load, picul, to carry.  
斤 Chin.<sup>1</sup> A catty, one and a third lbs.
3. 稱 Ch'êng.<sup>1</sup> To weigh, call, style.  
稱一稱 Ch'êng-i-ch'êng. To weigh on the scales.  
裹 Kuo.<sup>3</sup> To bind, wrap.  
包裹 Pao-kuo. A parcel.
5. 究竟 Chiu-ching. Really.  
兩 Liang.<sup>3</sup> Ounce, tael.  
錢 Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Coin, mace, tenth of an ounce.

7. Chê ko k'ou tai li yu to shao liang shih.      7. How much grain is there in this sack?

8. Yu i tan, liu tou, ch'i shêng.      8. One "tan" six bushels and seven pints.

Tan, tou, shêng. It is difficult to give exact equivalents in English of these Chinese measures of capacity. But see note p. 140.

Measures of length in the shorter ranges are on the decimal system. The foot varies in length according to the material that is to be measured. There are ten inches to the foot, and ten feet make a "chang". The inch is divided into ten "fên". Other commonly used measures are the "pu", which is five feet, and the "li", about a third of the English mile, which consists of 180 "chang".

9. Tsai t'an i t'an ch'ih ts'un pa.      9. Let us further discuss measures of length.
10. Na tao jung i ming pai. Shih fên chiu shih i ts'un; shih ts'un chiu shih i ch'ih; shih ch'ih chiu shih i chang.      10. That is easy to understand. An inch has ten parts; a foot is ten inches, and a "chang" ten feet.
11. K'o shih yu ti shih hou, wo t'ing jên shuo, chi pu, chi pu. Chê shih shih mo i ssu.      11. But sometimes I hear people say, "so many 'pu', so many 'pu'". What does that mean?
12. Ai, shih ti. I pu chiu shih wu ch'ih.      12. Ah, yes. A "pu" is five feet.
13. Na mo, liang pu yeh shih i chang, shih pu shih.      13. In that case, two "pu" also make a "chang"?

7. 袋            Tai.<sup>1</sup> Bag, sack.  
     口袋        K'ou-tai. Bag, sack, pocket.  
     糶            Liang.<sup>2</sup> Grain, food.  
     糧食        Liang-shih. Grain, food.
8. 斗            Tou.<sup>3</sup> A peck.  
     石            Tan.<sup>1</sup> Bushel.  
     升            Shêng.<sup>1</sup> A pint.
9. 尺            Ch'ih.<sup>3</sup> A foot.  
     寸            Ts'un.<sup>4</sup> An inch.  
     尺寸        Ch'ih-ts'un. Measure of length, length.
10. 白            Pai.<sup>2 4</sup> White, clear, in vain.  
     明白        Ming-pai. To comprehend, understand.  
     丈            Chang.<sup>4</sup> Ten feet, husband.
11. 步            Pu.<sup>4</sup> Pace, step, five feet.  
     意            I.<sup>4</sup> Idea, intention, meaning, wish.  
     思            Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Think on, ponder, thought.  
     意思        I-ssu. Meaning.

14. Pu ts'ò. Hai tê chih tao, i pai pa shih chang, chiu shih i li. 14. And you should also know that 180 "chang" make a "li".
15. Na mo, san li chiu shih ch'a pu to, ho i Ying li i yang yüan. 15. Then three Chinese "li" are about equal in length to an English mile?

"Ch'a pu to"—different not much. A very popular expression for "nearly", "about", etc.

"I yang yüan"—the same distance. "Yuan" is used in longer measurements of length.

16. Ch'a pu to. 16. Just about.
17. Tso i t'iao k'u tzu tê yung to shao ts'ai liao. 17. How much material is required to make a pair of trousers?
18. Na k'an ts'ai liao ti k'uan hsia. 18. That depends on the width of the material.
- "Na k'an"—that depends (lit. that looks).

19. Pi fang shuo, ts'ai liao shih êrh ch'ih k'uan, yung to shao. 19. For example, say the material is two feet wide, how much would be needed?

"Pi fang shuo"—equal to our *e.g.*, for illustration, etc.

20. Êrh ch'ih k'uan ti ts'ai liao, tê yung i chang êrh ch'ih ti pu. 20. In material two feet wide, twelve feet will be needed.
21. I ko jên p'ao i hsiao shih (i tien chung), nêng p'ao to yüan. 21. How far can a man run in an hour?

"I hsiao shih"—an hour's time, alternative for "i tien chung ti kung fu", "i ko chung t'ou".

22. Ch'üan shih chieh tsui k'uai ti chi lu, chiu shih shih ying li. 22. The world's record is about ten miles.

"Chi lu"—record, adapted for the best achievement in any sphere.



17. 褲 K'u<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Trousers.  
 一條褲子 I-t'iao-k'u-tzu. A pair of trousers.
18. 材 Ts'ai.<sup>2</sup> Materials.  
 料 Liao.<sup>4</sup> Materials, calculate, etc.  
 材料 Ts'ai-liao. Materials, material.  
 寬 K'uan.<sup>1</sup> Wide, broad, easy.  
 狹 Hsia.<sup>2</sup> Narrow.  
 寬狹 K'uan-hsia. Width.  
 比方 Pi-fang. For illustration, comparison, etc.
20. 布 Pu.<sup>4</sup> Cloth, to spread.
21. 跑 P'ao.<sup>3</sup> To run, to gallop.  
 一小時 I-hsiao-shih. An hour.
22. 世界 Shih.<sup>4</sup> The world, a generation.  
 世界 Chieh.<sup>4</sup> The world, boundary.  
 世界 Shih-chieh. The world.  
 紀 Chi.<sup>4</sup> To record, year.



22. 錄 Lu.<sup>4</sup> To record, copy.  
紀錄 Chi-lu. Record.
23. 破 P'o.<sup>4</sup> Break, solve.

## DIALOGUE No. 15

## A talk with the Cook.

Mistress, *M.*      Cook, *C.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>M.</i> Ming t'ien chung<br>wu, wo yao ch'ing<br>san ko k'o. | 1. I am inviting three<br>guests for to-morrow<br>noon. |
|---|---|

Notice again how expressions of time come early in the sentences.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. <i>C.</i> T'ai-t'aihsiangch'ih<br>shih-mo fan. | 2. What food would you<br>like to eat? |
|---|--|

"Hsiang" means "to think", but the sense is as translated.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. <i>M.</i> Hsien yü pei chi ko<br>hsiao tieh tzu. | 3. First prepare some as-<br>sorted appetizers. |
|---|---|

- |                                       |                        |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 4. <i>C.</i> Yao jou t'ang pu<br>yao. | 4. Will you want soup? |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 5. <i>M.</i> Yao chi t'ang. | 5. Yes, we'll have chicken<br>soup. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. <i>C.</i> T'ai-t'ai ch'ih shêm-<br>mo jou. Hsien<br>tsai yang jou kuei<br>i tie'rh. | 6. What meat would you<br>like? Mutton is<br>rather dear just now. |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. <i>M.</i> Chê chi t'ien t'ien<br>ch'i jê, ch'ih liang<br>ts'ai yeh hsing,<br>pi ju huo t'ui,<br>chi p'ien, niu shê<br>t'ou têng têng. | 7. It has been rather hot<br>these days. Cold<br>viands would be all<br>right, like ham,<br>chicken, tongue, etc. |
|--|---|

"Têng têng"—sort-sort, equal to our et cetera.

"Shem mo ti" is another way of saying et cetera.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 15

3. 碟           Tieh.<sup>2 5</sup> Saucer.
4. 肉           Jou.<sup>4</sup> Ju.<sup>1</sup> Meat.  
   湯           T'ang.<sup>1</sup> Soup, gravy.  
   肉湯       Jou-t'ang. Soup, gravy, sauce.
5. 雞           Chi.<sup>1</sup> Chicken.  
   魚           Yü.<sup>3</sup> Fish.  
   豬           Chu.<sup>1</sup> Pig, pork.  
   排骨       P'ai.<sup>2</sup> Chops.  
   骨          Ku.<sup>3</sup> Chops.
6. 羊           Yang.<sup>2</sup> Sheep.  
   羊肉       Yang-jou. Mutton.
7. 熱           Jê.<sup>4</sup> Hot.  
   天           T'ien.<sup>1</sup> Heaven, used for weather with the  
               next.  
   天氣       T'ien-ch'i. Weather.  
   涼           Liang.<sup>2</sup> Cool, pleasant.  
   火           Huo.<sup>2</sup> Fire.  
   腿           T'ui.<sup>3</sup> Leg, thigh, ham.



7. 火腿 Huo-t'ui. Boiled ham.  
 片 P'ien.<sup>4</sup> Sliced, a slice, a strip.  
 牛 Niu.<sup>2</sup> A cow.  
 舌 Shê.<sup>2</sup> Tongue.  
 牛舌頭 Niu-shê-t'ou. The tongue of an ox, ox-tongue.  
 等 Têng.<sup>3</sup> Class, kind, etc.  
 等等 Têng-têng. Et cetera.
8. 加 Chia.<sup>1</sup> To add, to increase.  
 再 Tsai.<sup>4</sup> Again, repeat.  
 土 T'u.<sup>3</sup> Earth.  
 豆 Tou.<sup>4</sup> Beans.  
 土豆 T'u tou. Potatoes.  
 菠菜 Po.<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> Spinach.  
 菠菜 Po-ts'ai. Spinach, etc.
9. 煮 Chu.<sup>1</sup> To boil.  
 熟 Shou.<sup>2</sup> Shu.<sup>2</sup> Ripe, soft, properly cooked.
11. 冰 Ping.<sup>1</sup> Ice.  
 淇淋 Ch'i-lin. Transliteration of English "jelly".  
 冰淇淋 Ping-ch'i-lin. Ice-cream.  
 點 Tien.<sup>3</sup> Dot, etc., with next used for cakes, sweetmeats.
- 心 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> The heart, the mind.
12. 奶 Nai.<sup>3</sup> Milk, curdled milk, cheese.  
 餅 Ping.<sup>3</sup> Cake, slab.  
 奶餅 Nai-ping. Cheese.  
 餅乾 Ping-kan. Biscuits (kan is dry). Kan is added to fruits when dried.
13. 末 Mo.<sup>4</sup> The end, at the last.  
 末了 Mo-liao. At the end, to finish with.  
 咖啡 Chia-fei. Transliteration for coffee.

14. *C.* T'ai-t'ai pu yao shui kuo ma. 14. Won't you want fresh fruit?
15. *M.* Mai p'in kuo, li, p'u t'ao pa. 15. Buy some apples, pears and grapes.

16. *C.* Hai yao ho chiu ma. 16. Shall I put on wine?
17. *M.* Huang chiu chiu hsing, yeh yao lü-sung yen. 17. Yellow wine will suffice, and put on some cigars.

"Lü-sung"—Luzon, the large southern island of the Philippines.

18. *C.* Yeh hsü yu i liang wei k'o jên shih chieh chiu ti, tsui hao hsien yü pei chi p'ing ch'i shui. 18. Perhaps one or two of the guests may be teetotal; we had better prepare some minerals (soft drinks).

"Chieh chiu"—abstain from wine.

19. *M.* Pu ts'o. 19. All right.
20. *C.* Pai cho tzu tê chao i ko pang mang ti. 20. I suppose I had better get a man to help with the table.
21. *M.* Ni k'o i chao lao ma, tao ch'u fang pang mang hao la. 21. You can't tell the amah to help in the kitchen.
22. *M.* Ling wai yü pei shui yen tai, yeh hsü yu jen hsiang ch'ou shui yen. 22. And, in addition, prepare a water pipe, as probably someone will want to smoke.



14. 果 Kuo.<sup>3</sup> Fruit in general.  
     水 果 Shui kuo. Fresh fruit.
15. 蘋 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> P'in.<sup>2</sup> Apple.  
     梨 Li.<sup>2</sup> Pears.  
     葡 萄 P'u-t'ao.<sup>2</sup> Grapes. Cf. Greek, Putos, the  
         vine.
16. 酒 Chiu.<sup>3</sup> Wine.
17. 黃 Huang.<sup>3</sup> Yellow.  
     呂 宋 Lü-sung. Luzon, Philippines.  
     呂 宋 煙 Lü-sung-yen. Cigars.
18. 戒 Chieh.<sup>4</sup> Forbid, prohibit.  
     瓶 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> A bottle.  
     汽 水 Ch'i-shui. Aerated waters.  
     擺 Pai.<sup>3</sup> To spread, to lay on table.
21. 老 媽 Lao-ma. Nurse, "old mother".
22. 另 Ling.<sup>4</sup> Separate.  
     外 Wai.<sup>4</sup> Outside, additional.  
     另 外 Ling-wai. In addition.  
     袋 Tai.<sup>4</sup> Pipe, bag.  
     抽 Ch'ou.<sup>1</sup> To smoke, draw.



23. 糖 T'ang.<sup>2</sup> Sugar.  
 奶 Nai.<sup>3</sup> Milk, breasts.  
 鹽 Yen.<sup>2</sup> Salt.  
 胡椒 Hu.<sup>2</sup> Pepper.  
 胡椒 Chiao.<sup>1</sup> Pepper.  
 胡椒麵 Hu-chiao-mien. Pepper.  
 醋 Ts'u.<sup>4</sup> Vinegar.  
 醬油 Chiang-yu. Sauce.  
 芥 Chieh.<sup>4</sup> Mustard.  
 芥末 Chieh-mo.<sup>4</sup> Mustard.
24. 牙 Ya.<sup>2</sup> Tooth, teeth.  
 籤 Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> Bamboo-slip.  
 牙籤 Ya-ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Tooth-pick.

23. C. Cho tzu shang yeh    23. And (I suppose) I  
     yao pai t'ang, niu        should put sugar and  
     nai, yen, hu chiao        milk, salt, pepper,  
     mien, ts'u, chiang        vinegar, sauce, and  
     yu, ho chieh mo            mustard on the  
     pa.                            table?

The "pa" at the end of the sentence carries the sense of "I suppose". This is a common idiom.

24. M. Ya ch'ien yeh pu    24. And the tooth-picks  
     yao wang la.                must not be for-  
     gotten.

- |     |     |                                     |
|-----|-----|-------------------------------------|
| 23. | 糖   | T'ang. <sup>2</sup> Sugar.          |
|     | 奶   | Nai. <sup>3</sup> Milk, breasts.    |
|     | 鹽   | Yen. <sup>2</sup> Salt.             |
|     | 胡   | Hu. <sup>2</sup> Pepper.            |
|     | 椒   | Chiao. <sup>1</sup> Pepper.         |
|     | 胡椒麵 | Hu-chiao-mien. Pepper.              |
|     | 醋   | Ts'u. <sup>4</sup> Vinegar.         |
|     | 醬油  | Chiang-yu. Sauce.                   |
|     | 芥   | Chieh. <sup>4</sup> Mustard.        |
|     | 芥末  | Chieh-mo. <sup>4</sup> Mustard.     |
| 24. | 牙   | Ya. <sup>2</sup> Tooth, teeth.      |
|     | 籤   | Ch'ien. <sup>1</sup> Bamboo-slip.   |
|     | 牙籤  | Ya-ch'ien. <sup>2</sup> Tooth-pick. |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 16

1. 洋車 Yang.<sup>2</sup> Foreign.  
車 Ch'ê.<sup>1</sup> Cart, carriage, vehicle.  
洋車 Yang-ch'ê. Rickshaw.
3. 趕 Kan.<sup>3</sup> Hurry, chase.  
趕快 Kan-k'uai. Speedily, hasten.
6. 來回 Lai-hui. Come-go, a return journey.
7. 論 Lun.<sup>4</sup> To discuss, according to.  
里數 Li-shu. Distance.  
鐘點 Chung tien. Hours—time.

8. *S.* To pan shih lun chung tien. 8. Mostly by the hour.  
 "To pan" or "to-i-pan"—more than a half, mostly, probably.
9. *M.* Na mo, tsui hao ku t'a san ko chung t'ou. 9. Then it will be best to hire him for three hours.
10. *S.* T'ai t'ai yao wo ho t'a chiang chia ch'ien ma. 10. Do you want me to discuss the price with him? (the rickshaw coolie).
11. *M.* I ko chung t'ou, ying kai kei t'a to shao ch'ien. 11. How much ought one to give per hour?
12. *S.* Wo shuo pu chun. I ko chung t'ou, ta kai kai kei t'a wu mao ch'ien. 12. I can't say for certain, but probably one ought to give him fifty cents.  
 "Ta kai"—big, ought, so probably.
13. *M.* Wo i wei wu mao ch'ien t'ai to la i tie'rh. Ni ho t'a chiang chia ti shih hou, tsui hao hsien shao kei t'a i tie'rh. 13. In my opinion, fifty cents is a trifle too much. When you discuss the price with him, it will be best to offer him less at first.  
 "Wo i wei"—I think, often "I wo k'an lai"—literally "In my seeing come", in my opinion.
14. *S.* Na pu yung shuo. Wo mên tso mai mai, chiu shih chê yang. 14. Needless to say we do business just along those lines.
15. *M.* K'o shih wo t'ing shuo, Chung Kuo shang chieh, hsien tsai, tou shih "yen pu êrh chia". 15. But I have heard that in Chinese commercial circles now, the prices are fixed (lit. words have not two prices).



8. 多半 To pan. Probably (lit. more a half).
10. 講 Chiang.<sup>1</sup> To expound, explain, discuss,  
bargain.  
價 Chia.<sup>4</sup> Price, value.  
價錢 Chia-ch'ien. Price.
12. 準 Chun.<sup>3</sup> Standard, certainty, fixed.  
說不準 Shuo-pu-chun. Can't say for certain.
15. 商 Shang.<sup>1</sup> Commerce.  
界 Chieh.<sup>4</sup> World, sphere.  
商界 Shang-chieh. The commercial world.  
商言 Yen.<sup>2</sup> Words, speech.

16. S. Ta shang tien to pan      16. The big stores all have  
     'tou shih ting chia,              fixed prices, but  
     k'o shih hsiao                    small shopkeepers  
     mai mai, hai shih                still bargain in the  
     chao chiu chiang                old way.  
     chia.

“ Chao chiu ”—according to old (practice).

17. M. Na mo, ni k'uai i      17. Then off you go as  
     tie'rh ch'ü, chia                quickly as you can,  
     ch'ien yüeh shao                the lower the price  
     yüeh hao.                        the better.

“ Yüeh . . . yüeh ”—a very common idiom, *e.g.*, “ yüeh k'uai yüeh hao ”, the quicker the better.

18. S. Na pu yung shuo,      18. Needless to say I will  
     wo chin li chiu                    do my utmost.  
     shih la.

19. M. Yeh pu yao tan wu      19. And don't loiter, come  
     kung fu, k'uai                    back quickly.  
     k'uai ti hui lai  
     pa.

20. S. Wo chin li ti pan.      20. I will do my best. If  
     Nêng tsao hui lai                I can get back early  
     wo chiu tsao hui                I will do so.  
     lai.

Note construction of second half of this sentence.

16. 照 Chao.<sup>1</sup> According to.  
     照舊 Chao-chiu. As of old, as formerly.
17. 越 Yüeh.<sup>4 5</sup> The more, comparative sign.
19. 耽 Tan.<sup>1</sup> Obstruct, prevent, delay.  
     誤 Wu.<sup>4</sup> Forget, careless, miss.  
     耽誤 Tan-wu. Delay, waste time, loiter.
20. 能 Nêng.<sup>2</sup> Can, able.

## DIALOGUE No. 17

An interesting discussion between two friends on an intimate personal matter.

1. A. Chao hsiao chieh ni jên tê pu jên tê.      1. Do you know Miss Chao?

"Jên-tê" and "jên-shih" are synonymous—both may be applied to persons.

2. B. Jên shih jên tê, k'o shih pu ta shu shih.      2. I may be said to know her, but I am not at all intimate with her.

3. A. T'a to ta sui shu, ni chih tao pu chih tao.      3. Do you know how old she is?

"Chih tao" cannot be used in reference to knowing persons.

4. B. Pu chih tao, wo ts'ai t'a shih shih liu sui shang hsia.      4. I don't really know, but I guess she is about sixteen.

"Shang-hsia"—up-down, thereabouts, roughly speaking.

5. A. T'a ti fu mu tou tsai shih ma.      5. Are both her parents living?

6. B. T'a fu ch'in hai tsai, pu kuo mu ch'in tsao ch'ü shih la.      6. Her father is still alive, but her mother died some time ago.

"Tsai" used alone in this connection means "alive".

"Ch'ü shih"—left the world, died.

7. A. T'a tsao chi nien ch'ü ti shih, ni chi tê pu chi tê.      7. Do you remember how many years ago she died?

"Ch'ü ti shih"—an adjectival phrase=one's leaving the earth. An alternative is "ch'ü shih la", verbal form in past tense.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 17

1. 趙 Chao.<sup>4</sup> A common surname.  
 小姐 Hsiao chieh. Miss, a single woman.  
 認 Jên.<sup>4</sup> Recognise, know (of persons).  
 認得 Jên-tê. To know, mainly persons.
2. 認識 Jên-shih. To know, to recognise, an alternative for jên-tê.  
 識 Shih.<sup>4</sup> To know, recognise.  
 熟 Shu.<sup>2</sup> Intimate, very friendly.  
 熟識 Shu-shih. Very intimate acquaintance.
3. 知道 Chih-tao. To know, of things and affairs.
4. 猜 Ts'ai.<sup>1</sup> To guess.  
 上下 Shang-hsia. Round about, roughly speaking.
5. 世 Shih.<sup>4</sup> The earth.  
 在世 Tsai-shih. On the earth, alive, living.
6. 去世 Ch'ü-shih. To have left the earth, dead, to die.
7. 記 Chi.<sup>4</sup> To remember, bear in mind.  
 記得 Chi-tê. To remember.

8. B. Pu ta ch'ing ch'u,      8. I am not quite clear  
     wo hsiang t'a shih      about that, but I  
     wuliu nien ch'ien,      think she died about  
     ch'ü ti shih.              five or six years ago.

You may also say "chi pu ta ch'ing ch'u". Note that if an adverbial phrase qualifies the verb only the main part of a composite verb is used: "'chi'—not 'chi tê' pu ta ch'ing ch'u".

9. A. Na mo, Chao hsiao      9. Then Miss Chao is to  
     chieh shih k'o              be pitied.  
     lien ti.  
 10. B. Shih tsai k'o lien.      10. Truly pitiable.  
 11. A. T'a chia li i kung      11. How many are there in  
     chi ko jên.                  her family?  
 12. B. T'ung kung pa ko      12. Eight altogether.  
     jên.

13. A. T'a ti hsiung chi      13. How many brothers  
     wei.                          has she?

There is no possessive "ti" after "t'a", as it is clear from the sense.

14. B. San ko it hsiung,      14. Three brothers and  
     san ko tzu mei.              three sisters.  
 15. A. Chao hsiao chieh      15. What is her place  
     shih hang chi.              (where does she  
    come) in the family?

"Hang chi"—place on a list—the common way of inquiring about one's place in the family.

16. B. T'a hang êrh. T'a      16. She comes second. She  
     yu i ko ko ko,              has one elder bro-  
     liang ko hsiung              ther, two younger  
     ti, liang ko mei              brothers, and two  
     mei.                          younger sisters.

8. 清 Ch'ing.<sup>1</sup> Clear, pure.  
 清 楚 Ch'ing-ch'u. Clear, intelligent.  
 前 Ch'ien.<sup>2</sup> Before, age, formerly.
9. 憐 Lien.<sup>2</sup> Pitiful, pity, sympathise.  
 可 憐 K'o-lien. Pitiabie, to be pitied.
12. 通 T'ung.<sup>1</sup> Together with, altogether.  
 共 Kung.<sup>4</sup> All, together.  
 通 共 T'ung-kung. Taken together, altogether.
13. 弟 Ti.<sup>4</sup> Younger brother.  
 兄 Hsiung.<sup>1</sup> Elder brother.  
 弟 兄 Ti-hsiung. Brothers.  
 位 Wei.<sup>4</sup> Classifier of persons, especially those  
 of rank or position. Also a person of  
 that kind.
14. 姊 Tzu.<sup>2</sup> Elder sister.  
 妹 Mei.<sup>4</sup> Younger sister.  
 姊 妹 Tzu-mei. Sisters.
15. 行 Hang.<sup>2</sup> Grade, place in a list, position,  
 order.  
 行 幾 Hang-chi. An inquiry as to one's place in  
 the family.
16. 哥 Ko.<sup>1</sup> Elder brother.  
 哥 哥 Ko-ko. Elder brother.  
 兄 弟 Hsiung-ti.<sup>4</sup> Younger brother.  
 妹 妹 Mei-mei.<sup>4</sup> Younger sister.

17. *A.* Na mo, chao ni ti hua, t'a yeh mei yu chieh chieh, yeh mei yu mu ch'in.      17. Then, according to your statement, she has neither elder sisters nor mother.
18. *B.* Pu ts'o. T'a tsao chiu tan fu chia li pie'rh ti tsê-jên, yeh hên tung chia shih.      18. That is so. Early on she had to assume domestic responsibilities, and she is very conversant with matters of the home.
- “Tan fu . . . tsê-jên”—carry responsibility, the details of the responsibility coming in between the verb and the noun.
19. *A.* Chao hsiao chieh kên jên ting la hun mei yu.      19. Is Miss Chao engaged?
- “Kên” is a colloquial alternative for “ho”—with.
20. *B.* Pu chih tao, wo k'o i kei ni ta t'ing.      20. I don't know, but I will inquire for you.
21. *A.* Wo hên hsi huan t'o ni t'i wo pan chê chien shih.      21. I am very happy to entrust you to manage this affair for me.
22. *B.* P'an wang wo nêng pan ti t'o tang, pu kei ni tiu lien chiu shih la.      22. I hope I shall be able to put it through satisfactorily, without causing you to lose face.
23. *A.* Tsa mên lia shih lao p'êng yu, ni yeh hên tung li mao, wo k'an ni pu hui chiao wo tiu lien ti.      23. We two are old friends, and you understand etiquettethoroughly. I think it impossible for you to let me down (lit. cause me to lose face).



17. 照 Chao.<sup>4</sup> According to.  
 姐姐 Chieh-chieh. Elder sister.
18. 擔負 Tan fu.<sup>4</sup> To bear, carry, as responsibility.  
 責 Tsê.<sup>2</sup> Chai.<sup>2</sup> Burden of office, responsibility.  
 任 Jen.<sup>4</sup> Office, the care and burden of office.  
 擔負責任 Tan-fu-chai-jên. To carry responsibility.
19. 訂婚 Ting<sup>4</sup> hun. To become engaged to be married, fix, settle.
20. 打聽 Ta-t'ing. To make inquiries.
21. 托 T'o.<sup>4</sup> Commission, to entrust to (pretext).
22. 妥 T'o.<sup>3</sup> Satisfactory.  
 妥當 T'o-tang. Satisfactory.  
 丟 Tiu.<sup>1</sup> To lose.  
 臉 Lien.<sup>3</sup> Face.  
 丟臉 Tiu-lien. To lose face.
23. 貌 Mao.<sup>4</sup> Appearance, form.  
 禮貌 Li-mao. Courtesy, ceremony, etiquette.

24. *B.* Ch'i kan, ch'i kan.  
K'o shih t'a ch'in  
ch'i pu shao, pu  
tê tsui i liang ko  
jên, shih pu yung  
i na.
24. I am honoured (lit. how dare I accept such compliments). But her relations are numerous, and it will not be easy to avoid giving offence to one or two of them.
25. *A.* Wu lun ju ho, ni pu  
yao shuo k'uang.  
Yao shih ni p'êng  
chien shih mo nan  
ch'u, k'ung p'a  
kuo pu ch'ü ti  
shih hou, ni hui  
lai, hsiang hsiang  
hsi hsi ti kao su  
wo, chiu tê la.
25. But whatever happens you must not tell any untruths. If you meet with difficulties which cannot be surmounted, come and inform me as to the details, and leave it at that.
26. *B.* Ni na yang ti ch'u  
chu i, wo hen  
p'ei fu, wo pu hui  
tui ni shih hsin  
ti.
26. I admire you for voicing your opinion in that way. (Have no fear) I will not break faith with you.
27. *A.* Hao, shih ch'ing  
pan ch'êng la, wo  
chiu hao hao êrh  
ti ch'ou hsieh ni.
27. Good. When the affair is completed, I shall gratefully reward you.

24. 豈 Ch'i.<sup>3</sup> How, how can it be? with the next  
a common term of polite usage.  
敢 Kan.<sup>3</sup> Dare.  
戚 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Relatives.  
親戚 Ch'in-ch'i. Relatives.  
罪 Tsui.<sup>4</sup> Sin, crime, offence, offend.  
得罪 Tê-tsui. To offend a person.
25. 論 Lun.<sup>4</sup> To discuss.  
無論 Wu<sup>2</sup>-lun.<sup>4</sup> No matter, however that may  
be.  
何 Ho.<sup>2</sup> How, why.  
如何 Ju-ho. How, why.  
誑 K'uang.<sup>3</sup> Lies, false.  
碰 P'êng.<sup>4</sup> To meet with, come across, hit  
upon.  
碰見 P'êng-chien. To meet with, come across,  
hit upon.  
難處 Nan-ch'u. Difficulties.  
詳 Hsiang.<sup>2</sup> Details.  
細 Hsi.<sup>4</sup> Fine, delicate.  
詳細 Hsiang-hsi. Details, in detail.
26. 主 Chu.<sup>3</sup> Opinion, lord, master.  
主意 Chu-i. Opinion.  
佩服 P'ei.<sup>4</sup> Wear at waist, respect.  
服 Fu.<sup>2</sup> Submit, serve, show deference.  
佩服 P'ei-fu. Respect, admire.  
失 Shih.<sup>1</sup> To lose, to err.  
失信 Shih-hsin.<sup>4</sup> Be unfaithful, break faith.
27. 成 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> To complete, finish, become.  
酬 Ch'ou.<sup>2</sup> Reward, bestow.  
謝 Hsieh.<sup>4</sup> To confer, make a gift.

28. *B.* Pieh t'i na ko. Wo pu kuo shih chin li, pang p'êng yu ti mang, pa la.
28. Say nothing about that. I am simply doing my best to help a friend in an emergency.



## DIALOGUE No. 18

Between two friends, illustrating expressions of Comparison, and other common idioms.

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi hao.          | 1. This is a good article.       |
| 2. B. Tan shih chê-ko pi na-ko hao. | 2. But this is better than that. |

"Pi" is compare—lit. "this compare that good" (see 10 below).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. A. So i wo-mên shuo chê-ko kêng hao.          | 3. So we say "this is better".             |
| 4. B. Chü wo k'an chê shih tsui hao ti tung-hsi. | 4. I consider this is a very fine article. |

"Chü wo k'an"—lit. "according to my seeing".

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 5. A. Yeh k'o i shuo shih ting (t'ing) hao. | 5. You may also say it is "the best". |
|---|---------------------------------------|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 6. B. Chê ko pu pu hao, k'o shih ho na ko i pan hao. | 6. This cloth is inferior, but it is as good as that. |
|--|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. A. Chê yang ti pu, pu ju na ko hao. | 7. This kind of cloth is not as good as that. |
|--|---|

"Pu ju na ko hao"—lit. "not as that good".

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 8. B. Yeh k'o i shuo chê ko kêng pu hao. | 8. It is also possible to say, "this is even worse". |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. A. Hai yu i ko shuo fa, chiu shih chê ko pi na ko huai (tai). | 9. There is another way of speaking, <i>i.e.</i> , this is worse than that. |
|--|---|

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 10. B. K'o shih t'ou i ko shuo fa pi ti êrh ko shuo fa ch'iang. | 10. But the first way of saying it is superior to the second. |
|---|---|

"T'ou-i-ko" and "ti-i-ko" are synonymous.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 18

2. 比      Pi.<sup>3 4</sup> To compare, illustrate.
4. 據      Chü.<sup>4</sup> According to.  
最      Tsui.<sup>4</sup> Most, very, sign of superlative.
5. 頂      Ting.<sup>3</sup> Top, head, sign of superlative.  
挺      T'ing.<sup>3</sup> To stick out, stiff.
6. 布      Pu.<sup>4</sup> Cloth.
9. 壞      Huai.<sup>4</sup> Bad, vicious, ruined.
10. 强      Ch'iang.<sup>2</sup> Strong, so superior, violent.

11. A. Na ch'ê i k'uai pu    11. Compare these two  
       ho na i k'uai pi            pieces of cloth.  
       i pi.

“Pi-i-pi”—compare a compare, make a comparison—a common verbal form.

12. B. Yao chiao wo pi i    12. In what respect do you  
       pi na i fang mien            want me to compare  
       ni.                                them?

“Na i fang mien”—“na” is third tone representing the question—*which?*

13. A. Hsien pi i pi ch'ang    13. First compare them as  
       tuan, tsai pa pu            to length, then as  
       ti hao tai pi i pi,            to quality, and then  
       tsai pi i pi yen            again as to colour,  
       shai, tiao shai pu        especially as to the  
       tiao shai.                    dye being fast or not.

Note this interesting way of forming abstract nouns—long-short equals length; good-bad equals quality.

“Shai”—colour; also pronounced “sê” or “sei”. “Tiao shai”—to lose colour.

14. B. Ch'ê ko pu t'ai kuei,    14. I can't afford to buy  
       wo mai pu ch'i.                this cloth, it is too  
   dear.

“Mai pu ch'i”—buy not rise—just as we say can't rise to it, can't afford.

15. A. Ch'ê ko hsiang tzu    15. This box is too heavy,  
       t'ai chung, wo no            I can't move it.  
       pu tung.

“No pu tung”—move not move, can't move it.

16. B. Chiu shih wo-mên    16. Even if we two thought  
       liang hsiang t'ai,            of lifting it between  
       yeh t'ai pu tung.            us, I fear we couldn't.

“T'ai pu tung”—carry not move, can't carry it.

The positive of all these expressions is to add “la” to the composite verb: “mai ch'i la”—can afford; “no tung la”—can move it, etc.



12. 面 Mien.<sup>4</sup> Face, aspect.  
     方面 Fang-mien. A certain aspect of any matter,  
         one side.
13. 長 Ch'ang.<sup>2</sup> Long.  
     短 Tuan.<sup>3</sup> Short.  
     長短 Ch'ang-tuan. Length.  
     歹 Tai.<sup>3</sup> Bad.  
     好歹 Hao-tai. Quality.  
     顏色 Yen.<sup>2</sup> Colour, face.  
     色 Shai. Sê.<sup>4</sup> Colour, beauty.  
     掉 Tiao.<sup>4</sup> Drop, fall, lose.
15. 動 Tung.<sup>4</sup> Move, stir.

17. A. Chê li yu kên kun 17. There is a short pole  
tzu, pu kuo shih here, but it is too  
t'ai ts'u, wo-mên thick, and we shall  
na pu chu. find it hard to grasp.

"Ts'u"—thick; of round long things.

"Hou" is the word for thick when applied to flat things.

18. B. Wo-mên mai ti tung- 18. We have bought too  
hsi t'ai to, i ko many things, one  
hsiao ch'ê chuang barrow cannot take  
pu hsia. them all.

"Chuang pu hsia"—pack not down, can't get them on.

19. A. Huo wu shih tsai 19. We really have too  
t'ai to, liang ko many things, even  
ma ch'ê yeh la two carts couldn't  
pu tung. pull them.

"La pu tung"—pull not move, can't pull them.

20. B. Wo-mên hui tao 20. When we get home I  
chia ti shih-hou, fear that one room  
k'ung p'a i ko wu will be too small to  
li, yeh fang pu take all these things.  
hsia ch'ê hsieh  
tung hsi.

"Yeh"—still. "Even the *whole* room, is *still* insufficient."

21. A. Pa t'a mên tui ch'i 21. If we pile them up  
lai yeh hsü chiu we can probably get  
chuang tê hsia la. them all in.

"Chuang tê hsia". Note this alternative to what has been suggested in 16 above, to express the positive.

22. B. K'o shih tê hsiao 22. But take care. If you  
hsin, pa tung-hsi put things too high,  
tui ch'i t'ai kao, I fear you might not  
k'ung p'a kou pu be able to reach  
chao. them.

17. 根 Kên.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of sticks.  
 棍 Kun.<sup>4</sup> Staff, stick.  
 挪 No.<sup>2</sup> To move.  
 粗 Ts'u.<sup>1</sup> Broad, thick (of round things like columns).
18. 小車 Hsiao<sup>3</sup>-ch'e. Wheelbarrow.  
 裝 Chuang.<sup>1</sup> To pack, lead into, dress.
19. 貨物 Huo.<sup>4</sup> Goods, wares.  
 物 Wu.<sup>4</sup> Things, goods.  
 貨物 Huo-wu. Goods, wares.  
 馬 Ma.<sup>3</sup> Horse.  
 拉 La.<sup>1</sup> To pull, drag.
20. 屋 Wu.<sup>1</sup> Room in a house, house.
21. 堆 Tui.<sup>1</sup> Heap, pile, to pile up.
22. 高 Kao.<sup>1</sup> High, eminent.  
 够 Kou.<sup>4</sup> To reach to a height, put a thing high up.  
 够不着 Kou pu chao. I can't reach up to it.

23. A. Pu kuo chan tsai i tzu shang, huo shih hsiao t'ai tzu shang, chiu kou chao la. 23. But if you stand on a chair or on the small steps you can reach them all right.

"Huo shih"—or.

24. B. Yu t'ai tzu chê mo kao yeh chiu hsing. 24. If you have steps as high as this that will do.

"Chê mo kao"—as high as this, a very common idiom.

25. A. K'o shih yeh tê k'an t'ai tzu ti k'uan hsia tsên yang. 25. But we must also take note of the width of the steps.

"K'uan chai" is a common alternative to the text.

26. B. Yao shih ni pi wo hsien tao chia, k'o i ho yung jen shangliang, tsêm-mo pan tsêm-mo hao. 26. If you get home before me, talk the matter over with the servants, and whatever you do will be all right.

"Tsêm-mo . . . tsêm-mo"—"however . . . thus".

27. A. Yao shih wo pi ni wan tao tsên yang ni. 27. If I arrive later than you what then?

28. B. Yao shih wo pi ni hsien tao chia, pi shih yin wei ni tsou ts'o la lu. 28. If I get there before you it must be because you have taken the wrong road.

29. A. Na mo, shui hsien tao, shui pan chiu shih la. 29. Then whoever gets there first will put the business through.

"Shui . . . shui"—"whoever . . . he".

23. 站 Chan.<sup>4</sup> To stand, stand up, a post (on a journey).  
     或 Huo.<sup>4</sup> Or, perhaps, someone.  
     台 T'ai.<sup>2</sup> Terrace, platform.  
     台子 T'ai-tzu. Steps.
25. 寬 K'uan.<sup>1</sup> Wide.  
     狹 Hsia.<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> Narrow (unusual).  
     寬狹 K'uan-hsia. Width.  
     商 Shang.<sup>1</sup> Discuss, deliberate, consult.
26. 量 Liang.<sup>2</sup> Measure, plan, to consider (with the preceding).
28. 路 Lu.<sup>4</sup> Road, way.

## DIALOGUE No. 19

## Shopping at the Drapery Store

Shopkeeper, *S.*      Customer, *C.*

1. *C.* Chang kuei ti, kung hsi fa ts'ai.      1. Good-day manager. I hope business is brisk and returns good.

"Kung hsi"—a common congratulatory expression conveying "good wishes".

"Fa ts'ai"—get rich, special greeting to merchants, etc.

2. *S.* T'o fu. Mei yu shên-mo shêng-i.      2. Thanks to you. But business is practically nil.

3. *C.* Wo yao mai ch'ou tzu, yu mei yu.      3. I am wanting silk. Have you any?

4. *S.* Yu. Hsien shêng yao shên-mo yang'erh ti ch'ou tzu. Yao hao ti, hai shih yao tz'u i tie'rh ti ni.      4. Yes. What kind of silk do you want? Do you want good quality or something not quite so good?

"Tz'u"—something not of the first grade.

5. *C.* Yao hao ti. Ch'ou tzu shih tsên yang mai ti, shih lun ch'ih, hai shih lun chin.      5. I want good quality. How do you sell silk, by the foot or by the pound?

"Lun"—to discuss, how things are sold.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 19

1. 掌            Chang.<sup>1</sup> To control, palm of hand.  
   櫃            Kuei.<sup>4</sup> Shop-counter, cupboard.  
   掌櫃的      Chang-kuei-ti. The shop manager.  
   恭            Kung.<sup>1</sup> Respectful feeling, reverence, offer.  
   喜            Hsi.<sup>3</sup> Joy, felicity.  
   恭喜        Kung-hsi. To wish you joy, happiness, etc.  
   財            Ts'ai.<sup>2</sup> Wealth, riches.  
   發財        Fa-ts'ai. To get rich.
2. 福            Fu.<sup>2</sup> Happiness, well-being.  
   托福        T'o-fu. Dependent upon you for my well-being.
- 生            Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Produce, life, living, a living.  
   意            I.<sup>4</sup> Idea, wish, intention.  
   生意        Shêng-i. Business, occupation.
3. 綢            Ch'ou.<sup>2</sup> Manufactured silk.
4. 次            Tz'u.<sup>4</sup> Inferior, second-rate, etc., next.
5. 尺            Ch'ih.<sup>3</sup> A foot of linear measure.

6. S. Ch'ou tzu shih lun      6. Silk is sold by the foot,  
     ch'ih mai ti, ch'a      tea by the pound  
     shih lun chin,      and envelopes by the  
     hsin fêng shih lun      piece.  
     ko mai ti.
7. C. Ling chiao, ling      7. Thank you for your in-  
     chiao. Jang wo      formation. Let me  
     k'an chi yang      see a few samples of  
     ch'ou tzu pa.      silk.
8. S. Chê ko ch'ou tzu      8. This is excellent silk,  
     ting hao, ts'ai      the material is dur-  
     liao nai chiu, yeh      able and of fast dye.  
     pu tiao shai.

"Shai"—colour, also pronounced "sê" or "sei".

9. C. To shao ch'ien i      9. How much is it a foot?  
     ch'ih.
10. S. Ch'i mao ch'ien i      10. Seventy cents a foot.  
     ch'ih.
11. C. Wei mien shao wei      11. But that is a trifle dear.  
     kuei la i tie'rh.      Have you anything  
     Hai yu pi chê ko      a little cheaper?  
     chien i tie'rh ti  
     (p'ien i i tie'rh ti)  
     mei yu.

"Wei mien shao wei", bookish rather, unavoidably a little, a courteous phrase designed to save the vendor's face.

12. S. Yu shih yu. K'ô      12. Yes we have. But  
     shih pieh wang      don't forget "The  
     la, "I fên chia      quality of the goods  
     ch'ien i fên huo".      depends upon the  
    price you pay".

"Pieh"—short for "pu yao"—do not.

"I fên chia ch'ien i fên huo"—one of China's innumerable proverbs; a chapter of the popular ones follows (see Dialogue 38).



6. 茶 Ch'a.<sup>2</sup> Tea.  
 信 Hsin.<sup>4</sup> Letter, news, faith, believe.  
 封 Fêng.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of letters, cover, seal,  
 envelope.  
 信 Hsin-fêng. Envelope.  
 各 Ko.<sup>4</sup> Each, every, individual.
7. 領 Ling.<sup>3</sup> Receive, lead.  
 教 Chiao.<sup>1</sup> Instruction, teaching, to teach.
8. 材 Ts'ai.<sup>2</sup> Materials, material (cloth, silk,  
 etc.).  
 料 Liao.<sup>4</sup> Materials.  
 耐 Nai.<sup>4</sup> Endure, bear.  
 久 Chiu.<sup>3</sup> Old, long time.  
 耐久 Nai-chiu. Durable.
11. 未 Wei.<sup>4</sup> Not yet.  
 免 Mien.<sup>3</sup> Avoid, remit, unavoidable.  
 稍 Shao.<sup>2</sup> Somewhat, slight.  
 微 Wei.<sup>1</sup> Small, minute, slight.  
 便 P'ien.<sup>2</sup> Cheap.  
 宜 I.<sup>2</sup> Right, suits, fits.  
 便宜 P'ien-i. Cheap, reasonable of price, advan-  
 tageous to buyer.
12. 別 Pieh.<sup>2</sup> Do not, probably short for "pu  
 yao".

13. C. **Wo sui shih shê pu tê hua na mo to ti ch'ien, pu kuo chê ko ch'ou tzu ti ts'ai liau, ken yen shai tou hên hao, kei wo liang i chang wu pa.** 13. Although I really cannot afford to spend so much money, the material and the colour of this silk is so fine, that I will take fifteen feet (lit. measure for me fifteen feet).
- "Shê pu tê"—let go cannot get, can't spend (that much).  
 "Liang"—to measure, used of purchasing lengths of cloth, etc.  
 "Wu" is five and refers to "feet"; "chang"—ten feet; "ch'ih"—foot; "ts'un"—inch.
14. S. **Ts'ai fêng tso hao la, t'ai t'ai ch'uan shang shen, i ting shih hên hao k'an ti.** 14. After the tailor has made it up, and you put it on, it will certainly look fine.
- "Ts'ai fang"—cutting out shop—tailor—is sometimes used for "ts'ai fêng", "fêng" being "to sew".
15. C. **Kuei shang yu to shao jên.** 15. How many assistants have you?
- "Kuei shang"—lit. "on the counter", but meaning is "in your store".
16. S. **Yu êrh shih to, tou shih lan ti.** 16. Over twenty, but all lazy.
17. S. (to assistant). **Na ch'ih lai, liang i liang chê ko ch'ou tzu.** 17. Bring the rule and measure this silk.
18. C. **Ni yu mei yu tso wên chang ti ts'ai liau.** 18. Have you any material suitable for mosquito curtains?
19. S. **Yu na, shang, chung, hsia, san têng tou yu. T'ai t'ai hsi huan na i chung ni.** 19. Yes, we have three grades, top, medium and lower. Which kind would you like to see?

13. 捨 Shê.<sup>3</sup> Let go, relinquish.  
 捨不得 Shê-pu-tê. Can't afford, etc., unwilling to  
     part with.  
 花 Hua.<sup>1</sup> To spend, flower.  
 丈 Chang.<sup>4</sup> Measure of length, distance, etc.,  
     equal to ten English feet.  
 量 Liang.<sup>2</sup> To measure, consider.
14. 裁 Ts'ai.<sup>2</sup> To cut, to cut out, plan.  
 裁縫 Ts'ai-fêng. The tailor.  
 穿 Ch'uan.<sup>1</sup> To wear, put on.
16. 懶 Lan.<sup>3</sup> Lazy, slack.
18. 蚊 Wên.<sup>2</sup> Mosquito.  
 帳 Chang.<sup>4</sup> Curtain, net for bed.  
 蚊帳 Wên-chang. Mosquito-net.

20. C. K'an k'an chung têng ti pa. Chê ko ts'ai liao yeh k'o i tso lien tzu ma. 20. I will look at the medium grade. Is this material suitable for curtains?
21. S. Fên liang ch'ing la i tie'rh. Tsai chung i tie'rh ti ts'ai liao hao. 21. The material is a little light for that. A little heavier material would be advisable (good).
22. C. Wo hai yao chi chang nai shih i tie'rh ti, tso p'u kai. 22. I also want several yards of somewhat stronger (cloth) to make bedding.
- "P'u kai"—spread, cover, so bedding.
23. S. Na tao hao pan. Wo-mên yeh yu hên chieh shih ti pu, tso ju tzu hên ho shih. 23. That we can easily manage. We also have some very strong cloth which is suitable for mattresses.
24. C. Chiao wo k'an k'an pa. K'o shih ni mên k'uai yao kuan tien mên, pu shih ma. 24. Let me see it. But you will be closing shortly won't you?
25. S. Na mei kuan hsi. Kuan la tien mên, hai tê ch'ing suan tang t'ien ti chang. 25. That doesn't matter. When the shop is closed, we have still the day's accounts to do.

"Ch'ing suan"—clearly reckon.

"Tang t'ien"—that particular day, the same day. Note this special use of "tang".

20. 簾           Lien-<sup>2</sup>(tzu). Curtain.
21. 分量       Fên-liang. Weight.  
輕           Ch'ing.<sup>1</sup> Light.
22. 鋪           P'u.<sup>1</sup> To spread.  
蓋           Kai.<sup>4</sup> To cover, build.  
鋪蓋       P'u-kai. Bedding (lit. cover and spread)
23. 結           Chieh.<sup>2</sup> Solid, strong, reliable, real.  
實           Shih.<sup>2</sup> Solid, strong, reliable, real.  
綳           Ju.<sup>4</sup> Mattress.
25. 關           Kuan.<sup>1</sup> Concern, involve.  
係           Hsi.<sup>4</sup> Connected with, concern, involve.  
關係       Kuan-hsi. Concern.  
賬           Chang.<sup>4</sup> Account, bill.

## DIALOGUE No. 20

## Shopping at the Shoe Shop

Shopkeeper, *S.*      Customer, *C.*

1. *C.* Yao i shuang hsieh.      1. I want a pair of shoes.  
"I shuang"—a pair, also "i tui".
  2. *S.* Ch'ing tso. Yao ti      2. Please take a seat.  
shih chi hao.                      What size do you  
want?
  3. *C.* Ta kai shih pa hao.      3. Probably size eight.
  4. *S.* Hsien shêng yao p'i      4. Do you want leather or  
hsieh, hai shih pu                  cloth shoes?  
hsieh ni.
  5. *C.* Yao p'i hsieh. Ch'      5. I want leather shoes.  
uan pu hsieh pu                      Cloth shoes don't re-  
nêng tang ni shui.                      sist mud and water  
(so well).
  6. *S.* Pu ts'o. K'o shih      6. Correct. But cloth  
tsai chia li hsien                      shoes are very com-  
cho, ch'uan pu                          fortably when you  
hsieh shih hên                          are at leisure at  
shu fu ti.                                  home.
- "Hsien cho"—the "cho" is a participle, indicating continuation of the action "while you are at leisure", "resting".
7. *C.* Hsien pa p'i hsieh      7. Bring (some) leather  
na lai, shih i shih                      shoes first, for me to  
pa.    try on.
  8. *S.* Chê i shuang, wo      8. I should think this pair  
k'an ta hsiao ho                          is right for size.  
shih.
- "Ta-hsiao"—big-small, so "size", another illustration of the way abstract nouns are formed.
9. *C.* T'ai chin. Tsai      9. This is too tight. Let  
shih i shuang ta                          me try a little larger  
i tie'rh ti.                                  pair.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 20

1. 雙鞋            Shuang.<sup>1</sup> A pair, double, both.  
                     Hsieh.<sup>2</sup> Shoes, slippers.
4. 皮              P'i.<sup>2</sup> Leather, skin.
5. 泥              Ni.<sup>2</sup> Mud, slush.  
    閒              Hsien.<sup>2</sup> At ease, leisure.
6. 舒              Shu.<sup>1</sup> Comfortable, at ease.  
    服              Fu.<sup>2</sup> Accord with.  
    舒服            Shu-fu. At one's ease, comfortable.
8. 大小            Ta-hsiao. Size.
9. 緊              Chin.<sup>3</sup> Tight, restricted, important.

10. S. Hao. Chê shuang chêng ho shih. Shu fu pu shu fu. 10. Very good. This pair is just right. Are the shoes comfortable?

"Chêng ho shih"—just according to style.

11. C. Shu fu. Wo chiu na chë i shuang. Tsai na'erh k'o i mai ling tzu, ling tai ho mao tzu. 11. Yes, comfortable. I will take this pair. Where can one buy collars, ties and hats?

12. S. Tsai tui mie'rh. Hsing Lung Chi shang tien. 12. 'Across the way, at the Hsing Lung Chi store.

13. C. Ni nêng kou pa chë shuang hsieh, sung tao wo ti chia li ch'ü ma. 13. Can you send the shoes to my home?

14. S. Hsing. Hsien shêng fu shang tsai na'rh. 14. Certainly, what is your address?

"Fu shang"—a polite term for "residence".

15. C. Shang Ma Chieh, ssu shih liu hao. 15. No. 46 Shang Ma Chieh.

16. S. Na pu yüan. Wo chiu ta fa i ko huo chi, kei hsien shêng sung ch'ü. 16. That is not far. I will send one of the assistants with them.

"Ta fa"—used of sending *persons*. "Fa" alone used of sending *things*. "Sung" means to escort a person or send things for a person.

17. C. Chiao t'a tso yang ch'ê, wo kei t'a k'ai ch'ê fei. 17. Tell him to take a rickshaw. I will give him his expenses.

"Ch'ê fei"—used of travelling expenses when a conveyance is used.



10. 正 Chêng.<sup>4</sup> Just, exactly, correct.
11. 領 Ling.<sup>3</sup> Collar.  
帶 Tai.<sup>4</sup> Girdle, belt, tie, tape.  
帽 Mao.<sup>4</sup> Hat, cap.
12. 興 Hsing.<sup>1</sup> Rise, prosper.  
隆 Lung.<sup>2</sup> Eminent, abundant.  
記 Chi.<sup>4</sup> Sign, record.
16. 遠 Yüan.<sup>3</sup> Distant.  
打 Ta.<sup>3</sup> An auxiliary verb denoting action.  
發 Fa.<sup>1</sup> To send, transmit.  
打發 Ta-fa. To send a man.  
夥 Huo.<sup>3</sup> Assistant, band, company.  
計 Chi.<sup>4</sup> To reckon, calculate.  
夥計 Huo-chi. Shop assistant, apprentice.
17. 費 Fei.<sup>4</sup> Expenses, what is spent.  
車費 Ch'ê-fei. Travelling expenses (lit. cart expense).

18. S. Pu pi. Kei t'a chi 18. There is no necessity to  
 ko chiu ch'ien do that. Give him  
 chiu tê la. a little wine money  
 (tip), that will be all  
 right.

“ Chiu ch'ien ”—wine money, tip. The more scrupulous use “ ch'a  
 shui ch'ien ”—tea-water money.

18. 必  
酒錢

Pi.<sup>4</sup> Necessary, must.

Chiu-ch'ien. Wine money, a pourboire, tip.

## DIALOGUE No. 21

## Domestic Conversation on Lighting, Heating, etc.

Master, *M.*      Servant, *S.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <i>M.</i> Ni k'ah i k'an chē<br/>ko ti t'an, kan<br/>ching pu kan<br/>ching.</p> <p>2. <i>S.</i> Chē wu tzu t'ai an,<br/>wo k'an pu ta<br/>ch'ing ch'u.</p> <p>3. <i>M.</i> Pa têng tien shang,<br/>chiu k'an tê<br/>ch'ing ch'u la.</p> <p>4. <i>S.</i> Chē i chan têng li<br/>mei yu yu, tien<br/>pu liang.</p> <p>5. <i>M.</i> Chia li mei yu an<br/>tien têng, shih<br/>tsai k'o hsi.</p> <p>6. <i>S.</i> Pu yao chin. Wo<br/>chiu tien i chih<br/>la chu.</p> | <p>1. Look at this carpet, is<br/>it clean?</p> <p>2. This room is too dark,<br/>I can't see very<br/>clearly.</p> <p>3. Light the lamp, and<br/>then you will be able<br/>to see clearly.</p> <p>4. There is no oil in this<br/>lamp, it can't give<br/>much light.</p> <p>5. What a pity we haven't<br/>fitted electric light<br/>in the house.</p> <p>6. Never mind, I will light<br/>a candle.</p> |
|--|--|

Note that "pu", the negative, follows the main verb when qualified by an adverb.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <p>7. <i>M.</i> Yu yang huo mei<br/>yu.</p> | <p>7. Have you any matches?</p> |
|---|---------------------------------|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 21

1. 毯 T'an.<sup>3</sup> Carpet, rug.
2. 暗 An, ngan.<sup>4</sup> Dark, secret.
3. 點 Tien.<sup>3</sup> To ignite, to light, as lamps, fires,  
etc.
- 燈 Têng.<sup>1</sup> Lamp.
4. 盞 Chan.<sup>3</sup> Classifier of lamps.
- 油 Yu.<sup>2</sup> Oil.
- 亮 Liang.<sup>4</sup> Bright, light.
5. 安 An, ngan.<sup>1 4</sup> To fix, place.
- 電 Tien.<sup>4</sup> Electricity, lightning.
6. 要 Yao.<sup>4</sup> Important. (Same word as for  
"want", etc.)
- 緊 Chin.<sup>3</sup> Important. (Same word as for  
"tight".)
- 要緊 Yao-chin. Important.
- 枝 Chih.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of candles, pens, etc.,  
branch.
- 蠟 La.<sup>4</sup> Wax.
- 燭 Chu.<sup>2</sup> Candle.
7. 洋火 Yang-huo. Matches (foreign fire).

8. S. Wo hsiang k'ou tai li yu i ho, k'o shih chao pu cho la. 8. I thought I had a box in my pocket, but I can't find it.
9. M. Na chiu mei yu fa tzu. . 9. Then there is nothing we can do.
- "Mei yu fa tzu"—a very common expression of despair, equal to "There is nothing we can do about it".
10. S. Wo chiu pa ti t'an na tao wai pie'rh ch'ü, tou i tou. 10. I will take the carpet outside and shake it.
11. M. Hao, wo chiu kei ni pang mang, pa t'an tzu chüan ch'i lai. (or) (t'ieh ch'i lai). 11. Good, I will help you to roll up the carpet.
12. S. Hsien tsai t'ien ch'i liang, chia li ying tang shêng huo. 12. It is getting cool now, we ought to light fires in the house.
13. M. Yuan tzu li yu t'an (mei) mo yu. 13. Is there any coal in the yard?
14. S. I tie'rh yeh mei yu, chin nien hai mei yu mai la. 14. None at all, we haven't bought any this year, yet.
- "I tie'rh yeh mei yu". "Yeh" in this position adds great strength to the negative.
15. M. Ch'ü fang yu ch'ai huo mei yu. 15. Is there any firewood in the kitchen?
16. S. Yu. Wo chiu fang tsai huo lu li ch'ü tien. 16. Yes. I will put some in the stove and light it.
17. M. Mei yu yang huo, tsên yang pan ni. 17. But how shall we manage without matches?

8. 袋  
口袋  
找      Tai.<sup>4</sup> Bag, pouch.  
         K'ou-tai. Pocket, bag, sack.  
         Chao.<sup>3</sup> To look for, seek.
10. 抖      Tou.<sup>3</sup> To shake, shudder.
11. 捲  
疊      Chüan.<sup>3</sup> To roll up, a roll.  
         Tieh.<sup>4</sup> To fold up, a fold.
12. 涼      Liang.<sup>2</sup> Cool, chilly.  
應      Ying.<sup>1</sup> Ought.  
應      Ying-tang. Ought.  
當      Shêng.<sup>1</sup> To produce, to light a fire.
13. 生      T'an.<sup>4</sup> Coal.  
炭      Mei.<sup>2</sup> Coal.  
煤
15. 柴      Ch'ai.<sup>2</sup> Firewood, fuel.  
柴      Ch'ai-huo. Firewood.  
火
16. 爐      Lu. Lou.<sup>2</sup> Stove, brazier.

18. S. **Wo shang ko pi jên chia ch'ü, chieh ch'ü.** 18. I will go to our next-door neighbours and borrow from them.

"Ko pi jên chia"—the people on the other side of the partition or wall, so neighbours, close ones.

19. M. **K'uai ch'ü pa. Wo shên shang chüeh tê lêng. I hui lai chiu shêng huo pa.** 19. Go without delay. I feel cold. Light the fire as soon as you come back.

"I hui lai, chiu . . ."—"as soon as you come back, then . . .".

20. S. **T'ai yang k'uai hsia ch'ü ti shih hou, jên jên tou chüeh tê lêng.** 20. Just before sun-down everybody feels cold.

21. M. **Ni k'an na kuei tzu li mien yu jung t'an, na ch'u liang ch'uang lai.** 21. In the cupboard (wardrobe) there you will find some blankets. Take out a couple.

22. S. **Hsien shêng t'ang i t'ang; to kai shang i tie'rh. Tsai to ho k'ai shui, ch'u i tie'rh han. Kuo liang t'ien chiu hao la.** 22. Lie down sir with some extra covers. Then drink lots of hot water to induce perspiration. (And) you will be all right again in a few days (lit. two days).

23. M. **K'ai k'ai na ko ch'ou t'i. Li pie'rh yu fa han yao. Wo ch'ih san liang k'o. Tsai pa têng mieh la, wo yao shui chiaio.** 23. Open that drawer. There is some medicine in it to induce perspiration. I will take two or three tablets. Then put out the lamp, I want to sleep.



18. 隔 Ko.<sup>2</sup> Partition.  
 壁 Pi.<sup>4</sup> Screen, partition wall.  
 隔壁人家 Ko-pi-jên-chia. Neighbours.
19. 覺 Chüeh. Chiao.<sup>2</sup> Feel, be conscious of.  
 冷 Lêng.<sup>3</sup> Cold.
20. 陽 Yang.<sup>2</sup> The sun, male principle, south.
21. 櫃 Kuei.<sup>4</sup> Wardrobe, cupboard.  
 牀 Ch'uang.<sup>3</sup> Bed, classifier of blankets, etc.  
 絨 Jung.<sup>2</sup> Wool, woollen.  
 絨毯 Jung-t'an. Blanket; rug.
22. 躺 T'ang.<sup>3</sup> To recline, lie down.  
 汗 Han.<sup>4</sup> Perspiration.  
 出汗 Ch'u-han. To perspire.  
 顆 K'o.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of pills, seeds, pearls, etc.
23. 抽 Ch'ou.<sup>1</sup> To draw out.  
 屨 T'i.<sup>4</sup> Drawer, in a table, etc.  
 抽屨 Ch'ou-t'i. Drawer.  
 滅 Mich.<sup>4</sup> To put out, as a lamp, candle, etc.

## DIALOGUE No. 22

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on some personal needs such as Washing, Waking, Wages, etc.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. M. Na jê shui lai, wo<br>yao hsi lien.                                    | 1. Bring me some hot<br>water to wash my<br>face.   |
| 2. S. Hsien shêng pu yao<br>hsi tsao ma.                                     | 2. Don't you want to have<br>a bath?  |
| 3. M. K'ung p'a jê shui<br>pu kou hsi tsao.                                  | 3. I am afraid there will<br>not be enough hot<br>water for a bath.   |
| 4. S. Yeh kou la. Shui<br>hên jê, t'ien tien<br>lêng shui, chiu pu<br>ta li. | 4. Just about enough.<br>The water is very<br>hot, and if a little<br>cold is added, it<br>should be about<br>enough. |

"Yeh", we saw in the last dialogue, strengthens the negative it precedes; here we see how it modifies the sense of a positive expression; e.g., "enough", just enough, no surplus.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. M. K'o shih wo yeh<br>tê kua lien, yung<br>lêng shui pu<br>hsing.                            | 5. But I must shave as<br>well, and cold water<br>won't do for that.                 |
| 6. S. Hsien shêng k'o la<br>ma. Wo pa i pei<br>liang k'ai shui,<br>na tao lou shang<br>ch'ü la. | 6. Are you thirsty sir. I<br>have taken a glass<br>of cold boiled water<br>upstairs. |

The "la" at the end of the sentence marks the whole as being in the past tense.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 22

1. 熱 Jê.<sup>4</sup> Hot.  
 洗臉 Hsi.<sup>3</sup> To wash.  
 Lien.<sup>3</sup> The face, countenance.
2. 洗澡 Tsao.<sup>3</sup> To bathe.  
 洗澡 Hsi-tsao. To take a bath.
4. 添 T'ien.<sup>1</sup> To add to, increase.
5. 刮 Kua.<sup>1</sup> To scrape, to shave.  
 刮臉 Kua-lien. To shave the face.
6. 涼開水 Liang-k'ai-shui. Cold boiled water.

7. M. Ming t'ien wo yao  
tsao tsao ti ch'i  
lai. Ni wu tien  
chung lai chiao  
wo.

7. I want to get up very  
early to-morrow.  
Come and call me at  
five o'clock.

The duplication of the adverb "tsao" intensifies the meaning as "very early".

8. S. Wo k'an hsien shêng  
fa la, hai shih  
tsao tien shui ti  
hao.

8. I can see that you are  
tired sir. You will  
do well to get to bed  
a little early.

9. M. Wo ming t'ien ch'i  
lai ti shih hou,  
yao kei wo sung  
wên shui hsi shou.

9. Bring me some warm  
water to wash my  
hands when I get up  
to-morrow.

10. M. (cont.). Tso t'ien  
ni pa ch'uang mei  
yu p'u hao, wo  
mei yu shui hao  
chiao.

10. You did not make the  
bed properly yester-  
day. I did not sleep  
very well.

11. S. Tui pu ch'i hsien  
shêng. Tso t'ien  
shih ch'ing t'ai  
to, mang pu kuo  
lai.

11. I am sorry sir. There  
was too much to  
do yesterday, and  
I couldn't overtake  
the work.

"Tui pu ch'i"—match not rise, I have not done what the circum-  
stances called for; apologies!

"Mang pu kuo lai"—busy not get round, too much to do.

12. M. Yao shih ni shih  
ch'ing t'ai to, kan  
pu kuo lai ti shih  
hou, wo chiu kai  
kei ni chao i ko  
pang mang ti.

12. If you have too much  
to do, and cannot do  
everything, I must  
get someone to help.

8. 乏 Fa.<sup>2</sup> Fatigued, tired.  
睡 Shui.<sup>4</sup> To sleep, slumber.  
睡覺 Shui chiao. To sleep.
9. 溫 Wên.<sup>1</sup> Warm, mild, to warm up.  
手 Shou.<sup>3</sup> Hand, hands.
10. 鋪 P'u.<sup>1</sup> To spread, or make a bed.
11. 對不起 Tui-pu-ch'i. To offend, apologise.

13. S. Chiao hsien shêng fei hsin. Pu kuo hai yu i chien shih ch'ing ho hsien shêng shuo. 13. Many thanks (lit. I have caused you to expend thought). But there is another matter on which I must speak to you. \*

"Chiao . . . fei hsin"—cause . . . expend heart; thank you!

14. M. Shih shih mo shih ch'ing, ni shuo pa. 14. Tell me what it is.
15. S. Hsien tsai ch'êng li t'ou shêng huo ch'êng tu t'ai kao, kuo jih tzu hên nan. 15. The standard of living in the city is so high that I find it difficult to live.

"Shêng huo"—life, living, conditions of life.

"Kuo jih tzu"—to pass the days; "living" in the sense of "to get a living".

"Chêng tu"—standard. "Piao chun" is also used.

16. M. Ni i ko yüeh chêng to shao ch'ien. 16. How much do you earn a month?
17. S. Pa k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, pu kou yung. 17. Eight dollars. It isn't enough.
18. M. Na mo, wo chiu kei ni chia san k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, hsing pu hsing. 18. Then I will give you a rise of three dollars a month. Will that do?
19. S. Mien ch'iang. Hsieh hsieh. 19. I must make it do. Thanks.

15. 城 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> The city.  
 活 Huo.<sup>2</sup> Living, livelihood, lively.  
 生活 Shêng-huo. One's life, livelihood, etc.  
 程 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> Capacity.  
 度 Tu.<sup>4</sup> Standard.  
 程度 Ch'êng-tu. Capacity, standard.  
 生活程度 Shêng - huo - ch'êng - tu. The standard of living.  
 日 Jih.<sup>4</sup> Day, the sun.  
 過日子 Kuo-jih-tzu. To live, to pass one's days.  
 難 Nan.<sup>2</sup> Difficult.
16. 掙 Chêng.<sup>4</sup> To earn.
19. 勉 Mien.<sup>3</sup> To rouse oneself, make an effort.

## DIALOGUE No. 23

## The Week's Work in the House

Master or Mistress, *M.*      Servant, *S.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. <i>M.</i> Wo chiu pa ni t'ien<br/>t'ien, ying tang<br/>pan ti shih, shuo<br/>kei ni t'ing.<br/>Mei li pai i yao hsi<br/>i fu.</p>   | <p>1. <i>I</i> will now tell you<br/>about each day's<br/>chores. On Mondays<br/>you must do the<br/>washing (laundry).</p>                           |
| <p>"T'ien t'ien"—day by day. "Mei t'ien" is also in common use. Notice "mei li pai", "i, êih, san, etc." for the days of the week, which begins with Monday. Sunday is "Li pai jih", or "t'ien", or "Hsing ch'i jih" ("t'ien").</p> |   |
| <p>2. <i>S.</i> Pa pu kan ching ti<br/>i fu, sung tao hsi<br/>i tien ch'ü, hsing<br/>pu hsing.</p>  | <p>2. Couldn't we send the<br/>dirty linen to the<br/>laundry?</p>  |
| <p>3. <i>M.</i> Chiao hsi i tien hsi<br/>i fu, pu shang<br/>suan. Kan ching<br/>ti i fu sung hui<br/>lai ti shih hou,<br/>ch'üan shih k'u<br/>lung.</p>   | <p>3. To send the dirty linen<br/>to the laundry is<br/>uneconomical. For<br/>when the clean gar-<br/>ments come back<br/>they are full of holes.</p> |
| <p>4. <i>S.</i> Na mo, chiao ts'ai<br/>fêng pu i pu.</p>  | <p>4. Then you have to get<br/>the tailor to patch<br/>them.</p>  |
| <p>5. <i>M.</i> Shih ti. Ni k'an<br/>chê i chien han<br/>shan, ch'ê ti ti<br/>fang t'ai to.</p>   | <p>5. That is so. Look at<br/>this shirt, torn in too<br/>many places alto-<br/>gether.</p>   |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 23

1. 天天 T'ien-t'ien. Daily, every day.  
 禮 Li.<sup>3</sup> Worship, rite, ceremony.  
 拜 Pai.<sup>4</sup> Worship, revere.  
 禮拜 Li-pai. Worship, the week, days of the  
 week.  
 每 Mei.<sup>3</sup> Each, every.  
 衣服 I-fu. Clothes.
2. 店 Tien.<sup>4</sup> An inn, used of laundries.
3. 窟 K'u.<sup>1</sup> Hole, cave.  
 窿 Lung.<sup>3</sup> Hole, cave.
4. 補 Pu.<sup>3</sup> To patch, a patch, repair, tonic.
5. 衫 Shan.<sup>1</sup> Shirt.  
 汗衫 Han-shan. Shirt, vest.  
 摺 Ch'ê.<sup>3</sup> To tear, rend.

6. S. Hsi i tien ti kung  
jên, pu chia hsiao  
hsin, pu ju chia  
li hsi ti hao.

6. The workmen in the  
laundry don't take  
special care, (so) we  
had better wash at  
home.

"Chia hsiao hsin"—add a little heart, pay careful attention; for the "little heart" is intended to denote concentration.

7. M. Mei li pai êrh, yao  
shou shih chia li  
ti fang wu, lou  
shang ho lou hsia.

7. Every Tuesday you  
must do all the  
rooms in the house,  
upstairs and down.

8. S. Shou shih k'o fang  
ho hsi tsao fang,  
shih wo ti shih;  
shou shih fan  
t'ing ho ch'u  
fang, shih ch'u  
tzu ti shih, shih  
pu shih.

8. To clear up the guest-  
room and the bath-  
room is my job, but  
the dining-room and  
the kitchen are the  
cook's responsibility,  
aren't they?

"Ch'u tzu" more definitely means cook than "ta shih (ssu) fu",  
as "ch'u" is kitchen.

9. M. Ling wai hai yu shu  
fang ho ts'ê so,  
chê hsieh kuei  
shui pan ni.

9. In addition there are  
the study and the  
W.C. To whom are  
we to look for doing  
these?

"Ts'ê so"—w.c.; also "mao fang" or "mao ssu".

"Kuei shui pan"—revert who do?

10. S. P'ing ch'ang chô  
hsieh tou shih  
k'an mên ti huo  
shih ma fu kan ti.

10. Normally these are  
the responsibility of  
the gateman or the  
groom.

11. M. Wu lun shui kan,  
chia li tsung tê  
yao kan ching,  
chêng ch'i.

11. No matter who does  
the work, the house  
must be kept clean  
and tidy.

"Wu lun"—not discuss, so, no matter.

6. 小心 Hsiao-hsin. Take care, cautious.

8. 廳 T'ing.<sup>1</sup> Hall, court, room.

9. 廁  
所  
廁  
所  
歸 Ts'ê.<sup>4</sup> Ssu.<sup>4</sup> Private, closet.  
So.<sup>3</sup> A place.  
Ts'ê-so. W.C.  
Kuei.<sup>1</sup> Revert to, to belong to.

10. 平  
常  
平  
常  
看  
門  
的  
馬  
夫 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> Level, constant, ordinary.  
Ch'ang.<sup>4</sup> Usual, ordinary, constant.  
P'ing-ch'ang. Usual, ordinary.  
K'an-mên-ti. Gatekeeper.  
Ma-fu. Groom.

12. S. T'ing hsien shêng ti fên fu. 12. Your orders shall be obeyed.

"T'ing"—hear, in the sense of obey; "fên fu"—orders.

13. M. Mei li pai liu yao ts'a yin tzu ho po li ch'i chü; ch'üan fang tzu ti ti t'an yao tou i tou, huó cho kua tsai yüan tzu li tan i tan. 13. Every Saturday you should polish the silver and glass ware. Take up the carpets from all rooms and shake them, or hang them in the yard and beat them.

14. S. Chê yang tso, hui ch'ên hên ta, chiao lin chü pu hsi huan. 14. But that will cause a lot of dust, and the neighbours won't like it.

"Chiao . . . pu hsi huan" ("chiao" makes the verb passive)—will be displeased.

15. M. Na pu hsiang kan, chia li tê Chiang chiu wei shêng. 15. That doesn't matter, we must observe hygiene in the home.

"Pu hsiang kan"—not his concern, so does not matter.

"Chiang chiu"<sup>4</sup> means to be particular about.

Another "chiang<sup>1</sup> chiu<sup>4</sup>" means to put up with something which is not quite as one would like it. (See Dialogue 27, sentence 21.)

16. S. Ko jên yao Chiang chiu ko jên ti wei shêng, tan shih k'o pu yao fang. 16. Every man ought to be particular about hygiene as far as he himself is concerned;

12. 吩 Fên.<sup>1</sup> Command, order.  
 咐 Fu.<sup>4</sup> Command, order.
13. 擦 Ts'a.<sup>1</sup> To rub, polish.  
 銀 Yin.<sup>2</sup> Silver, money.  
 玻 Po.<sup>1</sup> Glass.  
 璃 Li.<sup>2</sup> Glassware.  
 器 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Vessel, utensil.  
 揮 Tan.<sup>4</sup> To dust, beat.
14. 灰 Hui.<sup>1</sup> Ashes.  
 塵 Ch'ên.<sup>2</sup> Dust, small particles.  
 鄰 Lin.<sup>2</sup> Neighbouring, neighbour.  
 居 Chü.<sup>1</sup> Dwell.  
 鄰 Lin-chü. Neighbours.  
 喜 Hsi.<sup>3</sup> Pleasure, joy.  
 歡 Huan.<sup>1</sup> Pleased, rejoice.  
 歡 Hsi-huan. To be pleased, rejoice.
15. 相 Hsiang.<sup>1</sup> Mutual.  
 干 Kan.<sup>1</sup> Concern.  
 不 相 干 Pu - hsiang - kan. Of no concern, of no moment.  
 講 Chiang.<sup>3</sup> To be particular, explain.  
 究 Chiu.<sup>4</sup> To analyse, examine, be particular about.  
 講 究 Chiang-chiu. To be concerned or particular about.  
 衛 Wei.<sup>4</sup> To guard, protect.  
 衛 生 Wei-shêng. Hygiene.
16. 同 T'ung.<sup>2</sup> Together with, with, the same.  
 時 T'ung-shih. At the same time, concurrently.  
 妨 Fang.<sup>1</sup> Hinder, obstruct.

ai jên chia ti wei  
shêng.

but surely he must  
not make it more  
difficult (hinder) for  
others to observe  
hygiene.

"Jên chia"—others, other people.

17. M. Ni shuo ti yu li. 17. There is reason in what  
Hsien tsai pu yao you say. But now  
to shuo hua, kan less of this chatter,  
ni ti ch'ü pa. get on with your job.

"Kan ni ti"—mind your own business!

18. S. Hsien shêng kei wo 18. If you will provide me  
i k'uai kan ching with a clean duster,  
ti ma pu, wo chiu I will dust the table,  
ch'ü mo cho tzu, chairs, mirror, and  
i tzu, ching tzu, all the rest of the  
i ch'ieh ti chia furniture.  
chü.

19. M. Hao. Yeh pu yao 19. Good. And don't for-  
wang la, mo chia get to open the win-  
chü ti shih hou, dows when you are  
yao pa ch'uang dusting, to change  
hu k'ai k'ai, huan the air.  
huan k'ung ch'i.
20. S. T'ien ch'i hao ti 20. In fine weather that  
shih hou, k'o i can be done; but  
chê yang pan; when it is windy or  
kua fêng hsia yü wet, I fear that would  
ti shih hou, k'ung be inadvisable.  
p'a pu hsing.

16. 碍妨碍 Ai, ngai.<sup>4</sup> Stand in the way, hinder.  
Fang-ai. Hindrance, obstruct.
17. 幹你的 Kan-ni-ti. Mind your own business.
18. 麻 Ma.<sup>2</sup> Hemp.  
麻布 Ma-pu. Duster.  
抹 Mo.<sup>2</sup> To dust, polish, rub with the hand.  
鏡 Ching.<sup>4</sup> Mirror.  
傢具 Chia.<sup>1</sup> Tools, furniture.  
傢具 Chü.<sup>4</sup> Implements.  
切 Chia-chü. Utensils, furniture.  
一切 Ch'ieh.<sup>1</sup> All, everything.  
一切 I-ch'ieh. Everything, all.
19. 換 Huan.<sup>4</sup> To change, exchange.  
空 K'ung.<sup>1</sup> Empty, vast, air.  
氣 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Atmosphere, air.  
空氣 K'ung-ch'i. Air, fresh air.
20. 風 Fêng.<sup>1</sup> The wind.  
括 Kua.<sup>1</sup> To blow.  
括風 Kua-fêng. Windy.  
雨 Yü.<sup>3</sup> Rain.  
下雨 Hsia-yü. To rain, it is raining.

## DIALOGUE No. 24

## Talking Accounts with the Cook

Mistress, *M.*      Cook, *C.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <i>M.</i> (<i>to cook</i>). Ta ssu fu lai suan chang.</p> <p>2. <i>C.</i> T'ai t'ai shao wei têng i têng, wo na chang pu ho ch'ien pi.</p> <p>3. <i>M.</i> Chê ko (pên) li pai ni mai la shêm-mo tung-hsi, man man ti shuo pa.</p> <p>4. <i>C.</i> Chê ko li pai wo mai la yang jou, pai ts'ai, ti tan, hung lo pei, chi tan, hua shêng.</p> | <p>1. Come and reckon accounts.</p> <p>2. Just a moment, while I fetch the account book and pencil.</p> <p>3. What have you bought this week? Tell me slowly.</p> <p>4. I have bought this week mutton, cabbage, potatoes, carrots, eggs and peanuts.</p> |
|--|---|

"Hsing-ch'i" is the secular designation of the week, and is used also for the individual days of the week, with the numeral "i, êrh, san, etc.," attached. The other common term for week is "li-pai", which lit. means worship, and was introduced by the Christian missionaries. The older Chinese designation of the days of the week consisted of names of planets.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>5. <i>M.</i> Mu yu mai niu jou, ya tzu, yeh chi ma.</p> | <p>5. Haven't you bought any beef, ducks or pheasants?</p> |
|--|--|



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 24

2. 簿 Pu.<sup>4</sup> Account-book, note-book  
 賬簿 Chang-pu. Account-book.  
 鉛 Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> Lead, black-lead.  
 鉛筆 Ch'ien-pi. Pencil.
3. 本 Pên.<sup>3</sup> This, native, one's own.
4. 星 Hsing.<sup>1</sup> Star.  
 期 Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Date, period of time.  
 星期 Hsing-ch'i. Week.  
 白 Pai.<sup>2 4</sup> White.  
 白菜 Pai-ts'ai. Cabbage.  
 地 Ti.<sup>4</sup> The earth.  
 蛋 Tan.<sup>4</sup> Egg, egg-like.  
 地蛋 Ti-tan. Potatoes.  
 紅 Hung.<sup>2</sup> Red.  
 蘿 Lo.<sup>2</sup> Carrots.  
 蔔 Pei.<sup>2</sup> Carrots.  
 雞蛋 Chi-tan. Eggs, egg.  
 花 Hua.<sup>1</sup> Flower.  
 花生 Hua-shêng. Peanuts.
5. 牛 Niu-jou. Beef.  
 鴨 Ya<sup>1</sup> (tzu). Duck.

6. C. Chê chi +t'ien shih  
ch'ang shang mei  
yu chê hsieh tung  
hsi. Hou t'ien  
kan chi, yeh hsü  
yu mai ti.
6. There are none in the  
market these days.  
But the day after  
to-morrow is market  
day. There may be  
some then.
7. M. To jih mei yu ch'ih  
pai ts'ai hua, pu  
shih mei yu ni.
7. We have not eaten  
cauliflower for a long  
time. Surely there  
are some to be had?
8. C. Yu shih yu, k'o shih  
chia ch'ien t'ai  
ta, wo pu kan  
mai.
8. There are some, but the  
price is too high, I  
dare not buy.
9. M. Ta kai yin wei pu  
shih shih hou.  
Liu hsin, chia lo  
ti shih hou chiu  
mai.
9. Probably that is because  
it is not the season.  
Watch out, and when  
the price comes  
down, buy.
- “Liu hsin”—take care.  
“Chia lo”—falling prices. “Chia chang” is rising prices.
10. C. T'ai t'ai hsi huan  
ch'ih shêng ts'ai  
ma. Hsien tsai  
yu to yu p'ien i.
10. Do you like salads?  
They are plentiful  
and cheap just now.
- “Yu to yu p'ien i”. “Yu . . . yu”—both . . . and.
11. M. Hsi huan ch'ih, k'o  
shih tê hsiao hsin,  
shêng ts'ai tsung  
tê hsien yung k'ai  
shui, hsi kuo,  
ts'ai kan ch'ih.
11. Yes, but you must be  
careful, salads should  
be washed in cold  
boiled water before  
one dare eat them.

“Ts'ai” in such phrases means “then” in a logical sense of sequence. Something must first be done, and “then” something else *can* happen.

6. 市 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Market.  
 場 Ch'ang.<sup>2</sup> Open place, square, market.  
 市 Shih-ch'ang. Market.  
 集 Chi.<sup>1</sup> The fair.  
 趕 Kan-chi. To go to the fair, hold a fair.
7. 白 Pai-ts'ai-hua. Cauliflower.  
 菜 花
9. 時 Shih-hou. Time, season.  
 候 Liu.<sup>3</sup> To keep, hold.  
 留 Liu-hsin. Observe, notice, give attention  
 心 to.  
 落 Lo. Lao.<sup>4</sup> To come down, to fall, as  
 prices, leaves.
10. 生 Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Raw, as opposed to cooked.  
 生 Shêng-ts'ai. Salads, raw vegetables.  
 菜

12. *C.* Chin t'ien wo shên shang pu shu-fu, fa shao, k'ung p'a shang la fêng la.
12. I am not very well to-day, I am feverish. I fear I have caught cold.
- "Shang fêng", wounded by the wind, so means catch cold. Other expressions for this are "chao liang", or "shou fêng".
13. *M.* Wo ch'ing tai-fu (i shêng) lai k'an i k'an, hao pu hao.
13. I will call a doctor to see what is the matter, shall I?
- "Tai fu", a common designation of doctor; others are "I shêng", "k'an ping ti hsien shêng".
14. *C.* Pu yao ch'ing hsi i, ch'ing Chung kuo hsien shêng, kei wo k'ai fang tzu, chiu hsing.
14. Don't ask a western doctor. I will ask a Chinese doctor to write out a prescription.
15. *M.* K'o shih chang hai mei yu suan, t'ung kung hua la to shao ch'ien.
15. But we haven't taken the account yet. How much have you spent altogether?
16. *C.* T'ung kung hua la shih i k'uai wu mao liu.
16. I have spent altogether eleven dollars and fifty-six cents.
17. *M.* K'ung p'a chê ko chang suan ts'o la, ni tsai suan suan.
17. I fear you have made a mistake in this account, try again.
18. *C.* Wo k'an mei yu suan ts'o. Wo hai shêng hsia liang k'uai ch'i.
18. I think it is right. I have a balance of two dollars seventy.
19. *M.* K'ung p'a ni nao ching pu ch'ing ch'u, wo k'an ni hai hsia ch'ien chiu mao.
19. I think your brain must not be quite clear, I think you are short ninety cents.

12. 舒服      Shu-fu. Comfortable, happy, contented.  
      燒        Shao.<sup>1</sup> Hot, feverish, heat.  
      發燒      Fa-shao. To be hot, have a fever.  
      傷        Shang.<sup>1</sup> To injure, to catch (cold), be  
               injured.
13. 大        Tai. T'ai.<sup>4</sup> Great, big.  
      大夫      Tai-fu. Doctor.  
      醫        I.<sup>1</sup> To heal, cure.  
      醫生      I-shêng. Doctor.
14. 西醫      Hsi-i. Western doctor.  
      中國先生 Chung-kuo-hsien-shêng. Chinese doctor.  
      方        Fang.<sup>1</sup> (tzu). Prescription.  
      開方子 K'ai-fang-tzu. Write a prescription, to  
               prescribe.
18. 剩        Shêng.<sup>4</sup> Remainder, left over.
19. 欠        Ch'ien.<sup>4</sup> To be short, to owe.  
      腦        Nao.<sup>3</sup> The brain.  
      腦經      Nao-ching. Brain.

20. C. Ych hsü t'ai t'ai . 20. Perhaps you are right.  
suan ti tui. Wo My head is a little  
ti nao tzu chiu bit fuzzy.  
shih hun i tie'rh.

20. 昏

Hun.<sup>4</sup> Confused.

## DIALOGUE No. 25

## Travelling by Road

Between two friends, A and B

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Ming t'ien wo yao<br>ch'u mên.                                  | 1. To-morrow I intend to<br>travel.                                    |
| 2. B. Hsien shêng shang<br>na-êrh ch'ü.                               | 2. Where are you thinking<br>of going?                                 |
| 3. A. Ta suan shang P'u<br>Tien Ch'ih ch'ü,<br>k'an i ko p'êng<br>yu. | 3. I plan to go to P'u Tien<br>Ch'ih, to look up one<br>of my friends. |

Note "k'an" in the sense of "call on" a person. Sometimes the expression "k'an-wang" is used, the "wang" being the word for expect, hope, etc., and so you get the idea of "going to inquire about", much as we say "I am going to 'look up' my friend".

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. B. Hao, wo yüan i p'ei<br>nin ch'ü, hsing<br>pu hsing. | 4. Good, I would like to<br>accompany you —<br>may I? |
|---|---|

"P'ei" means to accompany, but is only used of "equals" in the social scale. A servant cannot use it to his master. If it were a servant speaking he would say "Wo ken hsien-sheng ch'u", i.e., I will follow you.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. A. Tan shih ni yao tai<br>ni tzu chi tsai<br>lu shang ch'ih ti<br>tung hsi.    | 5. All right, provided you<br>carry your own road<br>rations. (Lit. but<br>you ought to carry<br>. . .) |
| 6. B. Na pu ch'êng wên<br>t'i, hsien-shêng<br>chi tien chung<br>ch'i shên.        | 6. That presents no diffi-<br>culty, what time<br>shall you start?                                      |
| 7. A. Tsai ch'ing tsao,<br>t'ai yang kang<br>shang lai ti shih<br>hou, tung shên. | 7. Very early, as soon as<br>the sun rises, we will<br>start.   |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 25

3. 打算 Ta-suan. To plan, propose, think of doing.  
 普 P'u.<sup>3</sup> Universal.  
 池 Ch'ih.<sup>2</sup> Pool, pond.  
 普天池 P'u-t'ien-ch'ih. The name of a place.
4. 陪 P'ei.<sup>2</sup> To accompany, act as companion,  
 etc.
6. 題 T'i.<sup>2</sup> To mention, subject of discourse.  
 問題 Wên-t'i. A question.  
 不成問題 Pu-ch'êng-wên-t'i. That makes no ques-  
 tion.
7. 太陽 T'ai-yang. The sun.  
 剛 Kang.<sup>1</sup> Just now, just then.  
 動身 Tung-shên. To move, start on a journey.  
 起身 Ch'i-shên. To move, start on a journey.

8. B. Hsien shêng tso      8. Are you going by cart  
       chiao ch'ê, hai            (Peking cart) or rid-  
       shih ch'i shêng            ing?  
       k'ou ni.

Note the difference between "ch'i" and "tso". The former means to ride astride, so is applicable to bicycle or horse riding. "Tso" is used of travelling by any vehicle which permits of "sitting" in the ordinary way.

9. A. Yeh pu tso chiao      9. Neither by cart nor by  
       ch'ê, yeh pu ch'i           horse, we will walk.  
       ma, wo-mên pu  
       hsing pa.

"Yeh pu . . . yeh pu"—neither . . . nor.

10. B. Na t'ai fei shih,      10. But that is difficult,  
       tsêm-mo pu tso            why don't you go by  
       ch'i ch'ê ni.               auto?

11. A. Tso kung kung ch'i    11. To go by omnibus is  
       ch'ê, pu shu fu,           not comfortable, the  
       lu tao pu p'ing,           road is rough and  
       tien p'o ti li-hai.        one gets badly jolted.

"Li hai" is a very common adverb indicating an extreme condition, much as we use "terribly" in colloquial speech.

12. B. P'u Tien Ch'ih li      12. How far is Pu Tien  
       chê li to ma yüan.        Ch'ih from here?

13. A. Ta yüeh shih wu li    13. Probably about fifteen  
       lu.                            li.

"Ta yüeh" (yo) is generally used, of statements about figures, measurements, etc., as is "tâ lüeh" (whereas "ta kai" may be applied to any condition where vague probability or generalities are implied). But this is not a hard and fast distinction.

14. B. Na tao pu yüan, pu    14. That is not very far for  
       hsing yeh k'o i.            sure, walking is pos-  
     sible.

8. 轎  
轎車  
騎  
牲  
牲口  
Chiao.<sup>4</sup> A sedan chair.  
Chiao-ch'ê. A mule-cart, Peking cart.  
Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> To ride astride.  
Shêng.<sup>1</sup> An animal, cattle.  
Shêng-k'ou. Animals in general, horses,  
mules, donkeys, camels, etc.
9. 步  
步行  
Pu.<sup>4</sup> A step, pace, on foot.  
Pu-hsing. To walk, go on foot.
10. 費  
費事  
Fei.<sup>4</sup> To spend, waste.  
Fei-shih. To spend oneself on something,  
difficult.
11. 汽  
車  
公共汽車  
顛  
簸  
厲  
害  
厲  
害  
Ch'i-ch'ê. Motor car (lit. vapour car).  
Kung.<sup>1</sup> Public, general, official.  
Kung-kung-ch'i-ch'ê. The omnibus.  
Tien.<sup>1</sup> Upset, jolting, bumpy.  
P'o.<sup>4</sup> Winnow, used of the jolting move-  
ment.  
Li.<sup>4</sup> Sharp, severe, oppress.  
Hai.<sup>4</sup> Hurt, injure.  
Li-hai. Extreme, terribly.
13. 約  
大約  
Yüeh. Yo.<sup>1</sup> Agree, pledge, about.  
Ta-yüeh. Roughly, about, of measure-  
ments.

15. A. K'o shih k'o i, tan shih pi hsü tai i ko lêng jê shui p'ing tzu, chuang man liao k'ai shui ch'ü ho.      15. No, there is nothing against walking it, but it is necessary to carry a thermos flask full of boiled water to drink.

Note "k'o shih k'o i", where the verb "k'o" is duplicated with the idea of modifying the strength of it. Here "it is just possible", to walk, but there are conditions attached to walking it.

16. B. Na ko wo tao wang pu liao, hai yu shêm-mo kai tai ti ni.      16. That I shan't forget, ought one to take anything else?

"Pu liao" following a verb indicates impossibility of the verbal action being carried into effect. It differs from "pu te", used in this way, in that the latter usually carries with it a sense of "oughtness" or "fitness".

17. A. Yeh tai i ko yü san huo yü i, fu t'ien k'ên hsia yü.      17. Bring either an umbrella or a raincoat, in the heat it is likely to rain.

"K'ên" means willing, and so in colloquial speech tends to be used in the sense of "prone to"; "disposed to", etc.

18. B. Hsien-shêng yü liao tê hao, wo chao pan chiu shih la.      18. You exercise good forethought, I will carry out your orders (a politely humorous expression).

19. A. Wo-mên i ching p'ao la shih lai li lu, wo-mên tsai lü kuan t'ing i hui'êrh, hao pu hao.      19. We have walked about ten li, shall we stop at an inn for a while?

15. 必須 Pi-hsü. Necessary, must.
- 
17. 傘 San.<sup>3</sup> Umbrella, parasol.  
 雨傘 Yü-san. Umbrella.  
 雨衣 Yü-i. Raincoat.  
 伏天 Fu.<sup>2</sup> The dog-days, great heat.  
 伏天 Fu-t'ien. The height of summer.  
 肯 K'ên.<sup>3</sup> Willing, prone to.
18. 料 Liao.<sup>4</sup> To calculate.  
 預料 Yü-liao. Foresee, foresight.  
 照 Chao.<sup>1</sup> According to, shine, photograph.  
 照辦 Chao-pan. To act according to instructions.
19. 跑 P'ao.<sup>3</sup> To run, also to walk (long distances).  
 旅 Lü.<sup>3</sup> Travel, journey.  
 館 Kuan.<sup>1</sup> Hostel, hotel, etc.  
 旅館 Lü-kuan. Hotel, hostel.  
 停 T'ing.<sup>2</sup> To halt, stop.  
 一會兒 I-hui-rh. A while, a short time.

20. *B.* Chê t'iao lu shang      20. The inns on this stretch  
       ti lü tien pu                    of road are not very  
       tsêm-mo hao, tao                good, let's sit by the  
       pu ju tso tsai                    roadside and rest  
       lu p'ang, hsieh i                   awhile.  
       hui'êrh.

"Pu tsên-mo (tsêm-mo) hao". The "tsêm-mo" has the sense of "very", "much", although its basic meaning is "how, why, what?", etc.

21. *A.* T'ung i, wo-mên      21. Agreed, we can also  
       yeh k'o i ho i                    have a drink of water  
       k'ou shui, ch'ih                   and munch a few  
       chi k'uai ping                    biscuits.  
       kan.

"T'ung i", lit. same meaning, so agreed.

"Ping kan". Note how "kan", dry, comes *after* the noun. So in "p'u-t'ao-kan", which means raisins, lit. grapes dried.

22. *B.* Ai! lao-hsien shêng      22. Ai! you old friend (tea-  
       tao Pu Tien Ch'ih                cher), how far is it  
       hai yu chi li lu.                   to P'u Tien Ch'ih?

"Lao", old, an epithet of respect when addressed to strangers.

23. *A.* Pu yüan, hai yu wu      23. Not far, there is still  
       liu li lu.                            about five or six li.

24. *B.* Ch'ien mie'rh ti lu      24. Is the road good ahead?  
       hao tsou pu hao                     
       tsou.

25. *A.* Hao tsou, pu kuo      25. Good going, there are a  
       ts'un tzu wai                    few puddles outside  
       pie'rh yu chi ko                   the village, but that  
       ni k'êng chiu shih                is all.  
       la.

26. *B.* Ts'un tzu li pie'rh,      26. Is there a restaurant  
       yu fan kuan mei                    inside the village?  
       yu.

DIALOGUE No. 25

20. 條 T'iao.<sup>2</sup> Length, classifier of long things.  
店 Tien.<sup>4</sup> Inn.

21. 餅 Ping.<sup>3</sup> Biscuit, cake.  
餅乾 Ping-kan. Biscuits.

25. 村 Ts'un.<sup>1</sup> Village.  
坑 K'êng.<sup>1</sup> Pit-hollow.

26. 飯館 Fan-kuan. Eating-house, restaurant.

27. A. Mei yu hao ti, mai ti yeh pu kuo shih chia ch'ang pien fan. 27. Nothing very good, they sell just ordinary everyday food.

"Chia ch'ang pien fan", frequently written up on the outside wall of a wayside inn (lit. home ordinary ready food).

28. B. Fan kuan, hao chao pu hao chao ni. 28. Is the restaurant easy to find?

29. A. Hao chao, i chin ts'un mên, tsai lu tung ti chiu shih la. 29. Easy to find, as soon as you enter the village gate, it is on the east side of the road.

"I chin . . . chiu"; the "i" has the sense of "as soon as" when coupled with a verb followed by "chiu".

30. B. Lao chia, lao chia. 30. Thanks, sorry to have detained you.

"Lao chia". "Lao" means to trouble, and "chia" means chariot, which again is used as an appellation of honour. So "lao chia" means "I have troubled you Sir". It can therefore be appropriately used for the equivalent of our "Sorry to have troubled you".

31. A. Mu yu shên-mo, li tang ti. 31. That's nothing, the usual courtesy.



27. 家常便飯 Chia-ch'ang-pien-fan. Everyday food, always ready.

## DIALOGUE No. 26

## Travelling by Train

Between two friends, *A* and *B*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>A.</i> Chê ko ch'ê shih wang Peiching k'ai ti ch'ê pu shih.  | 1. Is this the train for Peking?                               |
| 2. <i>B.</i> Pu shih, ch'ê shih wang Hankou k'ai ti ch'ê.  | 2. No, it is the train for Hankow.                             |
| 3. <i>A.</i> Wang Peiching k'ai ti huo ch'ê, shih tsai na i ko yüeh t'ai ni.   | 3. On which platform is the train for Peking?                  |
| <p>"Yüeh t'ai", lit. moon terrace. I will hazard a guess that the term arose from the fact that at some station or other in the early days of railways in China the platform was of the crescent form, and so the term "moon" came to be applied to all station platforms whatever their form.</p> |  |
| 4. <i>B.</i> Shih ti san hao yüeh t'ai.  | 4. Platform No. 3.   |
| 5. <i>A.</i> Hsien-shêng yao ta na i têng ti p'iao.  | 5. Which class ticket do you want?                             |
| <p>"Ta" is used instead of "mai", to buy, for a number of things including tickets.</p>  |  |
| 6. <i>B.</i> Chê i t'ang shih k'uai ch'ê, hai shih man ch'ê ni.  | 6. Is this train express or slow?                              |
| <p>Note that "t'ang" is a classifier of trains. It also means a particular journey of a train.</p>   |  |
| 7. <i>A.</i> Shih man ch'ê, k'o shih t'ou êrh têng tou yu.   | 7. It is slow, but it has both first and second class coaches. |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 26

3. 火車      Huo-ch'ê. Train (lit. fire-cart).  
   月台      Yüeh-t'ai. Platform.
4. 號      Hao.<sup>4</sup> Number, designation.
5. 打      Ta.<sup>3</sup> To book, as a ticket.  
   票      P'iao.<sup>4</sup> Ticket, voucher.
6. 趟      T'ang.<sup>4</sup> Time, turn, track, classifier of  
             trains.

8. B. Kua ti fan (ts'an) 8. Is there a restaurant  
ch'ê mei yu. car on it?
- "Kua"—to hook on, a more descriptive expression than the neutral  
"yu"—is there?
9. A. Mei yu fan (ts'an) 9. No restaurant car, but  
ch'ê, k'o shih yu a kitchen car.  
ch'u fang.
10. B. Ch'ê shang nêng 10. What food can one buy  
mai shêm-mo fan. on the train?
11. A. Nêng mai niu ju 11. Beef-steak, egg soup,  
p'ai, chi tzu t'ang, omelette, etc.  
ch'ao chi tan têng  
têng.
- "Têng, têng"—kinds, kinds, a good equivalent of etc.
12. B. K'o i, chao chiao 12. Good, get a porter to  
fu kei wo pan carry my luggage  
tung hsi. (things).
- "K'u li", lit. bitter strength—an apt description of a coolie's life  
is sometimes used. There are several suggested derivations of the  
word, in Hindi, Tamil and Turkish languages.
13. A. Pan hsing li yu i 13. Is there a fixed price for  
ting ti chia ch'ien carrying baggage?  
ma.
14. B. Liang ko t'ung tzu 14. Two coppers a piece is  
i chien shih ting the fixed price, but  
chia, ling wai hai you will have to give  
tê kei chi ko chiu a few coppers as a  
ch'ien. pourboire.
15. A. Na mo wo - mên 15. Well, let's get aboard  
shang ch'ê pa. the train.
16. B. I lu p'ing an. 16. A peaceful journey to  
you.

"I lu"—I, one, in the sense of "the whole", a common use of  
the word.

8. 挂 Kua.<sup>1</sup> To hook up, used of connecting  
coaches.  
餐 Ts'an.<sup>1</sup> To dine, a meal.
11. 排 P'ai.<sup>2</sup> Chop, steak, row, rank.  
牛肉排 Niu-ju-p'ai. Beef-steak.  
炒 Ch'ao.<sup>3</sup> Fry, roast.  
炒雞蛋 Ch'ao-chi-tan. Scrambled eggs, omelette.
12. 脚 Chiao.<sup>3</sup> Foot, leg, used for porters.  
脚夫 Chiao-fu. Porter, coolie.  
搬 Pan.<sup>1</sup> To move, carry from one place to  
another.
13. 行李 Hsing-li. Baggage.
14. 銅 T'ung.<sup>2</sup> Copper, copper coin, with "tzu".  
酒錢 Chiu-ch'ien. Wine money, a tip.
16. 平 P'ing.<sup>2</sup> Peaceful, level, calm.  
安 An.<sup>1</sup> Peace.  
平安 P'ing-an. Peace, a Christian greeting.

17. A. T'i wo wên hou chia li pie'rh ti jên. 17. My respectful inquiries to your family.

"Wên hou" is used when sending inquiries or respects by means of another.

18. B. Huo ch'ê shih chi tien chung tao Peiching. 18. What time does the train arrive in Peking?

19. A. Na tê k'an lu shang t'ung pu t'ung. 19. That all depends on whether the line is clear.

"K'an" is look, see, etc., and so readily acquires the sense of "it depends".

20. B. Chê chi t'ien huo ch'ê hên to. 20. These days there are a good many goods-trains on the line.

"Huo" is goods, and is in the fourth tone, thus distinguishing it from "huo", fire, in the third tone, which means the ordinary train.

21. A. K'o jên yeh shih pu shao. 21. Passengers are numerous too.

"K'o" means traveller as well as guest.

22. B. K'an kuang ching, shih chü hsiang yao pien kêng. 22. It looks from the circumstances as though there is going to be a change in the situation.

"K'an" here means it looks, it seems, etc.

23. A. Pu ts'o, yün ti tui wu, yeh shih to la. 23. True, lots of troops are being transported.

17. 替  
問候 T'i.<sup>4</sup> Instead of, for.  
Wên-hou. To inquire after one's well-being.
19. 通 T'ung.<sup>1</sup> To pass through, clear, way, connection.
22. 光 Kuang.<sup>1</sup> Light.  
景 Ching.<sup>3</sup> Circumstances, prospect.  
光景 Kuang-ching. Circumstances.  
局 Chü.<sup>2</sup> Position, plan.  
時局 Shih-chü. The situation.  
像 Hsiang.<sup>4</sup> Like, image.  
變 Pien.<sup>4</sup> To change, alter.  
更 Keng.<sup>1</sup> Alter, change, more, etc.  
變更 Pien-kêng. To change.
23. 運 Yün.<sup>4</sup> To transport, move, revolve, luck.  
隊 Tui.<sup>4</sup> A company, as of soldiers.  
伍 Wu.<sup>3</sup> Rank of five, military.  
隊伍 Tui-wu. Soldiers, military.

24. B. Hsien-shêng t'ing ti shêm - mo hsiao hsi (hsin wên). 24. What news have you heard?
25. A. Mei yu shih mo k'o k'ao ti hsiao hsi, pu kuo yao yen, tao pu shao. 25. I have no reliable news, but the air is full of rumours.
26. B. P'an wang tsai pu yao ta chan; lao pai hsing shih k'u chi la. 26. I hope there is not going to be fighting again; the country folk are in bitter straits.
27. A. Chün fa, pu kuan na hsieh, chih ta suan k'uo ch'ung tzu chi ti ti p'an. 27. The militarists pay no regard to that, they are solely concerned with the enlarging of their spheres of influence.



24. 消 Hsiao.<sup>1</sup> To disperse, used with the next for news.  
 息 Hsi.<sup>2</sup> Breathe, interest, news.  
 消息 Hsiao-hsi. News, information.  
 新聞 Hsin-wen. News (lit. new hearing).
25. 靠 K'ao.<sup>4</sup> Rely, reliable, dependable, trust.  
 可靠 K'o-k'ao. Dependable, trustworthy.  
 謠 Yao.<sup>3</sup> Lies, false.  
 謠言 Yao-yen. Lies, rumours.
26. 盼 P'an.<sup>4</sup> Look for, hope.  
 盼望 Wang.<sup>4</sup> Expect, look for, look at someone.  
 盼望 P'an-wang. Hope, expect.  
 戰 Chan.<sup>4</sup> Fight, war, alarmed.  
 打戰 Ta-chan. To wage war.  
 老百姓 Lao-pai-hsing. The common people (hundred surnames).  
 極 Chi.<sup>2</sup> The extreme limit, sign of superlative.  
 苦極了 K'u-chi-la. Severe suffering, in terrible plight.
27. 軍 Chün.<sup>1</sup> Army, military, forces.  
 閱 Fa.<sup>2</sup> Rank, class.  
 軍閱 Chün-fa. The militarists, military party.  
 管 Kuan.<sup>2</sup> Control, concern, heed.  
 不管 Pu-kuan. To be unconcerned, pay no heed.  
 只 Chih.<sup>3</sup> Only, solely.  
 擴 K'uo.<sup>4</sup> Expand, extend.  
 充 Ch'ung.<sup>1</sup> To fill.  
 擴充 K'uo-ch'ung. To expand and fill, aggrandisement.  
 地盤 Ti-p'an. Sphere of influence, territory (lit. earth-plate).

28. *B.* Ai ya, ts'ai kuo ti shih T'ung Hsien, hai yu liang ko ch'ê chan, chiu tao la Peiching.      28. I say, the station we have just passed is T'ung Hsien, there are only two more stations before we arrive at Peking.

"Liang chan" is another way of expressing this.

29. *A.* Kên hsien-shêng t'an hua, shih chien pu chüeh tê kuo ti na mo k'uai.      29. The time has passed quickly. I have not noticed (the time) as we talked together.
30. *B.* Ling kuo chiao pu shao.      30. I have learned a lot from you.
31. *A.* Na êrh ti hua ni.      31. Nonsense.

28. 縣 Hsien.<sup>4</sup> District of administration, county town.  
站 Chan.<sup>4</sup> Station, post.  
車站 Ch'ê-chan. Railway station.
29. 談 T'an.<sup>2</sup> To talk, gossip.

## DIALOGUE No. 27

## Travelling by Steamer and Train

Between two friends, *A* and *B*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>A.</i> Chi tien chung k'ai ch'uan.  | 1. At what hour does the steamer start?                             |
| 2. <i>B.</i> T'ing shuo liu tien chung k'ai ch'uan.                               | 2. I hear (lit. have heard said) that it leaves at six o'clock.     |
| 3. <i>A.</i> Hsien tsai chi tien chung.   | 3. What time is it now?   |
| 4. <i>B.</i> San tien pan chung.  | 4. Half past three.   |
| 5. <i>A.</i> Na mo, shih hou hai tsao.  | 5. Then it is still early.  |
| "Shih-hou hai tsao", lit. the time is still early.                                |   |
| 6. <i>B.</i> Pu ts'o, tan shih k'ai ch'uan i ch'ien, wo yu hsieh shih ch'ing kan. | 6. Correct, but before the steamer sails I have a few things to do. |

**Note** the position of "i ch'ien", before. Like "i hou", after, it always follows the phrase which it qualifies.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. <i>A.</i> Ni ta la ch'uan p'iao mei yu.                             | 7. Have you booked your ticket for the boat?                 |
| 8. <i>B.</i> Ta la p'iao, pu kuo hsing li hai mei yu shou shih hao la. | 8. I have bought my ticket, but my baggage is not yet ready. |

**Note** "hao" in the sense of ready: "fan hao la mei yu"—is the food ready?

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 27

1. 船 Ch'uan.<sup>2</sup> Boat, ship.  
開船 K'ai-ch'uan. The starting of a steamer,  
depart.

9. A. Na mo yang, ni hsin  
li tzu jan yu i  
tie'rh chao chi.
9. In that case you are naturally a bit anxious.
- You could say "ni chao chi", but 'hsin li', in your heart, is more figurative.
10. B. Shih tê. Hsing  
k'uei yu chi ko  
p'êng yu pang  
mang
10. Just so, but fortunately I have a few friends to help.
11. A. Hao. Hsien shêng  
kan k'uai ch'ü  
pan pa. Wo pu  
tsai tan wu ni ti  
kung fu.
11. Good. Hurry up and get the job done. I will not hinder you any longer.
- "Tan wu kung fu", lit. obstruct or prevent work, so hinder or delay anyone.
12. B. Tsa mên ch'uan  
shang tsai chien.
12. Then we'll meet again on the boat.
13. A. Tsai chien.
13. Till then, good-bye.
14. B. Hsien shêng yün  
ch'uan pu yün  
ch'uan.
14. Do you suffer from seasickness?
15. A. T'ou chi t'ien, wo  
chüeh tê pu hên  
shu fu, tan shih  
ch'uan shang  
kuan la, chiu pu  
chüeh tê tsên  
yang.
15. During the first few days I feel a little bit uncomfortable, but after one has got accustomed to the boat, I don't feel it very much.
- 'Kuan la'—to be accustomed to, get used to, a very useful phrase.
16. B. Hsien shêng tao kuo  
wai kuo mo yu.
16. Have you travelled abroad?
17. A. Ying Kuo, Fa Kuo,  
Mei Ksuo, wo tou  
tao kuo.
17. I have been in England, France and America.

9. 急  
    着  
    着 急  
    Chi.<sup>2</sup> Haste, urgent.  
    Cho. Chao.<sup>2</sup> Attain to.  
    Cho-chi. To be bothered, in haste.
10. 幸  
    虧  
    幸 虧  
    Hsing.<sup>4</sup> Felicitous, fortunate.  
    K'uei.<sup>1</sup> Lucky, luckily.  
    Hsing-k'uei. Fortunately.
11. 趕 快  
    Kan-k'uai. Quickly, speedily.
14. 暈  
    暈 船  
    Yün.<sup>4</sup> Dizzy.  
    Yün-ch'uan. To be seasick, mal-de-mer.
15. 慣  
    Kuan.<sup>4</sup> To be accustomed to.
17. 法 國  
    美  
    美 國  
    Fa-kuo. France.  
    Mei.<sup>3</sup> Beautiful, admirable.  
    Mei-kuo. U.S.A., America.

18. *B.* Hsien shêng hui shuo Fa Kuo hua ma. 18. Can you speak French?
19. *A.* Hui shuo chi chü t'ung ch'ang ti hua. 19. I can speak just a few sentences on everyday affairs.
20. *B.* Fu na pie'rh ti shui t'u pu fu. 20. Did the climate over there suit you?

"Fu . . . shui t'u pu fu", lit. agree . . . water earth not agree. Does the climate agree with you?

21. *A.* Chiang chiu pa. 21. Just so-so.
22. *B.* Na pie'rh ti t'ien ch'i, tsê mo yang. 22. What is the weather like over there?
23. *A.* Hsia t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo jê, tung t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo lêng. 23. It is not so hot as in China during the Summer, and not quite so cold in the Winter.

"Pu hsiang"—not like, not as.

24. *B.* Hsien shêng yeh ch'ih tê kuan Fa Kuo fan ma. 24. And did you get used to French food?
25. *A.* Fa Kuo fan mei yu Chung Kuo fan ti tzu wei; pu kuo ch'ih shang chi t'ien, yeh chiu tui fu. 25. French food is not so tasty as Chinese, but after trying it for a few days, it is not too bad.

Note this way of expressing comparison: "mei yu . . . (ti) tzu wei", lit. has not Chinese food's flavour.

"Tui fu", without any other qualifying word, means "just satisfactory", nothing to enthuse about.

26. *B.* Ai ya, chin t'ien kua ta fêng, ch'uan shang pu ta wên tang. 26. My! what a wind is blowing to-day. It is not very steady aboard.



20. 服水土 Fu-shui-t'u. To find the climate agreeable  
(lit. agree-water-earth).
21. 將就 Chiang-chiu. Can put up with it. (See  
Note after sentence 15, Dialogue 23.)
23. 夏 Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Summer (usually followed by  
"t'ien").  
冬 Tung.<sup>1</sup> Winter (usually followed by  
"t'ien").
25. 滋 Tzu.<sup>2</sup> Rich, in sense of flavour.  
味 Wei.<sup>4</sup> Taste, flavour.  
滋味 Tzu-wei. Flavour, taste.
26. 穩 Wên.<sup>3</sup> Steady, firm, secure, stable.  
穩當 Wên-tang. Steady, firm.

27. A. Ni kan, po lang tsên      27. Look at those waves,  
       yang tì fan t'êng                what a height they  
       ch'i lai, ch'uan                are ! the boat is very  
       yao pai tê li hai.                unsteady.

28. B. Pieh p'a. Chih      28. Don't be afraid. Only  
       shêng hsia san                three more days of  
       t'ien ti hai lu,                the sea, and the boat  
       ch'uan chiu tao                will put in at the  
       la ma t'ou.                    port.

" Pieh " is short for " pu yao "—do not !

29. A. P'an wang. Yüeh      29. Let's hope so. The  
       tsao yüeh hao.                earlier the better.
30. B. Fang hsin pa.          30. Don't worry !

" Fang hsin ", lit. let go your heart, heart's case.

27. 波 Po.<sup>1</sup> Waves of the sea.  
 浪 Lang.<sup>4</sup> Waves of the sea.  
 翻 Fan.<sup>1</sup> To turn over.  
 騰 T'êng.<sup>2</sup> To rise up, mount.  
 翻騰 Fan-t'êng. To mount, as waves.  
 搖 Yao.<sup>2</sup> To roll, as a ship, shake.  
 擺 Pai.<sup>3</sup> To swing, as a ship, shake.  
 搖擺 Yao-pai. The rock and swing of a boat.
28. 碼 Ma.<sup>3</sup> Docks, jetty.  
 碼頭 Ma-t'ou. The docks, harbour.

## DIALOGUE No. 28

## Some Common Idioms

This lesson is an exercise in the use of the compound verb with "pu" in between to represent "inability" to carry out the action or function of the principal verb.

The "possibility" of doing so is represented in one of two ways, viz.:—

Sentence 1. Kan shang la. I can catch up. . . .  
                   Kan tê shang. do. do.

So with all the rest.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. T'a p'ao ti t'ai k'uai,<br>wo kan pu shang.                                       | 1. He runs too quickly, I<br>can't catch up with<br>him (kan pu shang<br>is also used of one's<br>inability to compete<br>with anybody in any<br>sphere). |
| 2. Chê ko chuan ch'iang<br>mei yu fêng 'erh, lo<br>ssu, chuan tsuan pu<br>chin ch'ü. | 2. This brick wall has no<br>cracks, I can't get a<br>screw in.   |
| 3. Chê ko shui hu i ching<br>ch'êng man, tsai yeh<br>chuang pu chin la.              | 3. This water jug is al-<br>ready full of water,<br>I can't pour any<br>more in.  |
| 4. Wo ti shih ch'ing t'ai<br>to, pan pu tao la<br>(mang pu kuo lai).                 | 4. I have too many things<br>to do, I can't manage<br>them.   |
| 5. Ni yao chi tê su yü<br>shuo ti hao, mang  | 5. You should remember<br>the proverb which   |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 28

2. 磚 Chuan.<sup>1</sup> Brick.  
 縫 Fêng.<sup>2</sup> A crack, split.  
 螺 Le, lo.<sup>2</sup> A screw.  
 螺絲釘 Lo-ssu-ting. A screw.  
 轉 Chuan.<sup>3</sup> Revolve, to turn.  
 鑽 Tsuan.<sup>1</sup> To bore, awl, gimlet.  
 3. 壺 Hu.<sup>2</sup> Pot, kettle.  
 盛 Ch'êng.<sup>2</sup> To contain. Used with "man",  
 full, to fill.
5. 俗 Su.<sup>2</sup> Common, vulgar.  
 俗語 Su-yü. Proverb, common saying.

- chê pu hui, hui chê  
pu mang. well says, "The busy man is unable, the able man is never busy."
6. Chê ko t'ungtzu chuang ti t'ai chin, wo na pu ch'u lai. 6. This bucket is too tightly packed, I can't pull anything out.
7. Chin t'ien wo tai ti tung-hsi t'ai to, mai pu ch'u ch'ü. 7. I have brought too many things to-day, I can't sell them all.
8. Chê i k'uai mu t'ou t'ai ying, ting tzu yeh ta pu chin ch'ü. 8. This piece of wood is too hard, I can't knock a nail in.
9. Hsin li mien ti i ssu to, k'o shih shuo pu ch'u lai. 9. I have many ideas tucked away in my mind (lit. heart), but I can't express them.
10. Chung-kuo jên yu chü su hua shuo, Ch'a hu chu chi tan tao pu ch'u lai, chiu shih chê ko i ssu. 10. The Chinese have a common saying, "If you boil an egg in a teapot, you can't pour it out", which expresses this idea.

**PROVERBS.**

Here, in sentence 10, we have an instance of the use of the proverb. Others are scattered through the dialogues, and a number of them have been collated in Dialogue 38. The Chinese love to use proverbs; their everyday speech is full of them. Proverbs represent the concentrated wisdom of the ages, and form a most fascinating and fruitful study of Chinese philosophy.

11. Wo ti êrh to lung la, t'a shuo hua, wo t'ing pu ch'u lai. 11. I am a little deaf, I can't hear what he says.

8. 硬            Ying.<sup>4</sup> Hard.
10.            Tao.<sup>3</sup> Pour, pour out.
11. 耳            Erh.<sup>3</sup> Ear.  
    朵            To.<sup>3</sup> Ear, pendant, classifier of pendent  
                 things.  
    耳朵          Erh-to. Ear.  
    雙            Lung.<sup>2</sup> Deaf, to be deaf.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 12. T'a ti yen ching hsia liao, t'a shên-mo yeh k'an pu chien.                         | 12. He is blind, he cannot see anything.   |
| 13. T'a shih chin shih yen, k'an pu ta ch'ing ch'u.                                    | 13. He is short-sighted, he cannot see clearly.  |
| 14. T'a shih ko ya pa, hua yeh pu hui shuo, jên chia shuo hua, t'a yeh t'ing pu chien. | 14. He is a deaf mute, he cannot speak himself, and when others speak he cannot hear them. |
| 15. Yao shih hsia liao yen, shên-mo yeh k'an pu chien.                                 | 15. If a man is blind he cannot see anything at all.                                       |
| 16. T'a ti ko pei fa ma, ni mo t'a, t'a yeh pu chüeh tê.                               | 16. His arm is benumbed, if you touch him he can't feel it.                                |
| 17. T'a shih la chih chüeh.  | 17. He lost consciousness.   |
| 18. Chê i chien i shang t'ai tsang, wo hsi pu kan ching.                               | 18. This garment is too filthy, I can't wash it clean.                                     |
| 19. To shih i tzu, ta ta ti shih chin, chiu k'o i hsi kan ching la.                    | 19. Use more soap, and exert more strength, then it can be washed clean.                   |



12. 眼  
    睛  
    瞎      Yen.<sup>3</sup> Eye.  
            Ching.<sup>1</sup> Eye, iris, pupil.  
            Hsia.<sup>1</sup> Blind.
14. 啞  
    吧  
    啞吧    Ya.<sup>3</sup> Dumb.  
            Pa.<sup>1</sup> Dumb.  
            Ya-pa. Deaf mute.
16. 胳  
    臂  
    麻      Ko.<sup>1</sup> Arm.  
            Pei.<sup>4</sup> Arm.  
            Ma.<sup>2</sup> Numb.
17. 失  
    失覺    Shih.<sup>1</sup> To lose.  
            Shih-chüeh. To become unconscious.
19. 快  
    勁      I.<sup>2</sup> Soap.  
            Chin, ching.<sup>4</sup> Strength.

## DIALOGUE No. 29

## Clothing and Personal Matters

Between two students, *A* and *B*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>A.</i> T'ien lêng, wo-mên<br>ch'uan mien p'ao<br>huo wai t'ao.           | 1. In the cold weather, we<br>wear our cotton wool<br>gown or an overcoat. |
| 2. <i>B.</i> Ni mên pu ch'uan<br>p'i ngao ma.                                  | 2. Don't you wear your<br>fur gown?  |
| 3. <i>A.</i> P'i ngao tao ch'uan<br>pu ch'i.                                   | 3. We can't afford to wear<br>furs.  |
| "Ch'uan pu ch'i"—cannot afford to wear, lit. wear not rise (to).               |  |
| 4. <i>B.</i> Nien ch'ing ti jên,<br>hsi huan yang<br>chuang.                   | 4. The younger generation<br>prefer foreign style.                         |
| "Nien ch'ing ti jên" or "Ch'ing nien jên".                                     |  |
| 5. <i>A.</i> Na shih tzu jan ti.   | 5. That is natural.  |
| 6. <i>B.</i> Hsia t'ien to ch'uan<br>sha pu, ch'ou tzu.                        | 6. In the summer most<br>people wear gauze or<br>single silk gowns.        |
| 7. <i>A.</i> Tung t'ien ch'uan<br>p'i hsieh, hsia<br>t'ien ch'uan pu<br>hsieh. | 7. In the winter we wear<br>leather shoes, in the<br>summer cloth shoes.   |
| 8. <i>B.</i> Tai ti shih ts'ao<br>mao, huo chô<br>yang mao.                    | 8. We wear straw hats or<br>a sun helmet.                                  |
| "Tai", to wear, is used for anything worn on the head.                         |  |
| 9. <i>A.</i> Nü jên ti i shang<br>mo têng i tie'rh<br>ts'ai hao.               | 9. The womenfolk like<br>modern clothes.                                   |

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 29

1. 烟 Mien.<sup>2</sup> Cotton, cotton wool.  
 袍 P'ao.<sup>2</sup> Long gown.  
 套 T'ao.<sup>4</sup> Cover, overcoat, wrapper.  
 外套 Wai-t'ao. Overcoat.
2. 襖 Ao. Ngao.<sup>3</sup> Outer gown, lined coat.  
 皮襖 P'i-ao. Leather or fur coat.
4. 年輕 Nien-ch'ing. Young, youthful.  
 裝 Chuang.<sup>1</sup> Style, appearance, feign, attire.
8. 戴 Tai.<sup>4</sup> To wear or carry on the head.  
 遮 Chê.<sup>1</sup> To cover, screen.  
 遮陽帽 Chê-yang-mao. Sun helmet.
9. 摩登 Mo-têng. Modern (transliteration).

10. *B.* Hsiu tzu, kua tzu, tu shih tuan ti. 10. Sleeves and gown are both short.
11. *A.* Wa tzu, hsien tsai shih hên ch'ang. 11. Stockings are very long now.
12. *B.* Hsüeh shêng yu ch'uan hsi chuang ti shih hao. 12. Students have a personal liking for western garb.
13. *A.* Li fa, yeh shih yang chuang ti to. 13. Haircutting is also foreign style for the most part.
14. *B.* Pien tzu shih lao pu chien liao. 14. The queue is scarcely ever seen.  
 "Lao pu chien"—seldom or rarely seen. "Ch'ing i pu chien" is also used.
15. *A.* Shu i shu t'ou fa. 15. Comb your hair.
16. *B.* Shua i shua t'ou fa ho ya ch'ih. 16. Brush your hair and teeth.
17. *A.* I fu yao ch'i chêng, kua tzu yao k'ou hao. 17. Keep your clothing tidy, and your coat buttoned.
18. *B.* Chih chia yao hsiu chêng; shou, lien, yao pao ch'ih kan ching. 18. Your finger nails must be kept in good order, and one's hands and faces should be kept clean.
19. *B.* Ch'u mên, yao tai hsi lien p'ên, ts'a lien pu, ho shou chüan, yeh pu yao wang la tai ya shua. 19. When you travel you should take with you a washing basin, a face cloth and towel, and don't forget your toothbrush.

11. 襪 Wa<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Stockings, socks.
12. 嗜 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Fond of, addicted to.  
 好 Hao.<sup>4</sup> Like, fond of.  
 嗜好 Shih-hao. A liking for, addicted to.
13. 理 Li.<sup>3</sup> To arrange, dress.  
 髮 Fa.<sup>3</sup> The hair of the head.  
 理髮 Li-fa. Haircut.
14. 辮 Pien<sup>4</sup> (tzu). The queue, plait.  
 老不見 Lao-pu-chien. Rare, scarcely seen (lit. long time not see).
15. 梳 Shu. Su<sup>1</sup> (tzu). Comb, to comb  
 頭髮 T'ou-fa. Hair of the head.
16. 刷 Shua<sup>1</sup> (tzu). To brush, a brush.  
 牙 Ya.<sup>2</sup> Teeth.  
 齒 Ch'ih.<sup>3</sup> Teeth.
17. 扣 K'ou<sup>4</sup> (tzu). To button, button.
18. 指 Chih.<sup>3</sup> The fingers, toes, to point.  
 甲 Chia.<sup>3</sup> Nails of fingers or toes, sheath.  
 指甲 Chih-chia. Finger or toe nails.  
 保持 Pao.<sup>3</sup> To guard, protect, preserve.  
 持 Ch'ih.<sup>2</sup> To preserve, hold, grasp.  
 保持 Pao-ch'ih. Keep, preserve.
19. 出門 Ch'u-mên. To travel (lit. go out of the door).  
 盆 P'ên.<sup>2</sup> A basin, bowl, bath.  
 洗臉盆 Hsi-lien-p'ên. A washhand basin.  
 絹 Chüan.<sup>4</sup> Napkin, handkerchief, towel.

20. A. Tsao ch'i, tsao shui, mei t'ien yün tung, shih pao ch'ih k'ang chien ti hao fang fa. 20. Early to rise and early to bed, with exercise every day, is an excellent rule of health.

21. B. Pa tzu chi so hsüeh ti chiao kei pieh jên, yeh shih chang chih shih ti fa tzu. 21. Teach others what you yourself learn, is also a method of extending one's knowledge.

"So hsüeh ti", an illustration of "so" as a relative pronoun; that which one has learned.

"Pieh jên"—others. You will also hear "t'a (often read t'o) jên" for thus.

22. A. Ni p'êng chien ch'ung k'u jên yao t'i hsü t'a mên. 22. When you meet with the poor you should sympathise with them.

23. B. Jên mei yu fan ch'ih kai chou chi t'a mên. 23. When they have no food, then relieve them.

24. A. Yao fan ti wei pi jan shih ch'ung. 24. Beggars are not of necessity poor.

"Wei pi jan"—not necessarily, a little bookish, but often used. The common colloquial form is "pu pi".

25. B. Hai tzu mên yao chiao hsün t'a mên shou kuei chü. 25. Teach children to be polite.

"Shou kuei chü", lit. observe the rules (of conduct). "Kuei" is a pair of compasses, and "chü" the carpenter's square, and so you get the idea of things that are clearly defined, such as rules, regulations, etc.

20. 運動 Yün-tung. Exercise, of physical character, movement, a movement.  
 康 K'ang.<sup>1</sup> Well, hale, hearty, peace.  
 健 Chien.<sup>4</sup> Sturdy, strong.  
 康健 K'ang-chien. Healthy, strong, well.  
 方法 Fang-fa. Method, way of doing things.
21. 知識 Chih-shih. Knowledge.
22. 窮 Ch'ung.<sup>2</sup> Poor, poverty-stricken.  
 窮苦 Ch'ung-k'u. Very poor, pitiable.  
 體 T'i.<sup>3</sup> Sympathise, respect, limbs, body.  
 恤 Hsü.<sup>4, 5</sup> Pity, sympathise.
23. 開 Chou.<sup>1</sup> To be charitable, help, assist.  
 濟 Chi.<sup>4</sup> To save, help, deliver.
24. 未 Wei.<sup>4</sup> Not yet.  
 未必然 Wei-pi-jan. Not necessarily (lit. not-yet-must-be).
25. 訓 Hsün.<sup>4</sup> To teach, instruct.  
 教訓 Chiao-hsün. Instruction, to teach.  
 守 Shou.<sup>3</sup> To keep, observe.  
 規 Kuei.<sup>1</sup> Rule, custom, manners.  
 矩 Chü.<sup>3</sup> Rule, used with preceding for customs, manners, etc.

## DIALOGUE No. 30

## Learning Chinese: the Tones, Dialects, Writing, etc.

## THE TONES.

Tones refer to the pitch or inflection of the voice when speaking in Chinese. The number of tones in Chinese varies from four in the Pekinese dialect to as many as twelve in some of the Cantonese dialects. The student is referred to the chapter on Tones for the main points arising out of a discussion on this subject.

Foreigner, *F.*      Chinese, *C.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>F.</i> Chung Kuo hua nan<br>hsüeh pu nan<br>hsüeh ni.                               | 1. Is Chinese difficult to<br>learn?  |
| 2. <i>C.</i> Hsieh tzu pu nan,<br>shuo hua pu<br>yung i.                                  | 2. The writing is not diffi-<br>cult, but spoken<br>language is not easy.                                       |
| 3. <i>F.</i> Shuo hua tsên yang<br>pu yung i, nan<br>ch'u tsai na'rh<br>ni.               | 3. Why is it not easy to<br>speak, just where<br>does the difficulty<br>lie?                                    |
| 4. <i>C.</i> Wai kuo jên shuo<br>Chung Kuo hua,<br>nan ch'u tsai ssu<br>shêng ti to.      | 4. For the most part<br>foreigners speaking<br>Chinese experience<br>difficulty in regard<br>to the four tones. |
| 5. <i>F.</i> Chê ssu shêng shih<br>shih mo. <i>or</i><br>Shih mo chiao tso<br>ssu shêng.  | 5. What are the <b>four</b><br>tones?   |
| 6. <i>C.</i> Ti i chiao shang<br>p'ing, huo yin<br>p'ing; ti êrh chiao<br>hsia p'ing, huo | 6. The first is called the<br>"upper-even" tone;<br>the second the<br>"lower-even" tone,                        |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 30

4. 聲 Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Tone, voice, repute.

6. 賞 Shàng.<sup>3</sup> Name of second tone, reward,  
bestow.

yang p'ing; ti  
san chiao shang  
shêng; ti ssu  
chiao ch'ü shêng.

the third the "ris-  
ing" tone; and the  
fourth the "reced-  
ing" tone.

7. *F.* Wo t'ing shuo, shuo  
Chung Kuo hua  
yu wu shêng, tui  
pu tui.

7. I have heard that there  
are five tones in  
Chinese, is that cor-  
rect?

8. *C.* Yeh pu néng shuo  
pu tui, yin wei  
yu ti ti fang, t'a  
mên chia shang i  
ko ju shêng.

8. I can't say that that is  
wrong, for in some  
places they add an  
"entering" tone.

"Yu ti ti fang"—some places.  
12 below.)

"Yu ti"—there are some. (See

9. *F.* Hsüeh Chung Kuo  
hua, yung shih  
mo fa tzu hao ni.

9. What method of learn-  
ing Chinese can you  
recommend? (lit.  
"use what method  
is a good one?")

10. *C.* Ch'ing i wei Chung  
Kuo jên tang  
hsien shêng, ni i  
chü i chü ti kên  
cho t'a nien.

10. Invite a Chinese to act  
as your teacher, and  
read after him sen-  
tence by sentence.

Note "tang"—to act as, to be.

"I chü i chü ti"—sentence by sentence, a very common idiom.

11. *F.* Wo kên cho t'a nien  
ti shih hou, chin  
hsin ti hsiao fa  
t'a ti k'ou yin,  
tui pu tui.

11. And I suppose you  
would recommend  
me to do my utmost  
to copy his pronun-  
ciation as I follow  
him in the reading?



12. C. Tui la. Pu kuo shih  
 yu ti jên shuo  
 kuo yü, yeh yu  
 pu shao ti jên  
 shuo t'u hua.
12. Yes that is right. But  
 some speak the  
 National language,  
 while there are a  
 good many others  
 who speak local dia-  
 lects.

"Kuo yü", the National language, used on the radio, and now rapidly becoming current throughout China, and destined gradually to eliminate the confusion of dialects, which are numerous.

"T'u hua", the patois, or local dialect of the common people.

13. F. Wai kuo jên hai  
 shih hsüeh kuo  
 yü hao, shih pu  
 shih.
13. I suppose it is better for  
 foreigners to learn  
 the National lang-  
 uage, isn't it?
14. C. Pu ts'ò. Hsien tsai  
 ko ch'u tou t'ung  
 hsing kuo yü.
14. Yes, the National lang-  
 uage is now current  
 everywhere.

"Ko ch'u t'ung hsing"—current everywhere, lit. every place through goes.

15. F. Ling chiao hsien  
 shêng, hsieh  
 Chung Kuo tzu,  
 shih yung na  
 yang ti pi hao.
15. May I ask what is  
 the best kind of pen  
 to use for writing  
 Chinese characters?
16. C. Hsieh Chung Kuo  
 tzu, hai shih yung  
 mao pi ti hao.
16. It is best to use the hair  
 brush for writing  
 Chinese.
17. F. Yung kang pi hsing  
 pu hsing.
17. Will a steel pen do?
18. C. Hsing shih hsing,  
 pu kuo mei yu  
 mao pi hao.
18. Yes, but it is not so  
 good as a hair brush.

"Hsing shih hsing", another instance of "qualifying" influence on the verb by duplication of it, lit. doing will do, but.

12. 語 Yü.<sup>3</sup> Words.  
國語 Kuo-yü. The Chinese national language.  
土話 T'u-hua. Dialects (lit. earth-words).

14. 各處通行 Ko-ch'u-t'ung-hsing. Everywhere current,  
universal.

19. *F.* **Wo k'an chien kuo** .19. I have seen some people  
     "yu jên yung ch'ien                      using pencils (for  
     pi.    this purpose).

"Yu jên"—some, short for "yu ti jen". (See 8 and 12 above.)

20. *C.* **Yu ti shih, pu** 20. That is possible. But  
     kuo wo hai shih                      I must still exhort  
     ch'üan ni, ts'ung                      you to use the brush  
     ch'i t'ou yao                          from the start.  
     yung mao pi.

"Yu ti shih", yet another illustration of "yu ti", meaning some, lit. there are some (instances of this) affair, sort of thing.

21. *F.* **Ling chiao, ling** 21. Thanks for your ad-  
     chiao.                                      vice.

"Ling chiao", another way of expressing thanks, lit. I have received instruction (from you).

20. 勸  
起頭 Ch'üan.<sup>4</sup> Exhort, encourage.  
Ch'i-t'ou. The beginning, start.

## DIALOGUE No. 31

## Asking a Favour. Time Idioms

Two friends, *A* and *B*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>A.</i> Wo ch'ing hsien<br>shêng fei hsin,<br>t'i wo tso i chien<br>shih.                          | 1. I shall be very grateful<br>if you will do some-<br>thing for me.            |
| 2. <i>B.</i> Pu k'o ch'i. Ni yao<br>wo t'i ni tso shih<br>mo.   | 2. Don't stand on cere-<br>mony. What do you<br>want me to do for<br>you?       |
| 3. <i>A.</i> Wo hsiang lai, mei<br>yu hsiang hsien<br>shêng ch'iu kuo<br>shih mo.                       | 3. Hitherto I have no<br>asked you for any<br>favours.                          |
| : "Hsiang . . . ch'iu"—ask of . . . lit. appeal towards . . .<br>"Hsiang" has the meaning of "towards". |   |
| 4. <i>B.</i> Hsien tsai, ni chiu<br>ching yao shih<br>mo.   | 4. What really do you<br>want me to do now?                                     |
| 5. <i>A.</i> P'an wang Chiang<br>lai hsien shêng t'i<br>pa wo ti êrh tzu.                               | 5. I hope that you will<br>take a personal in-<br>terest in my son's<br>future. |
| 6. <i>B.</i> T'a hsien tsai tso<br>shih mo shih.  | 6. What does he do now?   |
| 7. <i>A.</i> Ts'ung ch'ien t'a<br>tsai pan kung<br>shih, tang shu<br>chi.                               | 7. He was a clerk in the<br>office formerly.                                    |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 31

3. 向來 Hsiang-lai. Hitherto, up to now.
4. 究 Chiu.<sup>4</sup> Finally, after all, but, etc.  
   竟 Ching.<sup>4</sup> Really, finally.  
   究竟 Chiu-ching. Really, at bottom.
5. 將來 Chiang-lai. In the future.  
   提 T'i.<sup>2</sup> Mention, raise a matter.  
   拔 Pa.<sup>2</sup> Raise, help up.  
   提拔 T'i-pa. Help along, promote, raise.  
   兒子 Erh-tzu. Son.
7. 從前 Ts'ung-ch'ien. Formerly.  
   室 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Room, house, office, bureau.  
   辦公室 Pan-kung-shih. Office, bureau (lit. transact  
     public (affairs) room).  
   書記 Shu-chi. Secretarial assistant, clerk.

8. *B.* Wei shih mo t'a  
yao ling wai chao  
kung tso.
8. Why is he wanting to  
find another job?
9. *A.* Ch'i ch'u ti shih  
hou, t'a men tui  
t'a hên hao, i hou  
chiu chien chien  
ti lêng tan ch'i  
lai la.
9. They treated him very  
well at first, but  
gradually cooled off  
(in their attitude to-  
wards him).
10. *B.* T'a mên tui tai t'a  
ti t'ai tu, kai  
pien, pi ting yu  
i ko yüan ku.
10. But there must be some  
reason for their  
change of attitude  
towards him.
11. *A.* T'a mên i ch'ien tai  
t'a hou, i hou tai  
t'a po, mei yu  
shih mo tao li.
11. (Yet) there is no sense  
in their treating him  
so well before and so  
meanly afterwards.
12. *B.* Yeh hsü t'a mên  
ching chi shang,  
yu k'un nan pa.
12. Perhaps they are in  
financial difficulties.
- “Ching chi shang”—in the matter of economics. In Chinese the tendency is to use “shang”, which literally means “on”, in expressions of this kind. We should say “in”.
13. *A.* Hsien shêng shuo ti  
tui. So i t'a mên  
chien shao la t'a  
ti hsin shui.
13. That is just it (lit. what  
you say is correct).  
And so they have  
reduced his salary.
- “Hsin-shui”—salary, lit. firewood and water, the “fee” formerly paid by pupils to their Chinese teacher, an honorarium.
14. *B.* T'a mên hai mei yu  
ta fa t'a tsou pa.
14. I suppose they haven't  
dismissed him yet?

8. 工作 Kung-tso. Work, task, labour.
9. 對 Tui.<sup>4</sup> Treat, behave towards.  
 漸 Chien.<sup>4</sup> Gradually.  
 漸漸的 Chien-chien-ti. Gradually.  
 冷淡 Lêng-tan. Coolly, uninterested (cold-weak).
10. 待 Tai.<sup>4</sup> To treat; to behave.  
 態 T'ai.<sup>4</sup> Behaviour, bearing, attitude.  
 態度 T'ai-tu. Attitude.  
 改變 Kai-pien. To change, alter.  
 必定 Pi-ting. Must, of necessity.  
 緣 Yüan. Cause, reason.  
 故 Ku.<sup>4</sup> Cause, reason.
11. 厚 Hou.<sup>4</sup> Generous, thick.  
 薄 Po. Pao.<sup>2</sup> Mean, stingy, thin.
12. 經濟 Ching-chi. Economics, financial circumstances.  
 困 K'un.<sup>4</sup> Straitened, distressed.  
 困難 K'un-nan. Special difficulties, straits.
13. 減 Chien.<sup>3</sup> To reduce, diminish.  
 薪 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> Fuel, firewood, used with the next.  
 薪水 Hsin-shui. Salary. See note.

15. A. Tao hsien tsai hai mei yu. K'ung p'a pu chiu, t'a mèn chiu i ting pu yao t'a liao. 15. Not up to the present. But my fear is that before long they will certainly dispense with his services.

"Tao hsien tsai"—up to now, lit. arrive present. "Hsien tsai" is present, of time.

16. B. Chi jan ju tz'u, wo yeh pu nêng pu pang mang. 16. In these circumstances I cannot do other than offer to help.

"Ju tz'u"—like this.

"Pu nêng pu . . .", an illustration of the common use of the double negative to impart strong positive emphasis.

17. A. Ch'ien wan, ch'ing hsien shêng fei hsin. 17. I entreat you by all means to exert yourself (on our behalf).

"Ch'ien wan"—see Vocabulary.

18. B. Mei yu shih mo. Chê shih li so tang jan ti. 18. It is nothing. Quite a natural obligation.

"Li so tang jan ti", an ornate way of saying "li tang"—what one ought to do.

19. A. T'a yao shih Chiang lai, chao tao i ko hao shih ch'ing, chên shih t'ò hsien shêng ti fu. 19. If he (the son) gets a good post later on, we shall be truly obliged to you.

"T'ò . . . fu", a polite and circumlocutory phrase for thanks, lit. I am indebted to your favour for . . .

20. B. Na'rh ti hua. Man man tsou. 20. No no, not at all. Take care (lit. go slowly).

15. 不久      Pu-chiu. Before long, soon (not-long-time).  
    不要      Pu-yao. Dismiss (not-want).
16. 既          Chi (jan). Since, seeing that.
17. 千萬      Ch'ien-wan. By all means (lit. thousand-  
                  ten-thousand).

## DIALOGUE No. 32

Between Chinese Official (*O*) and an English visitor (*E*) on local education, crops, public health, etc.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>E.</i> Hsien shêng hui<br>shuo Ying kuo<br>hua ma.   | 1. Can you speak English?   |
| 2. <i>O.</i> Hui i liang chü, t'ai<br>pu kou yung.<br>Hsien shêng hui<br>chiang Chung kuo<br>hua ma. | 2. Just a few words, totally inadequate. Can you speak (intelligibly) in Chinese? |

"I liang chü"—a few words, lit. one or two sentences. "I pan chü", a sentence and a half, is also used.

"Ta pu kou yung", or "t'ai pu kou yung", a good instance of what is called "grammar by position". The "ta" or "t'ai", being where it is in the sentence, has the meaning of "extremely". If the sentence were "pu ta kou yung", the "ta" would not have such emphatic significance. The latter sentence means "not quite enough for use", which is very different from "entirely inadequate".

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. <i>E.</i> Wo chêng tsai hsüeh<br>ni, hai pu ta hui. | 3. I am just learning, and can speak little as yet. |
|--|---|

"Chêng tsai hsüeh ni"—I am studying it, with the sense of not having got very far, only just beginning, etc. The "ni" is practically equivalent to a full stop.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. <i>O.</i> Hsien shêng hên<br>chih tao pi kuo ti<br>fêng su. | 4. You understand (are well acquainted with) our manners and customs. |
|--|---|

"Fêng su", or "fêng t'u jên ch'ing"—local ("t'u") manners and feelings ("jên ch'ing"). It is important to "make allowances" in China for circumstances. That is what "jên ch'ing" implies. The Chinese, according to their Confucian ethical philosophy, never administer justice nor pronounce judgment strictly according to written law. They always consider a man's circumstances.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 32

3 正在 Chêng-tsai. In process of doing something.

4 風俗 Fêng-su. Customs of the people.

5. *E.* Chih tao ti yu hsien,  
wo lai ling chiao,  
ling chiao.
6. *O.* Hsien shêng t'ai  
ch'ien hsü, t'ai  
k'o ch'i.
7. *E.* Wo lai ta t'ing kuei  
hsien jên min ti  
ch'ing hsing.  
"Ta t'ing"—to inquire.
8. *O.* Hên hao. Hsien  
shêng hsiang chih  
tao na i fang mien  
ti shih ch'ing.
9. *E.* Hsien t'an chiao yü  
i fang mien.
10. *O.* Mei ko ts'un tzu yu  
ch'u têng hsiao  
hsüeh, ta i tien ti  
chên tzu yu kao  
têng hsiao hsüeh.  
Hsien li yu chung  
hsüeh.  
"Mei ko", or "mei i ko"—each.
11. *E.* Hsüeh hsiao li, yeh  
shou nü shêng  
ma.
12. *O.* Pu ts'ò. Ko hsüeh  
hsiao, tou shih  
nan nü tsai k'uai  
êrh, shang hsüeh.  
"Ko hsüeh hsiao"—every school.
5. In a limited way. I  
have come to learn  
from you.
6. You are too humble-  
minded, too court-  
eous altogether.
7. I have come to inquire  
about the people in  
your district.
8. Very good. On what  
particular aspect of  
their life would you  
like information?
9. Let us begin by dis-  
cussing education.
10. In each village there  
is a lower primary  
school, and in each  
of the bigger mar-  
ket towns there is  
a higher primary.  
In the county town  
there is a middle  
school.
11. Are girls received in the  
schools?
12. Yes, every school is  
co-educational (lit.  
male and female  
students study to-  
gether).



5. 限           Hsien.<sup>4</sup> Limit, boundary, to fix.
6. 謙           Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> Humble, modest.  
     謙虛       Ch'ien-hsü. Modest, unassuming.
9. 育           Yü.<sup>4</sup> Rear, nurture.  
     教育       Chiao-yü. Education.  
     方面       Fang-mien. Aspect of a subject, side,  
                 aspect.
10. 初           Ch'u.<sup>1</sup> The beginning, primary.  
     初等       Ch'u-têng. Primary grade.  
     鎮          Chên<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Market town, mart, to guard,  
                 repress.  
     高等       Kao-têng. Higher grade, higher primary.  
     中學       Chung-hsüeh. Middle school.
11. 生           Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Raw, unfamiliar, used for students.

13. *E.* Lao pai hsing tou shih tzu ma. 13. What about the older folk, are they literate?
14. *O.* Shih tzu ti pu to. Chin nien yao t'i ch'ang i ko shih tzu yün tung. 14. Very few are literate. We are promoting a literacy campaign this year.
- "Yün tung"—a movement of any kind, campaign.
15. *E.* Chiao shih, shih tsai na'rh pi yeh ti. 15. And your teachers, where have they graduated?
16. *O.* Chiao shih, shih pên shêng shih fan hsüeh hsiao pi yeh ti to. 16. Most of the teachers are graduates of the provincial training college.
- Note the use of "pên" for "this", "our", "native", etc.
17. *E.* Yeh yu nü chiao shih ma. 17. And do you use women teachers?
18. *O.* Yu shih yu, pu kuo pu to. 18. Yes, but not many.
19. *E.* Chin nien chuang chia tsêm-mo yang. 19. How are the crops this year?
20. *O.* Chin nien nien t'ou hên fêng shêng, pai hsing tou hên p'ing ching. 20. The harvest is excellent this year, and the people generally are contented (lit. quiet, calm).
21. *E.* Chê pie'rh chung ti shih shih mo chuang chia to. 21. What kind of crops are grown here mostly.

13. 識字 Shih-tzu. Literate, literacy (know-characters).
14. 倡 Ch'ang.<sup>4</sup> To lead.  
提倡 T'i-ch'ang. To promote, lead, take the initiative.
15. 教師 Chiao-shih. Teacher.  
畢業 Pi.<sup>4</sup> Finish, end.  
業 Yeh.<sup>4</sup> Course, occupation, profession.  
畢業 Pi-yeh. Graduate from a course, school, college.
16. 範 Fan.<sup>4</sup> Model, pattern.  
師範學校 Shih - fan - hsüeh - hsiao. Normal training school.
19. 莊 Chuang.<sup>1</sup> A farm, farmstead, the fields.  
稼 Chia.<sup>4</sup> Grain, crops, to sow.  
莊稼 Chuang-chia. Crops, growing grain.
20. 年頭 Nien-t'ou. Harvest (year-head).  
豐 Fêng.<sup>1</sup> Luxuriant, flourishing, abundant.  
盛 Shêng.<sup>4</sup> Abundant, flourishing.  
靜 Ching.<sup>4</sup> Placid, calm.  
平靜 P'ing-ching. Quiet, undisturbed.

22. *O.* Mai tzu to. Pu kuo yeh yu hsiao mi, yu mai, mien hua, han yen.      22. Wheat in the main. But millet, oats, cotton and tobacco are also found.

23. *E.* Na mo, pai hsing na liang, pu fei shih.      23. In that case you have no difficulty in getting the people to pay their taxes?

"Pu fei shih"—not difficult, lit. not expend activity.

"Liang" originally means "grain", but as taxes were usually paid in grain the word came to have the meaning of taxes.

24. *O.* Yeh hên nan shuo, pu kuo pi pieh ti hsien fên ch'iang.      24. I can hardly say that. But (in that respect) we are better off than other districts.
25. *E.* Kuei ch'u jên min, yeh hên chiang chiu wei shêng ma.      25. And are the people of your area interested in public health?

"Chiang chiu" here means "to be particular about". (See Dial. 27, sen. 21.)

26. *O.* Pu ta chiang chiu, ch'ang ch'ang fa shêng shih chêng.      26. They are not very particular. We have frequent outbreaks of (infectious) diseases.
27. *E.* Chê pie'rh yu t'u fei mei yu.      27. Are there any bandits about here?
28. *O.* Mei yu. Chê pie'rh ti ching ch'a, ho      28. No. The police and military officials loy-

22. 麥 **Mai. Mo<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Wheat.**  
 油麥 **Yu-mai. Oats.**  
 米 **Mi.<sup>3</sup> Millet, the grains in general.**  
 小米 **Hsiao-mi. Millet.**  
 棉花 **Mien.<sup>4</sup> Flour, wheaten-flour, vermicelli.**  
 花 **Hua.<sup>1</sup> Flower.**  
 棉花 **Mien-hua. Cotton, in growth, or raw.**  
 旱 **Han.<sup>4</sup> Dry, used with the next.**  
 旱烟 **Han-yen. Tobacco.**
23. 納 **Na.<sup>4</sup> To pay, take, receive, used with the next.**  
 糧 **Liang.<sup>2</sup> Taxes, rations, grains.**  
 納糧 **Na-liang. To pay taxes.**
24. 縣分 **Hsien-fên. Administrative division, county.**
27. 匪 **Fei.<sup>3</sup> Worthless, wrong, bandits, rebels.**  
 土匪 **T'u-fei. Local banditti.**
28. 警察 **Ching.<sup>1</sup> Alarm, startle, watch.**  
 察 **Ch'a.<sup>2</sup> To examine, investigate.**

chün kuan tou  
chin chih.

ally discharge the  
duties of their office  
here.

29. E. Wo hsiang kuei  
hsien pu k'uei  
shih mu fan  
hsien.

29. I consider you need  
not be diffident to  
regard your district  
as a model.

30. O. Kuo chiang, kuo  
chiang.

30. Flattery! flattery!

"Kuo chiang", lit. over-praise.

28. 警察 Ching-ch'a. The police.  
    盡 Chin.<sup>4</sup> To fulfil, exhaust possibilities.  
    職 Chih.<sup>2</sup> Public office, appointment.  
    盡職 Chin-chih. To fulfil the duties of one's  
        office.
29. 愧 K'uei.<sup>4</sup> Be diffident about.  
    模 Mu. Mo.<sup>2</sup> Model, pattern.  
    模範 Mu-fan. Model, pattern.

## DIALOGUE No. 33

## Doctor and Patient

Doctor, *D.*      Patient, *P.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>P.</i> Ni yao shih yüan i,<br>chiu k'o i i chih<br>wo ti ping.    | 1. If you were willing to<br>heal me, (I feel that)<br>you <i>could</i> do so. |
| 2. <i>D.</i> Sui jan wo yüan i,<br>hai shih pu nêng<br>chih ni ti ping. | 2. I cannot heal you, al-<br>though I am willing<br>to do so.                  |

"Sui jan . . . hai". Note the construction, "sui jan", although, . . . "hai", yet.

Note the use of "jan" with "sui", although, and "chi", since, to complete the adverbial form.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. <i>P.</i> Ni chi shih pu nêng<br>chih wo ti ping,<br>ni kai chieh shao<br>wo kei pieh ti tai<br>fu. | 3. Since you cannot heal<br>me, you will surely<br>(ought to) introduce<br>me to some other<br>doctor. |
| 4. <i>D.</i> Wo yeh kei ni hsieh<br>chieh shao hsin,<br>yeh sung ni tao<br>tai fu na li ch'ü.          | 4. I will give you a letter<br>of introduction, and<br>also take you to the<br>doctor myself.          |

"Yeh . . . yeh"—both . . . and ". The alternative form, "ping ch'ieh", is fairly common amongst educated people.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. <i>P.</i> Chê yang tso, i ting<br>tui wo hên yu i,<br>k'o shih wo pu<br>hsiang ch'ü. | 5. That would certainly be<br>of advantage to me,<br>but all the same I<br>am disinclined to go. |
| 6. <i>D.</i> Wei shih mo ni pu<br>hsiang ch'ü.  | 6. And why are you dis-<br>inclined to go?   |
| 7. <i>P.</i> Yin wei wo pu jên<br>shih t'a, ho t'a<br>pu shu hsi.                       | 7. Because I don't know<br>him, I am not well<br>acquainted with him.                            |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 33

1. 治病      Chih.<sup>4</sup> To cure, treat (medically, etc.).  
               Ping.<sup>4</sup> Disease, illness, sick.
3. 該           Kai.<sup>1</sup> Ought, owe.  
   介           Chich.<sup>4</sup> Introduce, announce.  
   紹           Shao.<sup>4</sup> Introduce, hand down.  
   介紹        Chieh-shao. Introduce, as one friend to  
                   another.
5. 益           I.<sup>2</sup> Benefit, advantage.
6. 爲什麼    Wei-shih-mo. Why?
7. 習           Hsi.<sup>2</sup> Versed in, familiar, practised.  
   熟習        Shu-hsi. Intimate, well acquainted.

8. *D.* Ni tsung jan ho t'a pu shu, ni yeh k'o i fang hsin, yin wei wo chih tao t'a shih i ko hao tai fu, tan pao t'a nêng i chih ni.      8. Although you are not well acquainted with him, you need have no anxiety. For I know him to be a good doctor, and I am sure he can cure you.

"Tsung jan" is not as common as "sui jan" (see 2 above), but it permits of a slightly different emphasis from it. "Tsung jan" is used when you want to say "but supposing that be so", "allowing for that", etc.

9. *P.* Ni chi jan chô yang ti ch'üan wo, wo chiu tsun ming chiu shih la.      9. Since you urge me to this extent, I am ready to do as you say.
10. *D.* Ni chô yang ti t'ing wo ch'üan, wo yeh hên kao hsing.      10. I am delighted that you should take my advice so readily.
11. *P.* Wo pu tê pu chao cho ni so shuo ti ch'ü tso.      11. I cannot do other than act as you suggest.
12. *D.* Ni yao hsiao hsin, pu yao pa wo kei ni ti hsin tiu la.      12. Take care not to lose the letter I have given you.

"Wo kei ni ti hsin"—the letter which I gave you.  
The "so", relative pronoun, is understood.

13. *P.* Pu p'a, wo pu hui tiu tiao ti.      13. Have no fear, it is out of the question for me to lose that.

"Hui" means able to, so the sense is "I simply cannot lose it".

14. *D.* Yao shih ni tieh tao la, chiu pu kan tan pao t'ên yang.      14. But in the event of your falling one could not be sure about that.

8. 縱心因擔擔保  
 Tsung<sup>4</sup> (jan). Although, lax.  
 Fang-hsin. Don't worry!  
 Yin-wei. Because, for, on account of.  
 Tan.<sup>1</sup> Undertake, carry, used with the next.  
 Tan-pao. Guarantee, stand surety for.
9. 遵  
 Tsun.<sup>1</sup> To accord with, follow, obey.
10. 聽我勸興高興  
 T'ing-wo-ch'üan. Follow my advice.  
 Hsing.<sup>1</sup> Elated, rejoice.  
 Kao-hsing. Elated, highly pleased.
13. 掉丟掉  
 Tiao.<sup>4</sup> To let fall, fall.  
 Tiu-tiao. To let fall, lose.
14. 跌跌倒倒  
 Tieh.<sup>1</sup> To stumble, fall.  
 Tieh-tao. To fall.

15. *P.* Hsin yao shih tiao hsia lai la, wo chiu kan k'uai pa t'a, shih ch'i lai. 15. If the letter were to fall I should pick it up again straight away.
16. *P.* (*cont.*) Tai fu lai tao ché li, huo cho wo tao t'a na li ch'ü, pu shih i yang ti ma. 16. Isn't it all the same whether the doctor comes here, or whether I go to him?
17. *D.* Pu i yang, yin wei t'a na li yu yao p'in ho yao pu. 17. Not at all, because he has medicines and dressings there.
18. *P.* K'o shih tai fu hai mei yu kei wo k'an mo, yeh mei yu yung wên tu piao, liang. 18. But, doctor, you have not yet taken my pulse, nor used the thermometer to take my temperature.
19. *D.* Ni yeh mei yu kao su wo, ni shên shang na'erh t'êng la. Wok'an ni jê tu ping pu kao. Shên ch'u shê t'ou lai, k'an i k'an. 19. Neither have you told me where you feel the pain (lit. on your body where pain). I don't think your temperature is high. But put out your tongue and let me see it.
20. *P.* T'êng shih tu tzu t'êng la, t'ou yeh t'êng la. 20. I have stomach ache, also headache.
21. *D.* Ta hsiao pien tsêm-mo yang, t'ung pu t'ung. 21. What about your bowels and urine, are they all right? (lit. free not free).
22. *P.* Hsiao pien t'ung la, ta pien pu t'ung. 22. Urination is all right, but my bowels are constipated.

15. 拾 Shih.<sup>2</sup> To pick up.
17. 藥 Yüeh. Yao.<sup>4</sup> Medicine, drugs.  
 品 P'in.<sup>3</sup> Sort, kind, class, character.  
 藥 品 Yüeh-p'in. Medicines, as a whole.  
 藥 布 Yao-pu. Bandages, lint, etc.
18. 脈 Mo.<sup>4</sup> The pulse.  
 看 脈 K'an-mo. To take the pulse.  
 溫 度 表 Wên-tu-piao. Thermometer.
19. 疼 T'êng.<sup>2</sup> Pain, to be in pain.  
 伸 Shen.<sup>1</sup> To extend, put out.
21. 大便 Ta-pien. To pass a stool (big-convenience).  
 小便 Hsiao-pien. To urinate (little-convenience).

23. *D.* Na mo, wo kei ni p'ei hsieh yao.  
 Ni pu yao ho nung ch'a, ch'ang ch'ang ho tan ch'a pa.
23. Then I will make you up a purge. And don't drink strong tea. Always take weak tea.

Note the use of "nung" and "tan" to express strong and weak of liquids. "Yen" is also used for "strong" of liquids.

24. *P.* Ch'ing tai fu kei wo p'ei i fu wan yao pa. Wo pu nêng ch'ih yao fên.
24. And doctor, I should like you to make me up a dose of pills. I can't take powders.

23. 濃  
瀉  
Neng. Nung.<sup>2</sup> Thick, strong, rich, of liquids.  
Hsieh.<sup>4</sup> To purge, drain, diarrhoea.
24. 配  
副  
丸  
粉  
P'ei.<sup>4</sup> To mix, make up, as medicines.  
Fu.<sup>4</sup> A dose, classifier of medicine doses  
Wan.<sup>2</sup> Pill, pills.  
Fên.<sup>3</sup> Medicinal powder, flour, meal.

## DIALOGUE No. 34

## On Personal Characteristics and Relationships

Two friends, *A* and *B*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>A.</i> Chao hsien shêng ti<br>p'i ch'i ju ho.  | 1. What sort of a man is<br>Mr. Chao (lit. what<br>is his temper like)?                  |
| 2. <i>B.</i> T'a shih i ko hsin<br>p'ing, ch'i ho ti<br>jên.                                   | 2. He is an even-tempered<br>and kindly man.   |
| 3. <i>A.</i> T'ing shuo t'a ti t'ai<br>t'ai ti p'i ch'i pu<br>hao.                             | 3. I hear that his wife<br>is an ill-tempered<br>woman.                                  |
| 4. <i>B.</i> Ni shuo ti tui, tan<br>shih t'a ti chang<br>fu, kei t'a li i ko<br>hao pang yang. | 4. That is true, but her<br>husband gives (sets)<br>her a good example.                  |
| 5. <i>A.</i> I ko jên, yao shih pu<br>jên ch'i, ch'ang<br>ch'ang hui fa<br>shêng ma fan.       | 5. If a person cannot con-<br>trol his temper, it is<br>a constant source of<br>trouble. |

Note the use of "fa shêng" in the sense of create, produce, make, etc.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. <i>B.</i> Pu kuo Chao hsien<br>shêng shih ko hao<br>jên, pu yüan i<br>chia li pien fa<br>shêng lo so. | But Mr. Chao is a good<br>man, and is anxious<br>that no trouble<br>should arise in his<br>home. |
| 7. <i>A.</i> T'a mên chia li<br>pien, ta kuo chia<br>mei yu.   | Have they ever come<br>to blows at home?   |



## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 34

1. 脾 P'i.<sup>2</sup> Spleen, stomach, disposition.  
     脾氣 P'i-ch'i. Disposition, temper.
4. 丈 Chang.<sup>4</sup> Husband.  
     丈夫 Chang-fu. Husband.  
     榜 Pang.<sup>3</sup> Example, pattern.  
     榜樣 Pang-yang. Example, pattern.
5. 忍 Jên.<sup>3</sup> Endure, repress, restrain.  
     忍氣 Jên-ch'i. Self-control, keep one's temper.  
     麻煩 Ma.<sup>2</sup> Used with the next for trouble.  
     煩 Fan.<sup>2</sup> Trouble, annoyance, annoy.
6. 囉 Lo.<sup>2</sup> Vexatious, annoyance.  
     唆 So.<sup>1</sup> To incite, discord, mischief.
7. 架 Chia.<sup>1</sup> Blows, squabble.  
     打架 Ta-chia. To come to blows, wrangle.

8. B. Mei yu, tan shih yu ti shih hou, mien pu liao ch'i i tie'rh ch'ung tu. 8. No, but at times it is inevitable that they should clash a little.

"Mien pu liao", another illustration of the use of "pu liao" to express impossibility, impossible to avoid, unavoidable.

9. A. Yu ti shih hou, t'ing chien t'a mên ta shêng ch'ao tsui. 9. Sometimes I hear them shouting and wrangling.  
 10. B. Ai ya, chê shih chia li mien ch'ang chien ti shih. 10. Alas, this sort of thing is common in home life.  
 11. A. Hsien shêng k'an, tsên yang nêng pa chê chung shih chien shao. 11. How do you think that this sort of thing might become less frequent?

"Nêng-kou"—can, able to—is often used as an alternative for "nêng" alone.

12. B. I ko jên yao shih chia ao, ch'ang ch'ang k'an pu ch'i pieh jên. 12. If a man is proud he is prone to despise (look down upon) others.

13. A. I ko jên yao shih ch'ien pei, chiu pu hui fa shêng chê yang ti shih ch'ing. 13. A humble-minded man will never (lit. is unable to) cause this kind of trouble.

14. B. T'a ti t'ai t'ai, tsung hsi huan t'an lun jên chia ti ch'ang tuan. 14. His wife must take pleasure in talking about the faults and failures of other people.

8. 免不了 Mien-pu-liao. Unavoidable.  
 衝 Ch'ung.<sup>1</sup> To clash, dash against, collide.  
 突 T'u.<sup>4</sup> Rush against.  
 衝突 Ch'ung-t'u. Personal differences, quarrels.
9. 吵 Ch'ao.<sup>3</sup> Altercation, row, noise.  
 嘴 Tsui.<sup>3</sup> Lips.  
 吵嘴 Ch'ao-tsui. Wrangle, quarrel.
11. 種 Chung.<sup>3</sup> Kind, sort.
12. 驕 Chiao.<sup>1</sup> Proud, arrogant.  
 傲 Ao. Ngao.<sup>4</sup> Haughty, proud.  
 驕傲 Chiao-ao. Proud, haughty, arrogant.  
 看不起 K'an-pu-ch'i. To despise, look down on  
 (look-not-rise).
- 別人 Pieh-jên. Others, other people.
13. 卑 Pei.<sup>1</sup> Low.  
 謙卑 Ch'ien-pei. Humble, modest.
14. 談論 T'an-lun. Discuss, talk about.  
 長短 Ch'ang-tuan. Merits and shortcomings  
 (long-short).

15. A. Na mo, wo hsiang t'a ti chang fu  
ho t'a pu yung i ch'u.
15. In that case I imagine her husband must find it no easy task to get on with her.

"Ch'u" has a special meaning of "to live together", "get on with one"

16. B. Pu ts'o, tan shih t'a chin liang ti jên nai, pu jo t'a.
16. That is so, but her husband endeavours to be patient, doing his utmost not to provoke her.

17. A. Chao hsien shêng pi ting shih i ko ts'ung ming t'ung ta ti jên.
17. Then Mr. Chao must be a very intelligent and experienced man.

"Ts'ung ming t'ung ta"—an enlightened and perspicacious man.

18. B. Tui la, t'a shên t'ung Ju hsüeh.
18. That is so, he is well-versed in Confucian principles.

"Ju" is the classical name for Confucianism, sometimes spoken of as "Ju-chiao", or as in the text, "Ju-hsüeh".

"Shên t'ung"—deep and thorough.

15. 處 Ch'u.<sup>2</sup> To live with.  
 不容易處 Pu-yung-i-ch'u. Not easy to get on with.
16. 盡量的 Chin-liang-ti. Do one's utmost (to exhaust one's capacity).  
 忍耐 Jên-nai. Be patient, put up with, endure.  
 惹 Jo.<sup>3</sup> To provoke.
17. 聰 Ts'ung.<sup>1</sup> Intelligent, understanding, clever.  
 明 Ts'ung-ming. Intelligent, clever.  
 通 T'ung.<sup>3</sup> Through, used with the next.  
 達 Ta.<sup>2</sup> Penetrate, inform.  
 通達 T'ung-ta. Well informed, perspicacious.
18. 深 Shen.<sup>1</sup> Deep, profound, versed in.  
 儒 Ju.<sup>2</sup> Confucian, learned, scholarly.  
 儒學 Ju-hsüeh. The Confucian teaching, Confucianism.

## DIALOGUE No. 35

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on scissors, the tailor, looking for someone, etc.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. M. Na tao tzu lai, ko<br>tiao chē i t'iao<br>shēng tzu.          | 1. Bring a knife to cut<br>this piece of string.               |
| 2. S. Chē t'iao shēng tzu<br>t'ai ts'u, yung tao<br>tzu ko pu tuan. | 2. This piece of string is<br>too thick for a knife<br>to cut. |

Note that "ts'u", thick, and "hsi", thin, are used of round long things like string, pillars, etc., while "hou", thick, and "po", thin, are used of flat objects.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. M. Na. mo, ling wai<br>chiao i t'iao pi<br>chiao hsi ti shēng<br>tzu, huo shih na<br>chien tao lai,<br>chiao i chiao. | 3. In that case, either find<br>a piece of finer string,<br>or bring the scissors<br>to cut it. |
|--|---|

"Pi chiao . . . hsi ti"—comparatively fine, finer.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. S. Ts'ai fēng pa chien<br>tzu chieh ch'ü la.                | 4. The tailor has borrowed<br>the scissors (and<br>taken them away). |
| 5. M. T'a chieh la wo<br>mên ti chien tzu<br>ch'ü tso shih mo. | 5. What has he borrowed<br>our scissors for?                         |

Note "tso shih-mo" at the end of this sentence is equivalent to "why"? "He has borrowed our scissors . . . to do what?"

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. S. T'a shuo t'a tzu chi<br>ti chien tzu t'ai<br>tun, tê mo i mo. | 6. He says his scissors are<br>too blunt and in<br>need of grinding. |
|---|--|

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 35

1. 割 <sup>1</sup> Ko.<sup>1</sup> To cut.  
 割掉 Ko-tiao. To cut off (cut-drop).  
 繩 Shêng<sup>3</sup> (tzu). Rope, string, cord.
2. 斷 Tuan.<sup>4</sup> To cut off, break.  
 割不斷 Ko-pu-tuan. Can't cut it.
3. 細 Hsi.<sup>4</sup> Fine, opposite of thick, or coarse.  
 剪刀 Chien<sup>1</sup> (tzu). Scissors.  
 剪刀 Chien-tao. Scissors.  
 絞 Chiao.<sup>3</sup> To cut with scissors, twist, cross-wise.
6. 鈍 Tun.<sup>4</sup> Dull, blunt.  
 磨 Mo.<sup>2</sup> To grind, rub, mill.

7. *M.* Ts'ai fêng shih pu shih hsien tsai kei wo mên tso i fu.      7. Isn't the tailor making some clothes for us at present?

Notice "shih pu shih" coming at the beginning of a compound question. It serves to emphasise the action as continuing in the present.

8. *S.* Shih ti. T'a shih tsai kei t'ai t'ai ts'ai tuan wai i, ho ch'ang p'ao.      8. He is making a coatee and coat for Madame.
9. *M.* Wo chih tao t'ai t'ai chi yü hsiang ch'üan tuan wai i, so i t'a chieh chien tao, yeh yu li yu.      9. I know that Madame is very urgently wanting to wear the coatee, and so he had some good reason for borrowing the scissors.
10. *S.* K'o shih yu i chien; k'ung p'a ts'ai fêng pa chien tao, liu ch'i lai la.      10. But there is just this point; suppose the tailor were to keep our scissors?

"K'o shih yu i chien", used when interposing a qualification to views expressed.

11. *M.* Na suan pu liao shih mo, tsui yao chin ti shih yao t'a tsao tsao ti pa tuan wai i tso hao, chiao t'ai t'ai hsi huan.      11. That is of small moment. The most important thing is for him to get that coatee finished early, to please Madame.
12. *M.* (*cont.*) Ni tsêm-mo pu tsao kei wo shuo.      12. But why didn't you tell me before?



9. 於 Yü.<sup>2</sup> In, at, on, etc.  
急於 Chi-yü. Anxious about, in haste about.  
由 Yu.<sup>2</sup> Reason, cause.  
理由 Li-yu. The reason why.
10. 留起來 Liu-ch'i-lai. To retain, keep.
11. 算不了 Suan-pu-liao. Of no importance or account.

13. *S.* Yin wei wo pu chih      13. Because I did not know  
     tao nin tsai na li.              where you were.

Note use of "nin", a polite form of "ni", the second personal pronoun.

14. *M.* Pu shih yin wei ni      14. Isn't it (rather) because  
     t'ai lan, mei yu                  you are lazy, and  
     yung hsin chao                  have not tried to find  
     wo pa.                              me?  
 15. *S.* Pu shih ti, wo shih      15. No not that. I really  
     tsai chao pu cho                could not find you.  
     hsien shêng.  
 16. *M.* Wo ping mei yu      16. But I haven't left this  
     li k'ai chê ko ti                place, how can you  
     fang, tsêm mo ni                say you couldn't find  
     shuo chao pu cho                me?  
     wo ni.  
 17. *S.* Na tao ch'i kuai,      17. That really is strange.  
     wo tao ch'u chao                I looked everywhere  
     nin, na'êrh yeh                 for you, but couldn't  
     chao pu cho.                     find you.

"Na'êrh yeh . . . pu"—nowhere, not anywhere.

18. *M.* Pa liao. Kan ni ti      18. Enough of this. Get  
     ch'ü pa.                            on with your job.

14. 用心 Yung-hsin. To exert oneself, mentally (use heart).
15. 找不着 Chao-pu-cho. Cannot find (seek not get).
16. 離開 Li-k'ai. To depart, leave, take one's leave.
17. 奇怪 Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Strange, wonderful, rare.  
Kuai.<sup>4</sup> Extraordinary, unusual, strange, blame.  
到處 Tao-ch'u. Everywhere.
18. 罷了 Pa-liao. To finish, that will do! say no more.

## EXERCISE No. 36

## Some Useful Idiomatic Phrases

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Pa ni mên ti shu ta<br>k'ai.  | 1. Open your books.   |
| 2. K'an ti chi chang ti chi<br>chieh.  | 2. What chapter and verse<br>shall we find? (lit.<br>look at, with a view<br>to reading). |
| 3. Ni nien tao ti chi yeh.   | 3. To what page have you<br>read?   |
| 4. Mei ko hsüeh shêng,<br>tou yao nien ti êrh<br>shih wu yeh ti, ti êrh<br>chang, ti i chieh.            | 4. Each student must read<br>chap. two, verse one,<br>on page 25.                         |
| " Ko "—each, every, followed by " tou ", " tu "—all.   |   |
| 5. So yu ti hsien shêng tou<br>yao tao hui.  | 5. All the teachers must<br>come to the meeting.  |
| " Tao hui "—come to the meeting—is really equal to our be present, attend.                               |   |
| 6. Wo ho ni mên tsai i ch'i<br>ti shih hou, ni mên<br>yao chin liang ti fa<br>piao ni mên ti i<br>chien. | 6. Express your opinions<br>as far as you can,<br>while I am here with<br>you.            |
| 7. T'a ho wo mên t'ung<br>hsing, tso wo mên ti<br>ling tao.  | 7. He is going with us, to<br>be our leader.  |
| " Tso " has the same sense as " tang ", viz., to act as, to be.  |   |
| 8. Wo tsai chu wei mien<br>ch'ien shuo chê yang<br>ti hua, shih pu p'ei<br>ti.                           | 8. I am unworthy (not fit<br>to) to say this kind<br>of thing in your pre-<br>sence.      |
| " Chu wei "—all (you) gentlemen. Used when addressing an audience.                                       |   |

## VOCABULARY OF EXERCISE No. 36

1. 打開 Ta-k'ai. To open, as of books.
2. 章 Chang.<sup>1</sup> Chapter, essay.  
節 Chieh.<sup>2</sup> Verse, section.
3. 頁 Yeh.<sup>4</sup> Page, leaf of a book.
5. 所有的 So-yu-ti. All that there are.  
會 Hui.<sup>4</sup> Meeting, conference, association.
6. 在一起 Tsai-i-ch'i. Together.  
發表 Fa-piao. To make known.  
意見 I-chien. Opinions, ideas.
7. 導 Tao.<sup>3</sup> To lead.  
領導 Ling-tao. To lead, a leader.
8. 諸 Chu.<sup>1</sup> All (precedes nouns).  
面前 Mien-ch'ien. Presence, in front of.  
配 P'ei.<sup>4</sup> Match, be worthy, be equal to.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 9. Chang kuan tsai chün<br>tui chung, tsou lai<br>tsou ch'ü.         | 9. The officers go in and<br>out amongst the<br>troops.              |
| 10. T'a tsai lu p'ang kuan<br>k'an.                                  | 10. He was looking on from<br>the side of the road<br>(an onlooker). |
| 11. Na ko fang tzu chêng<br>tsai tui mie'rh.                         | 11. The house is exactly<br>opposite.                                |
| 12. Ling lu ti, tsai ch'ien<br>mie'rh tsou.                          | 12. The guide goes ahead.  |
| 13. Hu sung ti, tsai hou<br>pie'rh tsou.                             | 13. The escort goes behind.  |
| 14. P'êng yu mên ping<br>p'ai ti, hsiang ch'ien<br>tsou.             | 14. Friends advance shoul-<br>der to shoulder (side<br>by side).     |
| 15. Ni chan tsai tang chung<br>pa.                                   | 15. Stand in the middle.   |
| 16. Pu yao wang i k'uai<br>êrh chi.                                  | 16. Don't crowd together.  |
| 17. Ta chia yao san k'ai.  | 17. Let all scatter.   |
| "Ta chia", a common expression for "all", when referring to persons. |  |
| 18. Hsiang li yüan i tie'rh<br>ti hao.                               | 18. It would be better if<br>you moved apart a<br>little.            |
| 19. Pi tz'u jang pu.   | 19. To make concessions<br>on both sides (lit.<br>mutually recede).  |

"Pi tz'u", lit. that, this, is the most usual expression for mutually.

- |                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 20. Ta chia ch'ien chin pa. | 20. Let all advance. |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|



21. **Chê chi nien t'a chin la pu.** 21. He has made progress this last few years.  
 "Chin-pu", "t'ui-pu", lit. advance step, retard step, progress and retrogression.
22. **T'a ti mei mei t'ui la pu.** 22. His younger sister has retrogressed.
23. **Kuan chang i chin lai, ta chia chiu chan ch'i lai, t'o mao chü kung.** 23. As soon as the officials come in, let the whole group rise, doff hats and bow.  
 "I chin lai . . . chiu"—as soon as . . . come in . . . (you will do this or that).  
 "Chai" is a special term for taking off the hat or cap. But the usual expression for "taking off clothes", including caps and hats, is "t'o".
24. **Hsiang tso hsiang yu, tou shih t'ing chiao shih ti ming ling.** 24. As to whether we turn left or right it is the teacher's orders that must be obeyed.
25. **I shih chu, san yao shu.** 25. Clothes, food and shelter are the three important things.
26. **Ch'uan tê nuan, ch'ih tê pao, shih jên jên so yao.** 26. To be warmly clad and well fed is the desire of every man.  
 "Ch'ih tê pao"; cf. "ch'ih pao la"—I have eaten my fill—is not considered impolite as an expression of appreciation of a good meal.



21. 進步 Chin-pu. To advance, make progress.
22. 退 T'ui.<sup>4</sup> To retreat, retire, move back.  
退步 T'ui-pu. Opposite of progress, to be retrograde.
23. 脫 T'o.<sup>1</sup> To doff the hat, take off (clothes).  
鞠躬 Chü.<sup>2</sup> To bow, bend the body.  
鞠躬 Kung.<sup>1</sup> The body, person.  
鞠躬 Chü-kung. To make a bow.
24. 左 Tso.<sup>3</sup> Left.  
右 Yu.<sup>1</sup> Right.  
命令 Ming-ling. Orders, commands.
25. 食 Shih.<sup>2</sup> Food.  
素 Shu.<sup>1</sup> Cardinal, fundamental.
26. 暖 Nuan.<sup>3</sup> Warm, genial.  
飽 Pao.<sup>3</sup> Replete, full.

## DIALOGUE No. 37

Two friends, A and B, take a Walk in the Country

1. A. Chin t'ien kuo chieh, ko chi kuan fang chia, wo mên lü hsing hao pu hao.      1. To-day is a public holiday, all public offices are closed. What do you say to a ramble?

"Kuo"—to pass—used of special days and occasions; e.g., "kuo nien" is to celebrate the (New) Year.

2. B. Hên hao, wo mên hsia hsiang ch'ü, i t'ung ch'ih yeh ts'an.      2. Very good, let us go into the country and have a picnic meal together.

"Hsia hsiang"; "hsia"—to go down (into the country).

3. A. Tsan ch'êng. P'an wang t'ien ch'i yao nuan ho.      3. Splendid (lit. approved). I hope it will be warm.

4. B. Chiu shih yin t'ien, yeh pu yao chin. Tsui k'o p'a ti chiu shih shan tien, ta lei.      4. Even if it is overcast it doesn't matter. What is most to be feared is thunder and lightning.

"Chiu shih . . . yeh"—even if . . . still, etc.

"K'o p'a ti", one way of expressing the passive voice; what is to be feared.

5. A. K'o shih hsia t'ien pu hui hsia hsüeh ti.      5. (One thing about it and that is) It is Summer and it won't snow!
6. B. Pu ts'ò, k'o shih nan pao pu hsia pao tzu.      6. True, but one can't be certain it won't hail.

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 37

1. 節 Chieh.<sup>2</sup> Feast, festival.  
 機關 Chi.<sup>1</sup> Machine, organ of administration.  
 Kuan.<sup>1</sup> Public office, administrative department.  
 機關 Chi-kuan. Public offices, associations, etc.  
 放假 Chia.<sup>2</sup> Holiday.  
 放假 Fang-chia. To close for holiday.  
 旅行 Lü-hsing. To travel, go for a journey, picnic.
2. 鄉 Hsiang. The country, countryside, rural.  
 野 Yeh.<sup>3</sup> Wild.  
 餐 Ts'an.<sup>1</sup> A meal.
3. 贊 Tsan.<sup>4</sup> Praise, approve.  
 成 Ch'êng.<sup>1</sup> Approve.  
 贊成 Tsan-ch'êng. To approve.
4. 陰 Yin.<sup>1</sup> Dark, cloudy, overcast, the female principle.  
 閃 Shan.<sup>3</sup> Flash, lightning.  
 閃電 Shan-tien. Lightning (flash electric).  
 雷 Lei.<sup>2</sup> Thunder.
5. 雪 Hsüeh.<sup>3, 5</sup> Snow.
6. 雹 Pao<sup>2</sup> (tzu). Hailstones.

7. A. Tung t'ien hsia shu-ang, shan shang ti shu to ma hao k'an.
7. When there is frost in Winter, how beautiful the trees on the hills are!
8. B. Hao k'an shih hao k'an. Pu kuo ho kên hu li pie'rh, tou chieh la tung, hên pu fang pien.
8. Beautiful indeed. But when rivers and lakes are frozen up, it is very inconvenient.
- "Hên pu"—extremely un-; cf. "pu hên", not very, a difference of degree expressed by position of a word in the sentence.
9. A. K'o shih hsien tsai shih ch'iu t'ien, pushih tung t'ien. Wo mên yu pu ta suan tso ch'uan, wo mên yao pu hsing.
9. But it is Autumn and not Winter. Moreover we are not thinking of travelling by boat, we are going to walk.
10. B. Chin wan ti yüeh liang, ying kai shih yüan ti. T'ien ch'i ch'ing lang ti shih hou, hsing hsing yu kai to ma ti hao k'an.
10. It ought to be full moon to-night, and if the sky (weather) is clear, the stars ought also to be very beautiful.
11. A. Yao pu ch'i wu ts'ai hao. Hao pu hao wo mên hsien tsai chiu tsou pa.
11. It will be all right if there is no fog. What about making a start now?
- "Hao pu hao", coming at the beginning of a query, means "What about . . . ? "Do you approve?", etc.
- "Chiu" here as often has the sense of "immediacy".
12. B. K'o i. Ai ya. T'ien ch'i liang k'uai, ching chih yeh
12. Certainly. My! the day is cool, the scenery fine, the flowers are

7. 霜 Shuang.<sup>1</sup> Frost.  
樹 Shu.<sup>4</sup> Tree.
8. 河 Ho.<sup>2</sup> River.  
湖 Hu.<sup>2</sup> Lake.  
凍 Tung.<sup>4</sup> To freeze.  
方便 Fang-pien. Convenient.
9. 秋 Ch'iu.<sup>1</sup> Autumn, harvest.
10. 月亮 Yüeh-liang. The moon.  
朗 Lang.<sup>3</sup> Clear, fine.
11. 霧 Wu.<sup>4</sup> Mist.  
起霧 Chi'-wu. To be misty, foggy.
12. 涼快 Liang-k'uai. Cool and invigorating.  
景 Ching.<sup>3</sup> Fine, prospect.

hao, hua tou k'ai la, tsai ts'ao ti shang mien tsou, to ma shu fu.	all in bloom, what a relief to be walking through the grassy meadows!
---	--

“To ma . . .”—how! when preceding an adjectival expression.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 13. A. Ni k'an shan p'o<br>shang ti miao,<br>shan ting shang<br>ti t'a, to ma hao<br>k'an. | 13. Just look at the temples<br>on the hill slopes,<br>and the pagoda on<br>the hill top, how<br>lovely! |
| 14. B. Wo mên shang miao<br>shang ch'ü, kên<br>ho shang t'an i<br>t'an.                    | 14. Let's go up to the<br>temple and have a<br>chat with the bonzes<br>(Buddhist priests).               |
| 15. A. Wo k'an chê tso<br>miao shih Tao<br>chiao, pu shih Fo<br>chiao.                     | 15. I think this is a Taoist<br>temple, not Budd-<br>hist.   |

“Tso” is the classifier of temples, towers, houses, etc.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 16. B. Na mei yu kuan hsi,<br>tsa mên shang<br>ch'ü tsai shuo pa.     | 16. That doesn't matter,<br>let's go up and then<br>we shall see. |
| 17. A. Ai, chê hsieh ts'ang<br>ying ho ma i, t'ao<br>yen pu t'ao yen. | 17. My! but these flies and<br>ants, what a nuisance<br>they are! |

“T'ao”—to beg, seek; “yen”—dislike. To ask for one's displeasure, so hateful, nuisance, etc.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 18. B. Hsing k'uei chê li<br>mei yu wên tzu.<br>Wên tzu yao jên<br>yao tê li hai. | 18. Fortunately there are<br>no mosquitoes here.<br>They bite terribly. |
|---|---|

12. 緞  
景 緞  
草地 Ts'ao-ti. The fields, on the grass, lawn.
13. 坡 P'o.<sup>1</sup> The slope of a hill.  
廟 Miao.<sup>4</sup> Temple, fair.  
頂 Ting.<sup>3</sup> Summit, top.  
塔 T'a.<sup>3</sup> Pagoda, dagoba.
14. 和 尙 Ho-shang. Buddhist priest.
15. 一座 廟 I-tso-miao. A temple.  
道 Tao.<sup>4</sup> Doctrine, principle, reason, way, etc.  
道 教 Tao-chiao. Taoism, Taoist.  
佛 Fo.<sup>2</sup> Buddha.  
佛 教 Fo-chiao. Buddhism.
17. 蒼 Ts'ang.<sup>1</sup> Fly, with the next.  
蠅 Ying.<sup>2</sup> Fly, with the preceding.  
螞 蟻 Ma-i. Ant.  
討 T'ao.<sup>3</sup> To beg, seek.  
厭 Yen.<sup>4</sup> Dislike.  
討 厭 T'ao-yen. Annoying, vexing.
18. 咬 Yao.<sup>3</sup> To bite.

19. A. Ai, k'an k'an lo t'o, lo tzu, mao lü, k'o to la. 19. I say! look at this multitude of camels, mules and donkeys.

"K'o . . . to la", the "k'o" for emphasis.

20. B. Tsung shih miao shang k'ai hsiang hui, k'o jên tao pu shao. 20. There must be a fair on at the temple, with this mass of visitors.

21. A. K'o pu shih ma. Yu jên pao hai tzu, yu jên pei cho hsing li, hai yu jen t'iao shui. 21. Quite so. Some are carrying their children, some have bundles on their backs, while others are carrying water (on their shoulders).

"K'o pu shih ma", a very common phrase, expressing assent, agreement.

Note the different words used for "carry" according to the method of carrying. See Vocabulary.

22. B. Hên jê nao. Pi shih tsai ch'ang hsi. 22. Very gay and lively. There must be theatricals on.

"Jê nao" and "hung huo" are common terms for noise and bustle, associated with fairs, markets, etc.

23. A. Tsa môn shang miao shang ch'ü k'an k'an. 23. Come on, let's go up to the temple and see.

24. B. Ai, chieh kuang, chieh kuang. 24. Ai! by your leave, make way.

25. A. K'an hsi yu shih mo hao ch'u. 25. What shall we gain by looking at theatricals?

26. B. Huo ch'ü huò pu ch'ü, ni tê na ting chu i pa. 26. You had better make up your mind whether you are going or not.

"Huo . . . huò"—either . . . or.



19. 駱駝驢毛驢  
駱. <sup>4</sup> Camel.  
駝. <sup>2</sup> Camel, with the preceding.  
驢. <sup>2</sup> Donkey.  
毛驢. Donkey.  
驢. <sup>2</sup> (tzu). Mule.
21. 抱孩背挑  
抱. <sup>4</sup> To nurse, carry in the arms.  
孩. <sup>2</sup> (tzu). Child.  
背. <sup>4</sup> To carry on the back.  
挑. <sup>1</sup> To carry on a pole on the shoulder.
22. 鬧熱唱戲  
鬧. <sup>4</sup> Noise, bustle, disturb.  
熱. <sup>4</sup> Bustling, hot and noisy.  
唱. <sup>4</sup> To sing.  
戲. <sup>4</sup> Theatricals, play on stage.  
唱戲. Ch'ang-hsi. Theatricals, to act, play on stage.
24. 借光  
借. <sup>4</sup> Chieh - kuang. By your leave! (borrow light).
25. 好處  
好. <sup>4</sup> Hao-ch'u. Benefit, advantage.

27. A. Pu ju ch'ên cho chê ko chi hui, ch'ü k'an i tz'u hsi pa. 27. Well, I suppose we had better take the opportunity to see a play.

"Tz'u"—a time, a turn. "T'ai" is the classifier of plays, lit. "stage".

28. B. Wo k'an mei yu pieh ti pan fa. Jên chê yang ti yung chi, hsiang hui yeh hui pu ch'ü. 28. I fear (see) there is nothing else we can do. The crowd pressing on us as it is, even if we want to go back, we shan't be able to do so.

"Pieh mei yu pan fa" could also be used. Note this use of "pieh"—otherwise, apart from this, not have way of doing.

"Hsiang hui, etc.", a good illustration of "pictorial" expression, showing the working of the mind in the particular situation.

29. A. Hsing k'uei wo mên mei yu to k'ang tung hsi. Na li yu i ko jên ch'ien la i p'i ma, p'a ts'ai la jên. 29. Fortunately we have not brought much baggage with us (on a pole). There's a man leading a horse, I'm afraid it might trample on someone.

"K'ang"—carry on shoulder; see 21 above.

"Ch'ien"—to lead a horse—a special term for this action.

30. B. Wei hsien tê hên. 30. Very dangerous indeed.

Note "tê hên" following the adjective, again for emphasis.

27. 趁  
機會 Ch'ên.<sup>4</sup> Avail of.  
Chi-hui. Opportunity.
28. 湧  
擠 Yung.<sup>3</sup> To crowd or press together.  
Chi.<sup>3</sup> To crowd together.
29. 扛  
牽  
匹  
踩 K'ang.<sup>4</sup> To carry on shoulder.  
Ch'ien.<sup>1</sup> To lead a horse by the bridle.  
P'i.<sup>3, 5</sup> Classifier of horses.  
Ts'ai.<sup>4</sup> To trample or step on.
30. 危險 Wei.<sup>1</sup> Hsien.<sup>1</sup> Dangerous.



## VOCABULARY OF EXERCISE No. 38

3. 金           Chin.<sup>1</sup> Gold, metal.  
   煉           Lien.<sup>4</sup> To refine.
4. 瓜           Kua.<sup>1</sup> Melon.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
5. 黃連       Huang lien.<sup>2</sup> A bitter plant.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
6.            Yao.<sup>2</sup> Distant.

- Jih chiu chien jên hsin.**      **And you discern a man's heart after long acquaintance with him.**
7. **Ch'ui mao ch'iu tz'u.**      7. **Blowing the fur to find flaws (a faultfinder).**
8. **Pu p'a man, chih p'a chan.**      8. **It's well to keep going, even if the going is slow. Stagnation is to be dreaded.**
- To keep going is important.
9. **Yüan shui chiu pu liao chin huo.**      9. **A distant well (water) is of no avail to put out a fire which is near at hand.**
- Hope deferred maketh the heart sick.
10. **Tso ching kuan t'ien.**      10. **Sitting in a well and looking at the sky (parochialism).**
- Parochialism.
11. **Ch'i hu nan hsia.**      11. **Once you are mounted on a tiger the difficulty is to get down.**
- You'll suffer for your rashness.
12. **I ko jên chiao t'a liang chih ch'uan.**      12. **(Like) a man straddling two boats. (Hesitancy) "He who hesitates is lost".**
- Hesitancy is dangerous.
13. **Pu tao ho pien pu t'o hsieh.**      13. **Don't take your shoes off until you reach the river.**
- Meeting trouble halfway.

7. 吹            Ch'ui.<sup>1</sup> To blow.  
    疵            Tz'u.<sup>1</sup> A flaw, blemish.
9.                Chiu.<sup>4</sup> To save, deliver.
11. 虎            Hu.<sup>3</sup> Tiger.
12. 踏            T'a.<sup>4</sup> Step on, tread.  
    隻            Chih.<sup>1</sup> Classifier of boats, shoes, etc.

14. Ch'ien jên tsai shu, hou jên ch'êng liang. 14. Our forefathers planted trees, and their descendants avail themselves of the cool shade.

Our debt to our forefathers.

15. Shih niao tsai shu, Pu ju i niao tsai shou. 15. Ten birds on the tree are not so good as one bird in the hand. (One bird in the hand is worth ten on the tree.)

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

16. Jên shih chiu ti hao. I fu shih hsin ti hao. 16. Old friends are best. New clothes are best.
17. Mou shih tsai jên. Ch'êng shih tsai t'ien. 17. Man proposes but God (Heaven) disposes.
18. Chin t'ien t'o la hsieh ho wa, pu chih ming t'ien ch'uan pu ch'uan. 18. We take off our shoes and socks to-day, but do not know whether we shall put them on to-morrow.

The uncertainty of life.

19. Hsia mao p'êng ssu lao shu. 19. A blind cat happens upon a dead rat.

Extraordinary luck.

20. Shan yu shan pao, o yu o pao. 20. Goodness brings a good reward, evil an evil recompense.



14. 栽            Tsai.<sup>1</sup> To plant.
15. 鳥            Niao.<sup>3</sup> Bird.
17. 謀            Mou.<sup>2</sup> To plan, devise.
19. 貓            Mao.<sup>2 1</sup> Cat.  
    死            Ssu.<sup>3</sup> Dead, to die.  
    鼠            Shu.<sup>3</sup> Rat, mouse.  
    老鼠        Lao-shu. Rat, mouse.

Shan o pu pao, shih  
hou wei tao.

If good and evil are  
not requited, it is  
(merely) because the  
time has not yet  
arrived.

21. Shan mên nan k'ai.  
Shan mên nan pi..

21. It is hard to prise open  
the door of benevo-  
lence, and equally  
hard to shut it.

Used of charitable deeds. It is hard to get people to help you when in need (from the standpoint of the needy). Once you have begun to distribute alms, you will find it hard to stop (from the standpoint of the benefactor); *i.e.*, there will always be a crowd of beggars round you if you give to one.



## DIALOGUE No. 39

## In the City

Two friends, *A* and *B*, who meet a third friend, *C*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>A.</i> Tui mie'rh, na tso<br>shih t'ou tsao ti<br>fang tzu, shih<br>shih mo. | 1. What is that stone<br>building opposite? |
|--|---|

"Shih t'ou tsao ti"—made or built of stone.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. <i>B.</i> Ni wên ti shih cha<br>ch'i kan ti na ko<br>fang tzu ma. | 2. Are you asking about<br>that building with<br>the flag-pole? |
|--|---|

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. <i>A.</i> Shih ti. Kua kuo<br>ch'i ti na ko fang<br>tzu. | 3. Yes, the building with<br>the national flag fly-<br>ing. |
|---|---|

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. <i>B.</i> Ai. Na shih "Ai<br>Kuo Tien Ying<br>Yüan". Ni yao<br>k'an tien ying<br>ma. | 4. Oh, that is the "Patriotic<br>Cinema Theatre".<br>Do you want to see<br>the films? |
|---|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. <i>A.</i> Ch'êng li ti yin<br>hang, chi tien<br>chung kuan mên. | 5. What time do the banks<br>in the city close? |
|--|---|

"Kuan mên". The difference between "kuan" and "shang" should be noted. "Kuan" is used of doors on hinges; "shang" of shutters.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. <i>B.</i> Yin hang san tien<br>chung kuan mên,<br>ch'ien p'u i chih<br>k'ai tao chiu tien<br>chung. | 6. The big banks close at<br>three, but the cash<br>shops keep open un-<br>til nine o'clock. |
|--|--|

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 39

1. 石            Shih<sup>2</sup> (t'ou). Stone.  
    造            Tsao.<sup>4</sup> To build, made.
2. 插            Cha.<sup>1</sup> To stick in.  
    旗            Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Flag, banner.
4. 影            Ying.<sup>3</sup> Shadow, image.  
    電影        Tien-ying. The cinema film (electric-  
                   shadow).  
    愛國        Ai-kuo. Patriotic.
5. 行            Hang.<sup>2</sup> A store, shop, etc.  
    銀行        Yin-hang. A bank,
6. 鋪            P'u.<sup>4</sup> A shop.  
    錢鋪        Ch'ien-p'u. A Chinese cash shop.

7. A. Wo chē li yu i      7. I have a cheque here  
       chang hui p'iao        which I must cash  
       (chih p'iao) yao       before I can go to  
       huan ch'êng hsien     the pictures.  
       ch'ien, ts'ai nêng  
       k'an tien ying.

“Huan ch'êng”—change it to become . . .

“Ts'ai”—change your money first and “then” you will be able.  
 The “ts'ai” of logical sequence.

8. B. Ch'ien tien yeh kei      8. The cash shops will  
       ni huan, yeh pu        change it for you,  
       k'ou ch'ien.            and charge no dis-  
   count.
9. A. Na mo, wo mên        9. Then let us go to the  
       hsien shang yu        post office first. I  
       chêng chü, wo        want to send a tele-  
       yao ta tien pao        gram to my wife.  
       kei wo nei jên.

“Nei jên”, used in referring to one's own wife, but not to the wife of another man. “Chia li ti” is a common synonym, i.e., “the one in my home”.

“Kei” often means “to”.

10. B. Yu chêng chü, li      10. The post office is quite  
       chê'rh yüan ya.        far from here. The  
       Hai shih tien pao       telegraph office is  
       chü pi chiao chin.     nearer.
11. A. Pu kuo wo i ting      11. But I must first send  
       yao pa chē liang       these two registered  
       fêngkua hao hsin,     letters to the mana-  
       chi kei wo kung        ger of my firm.  
       ssu ti ta pan.

“Ta pan”—the big boss. Others in order of seniority are “erh pan”, second boss, “san pan”, third boss, and so on.

12. B. I fêng kua hao hsin,    12. How many stamps must  
       t'ieh to shao yu        one put on a regis-  
       p'iao.                    tered letter?

7. 匯 Hui.<sup>4</sup> To exchange money.  
 匯票 Hui-p'iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.  
 支票 Chih-p'iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.
8. 扣 K'ou.<sup>4</sup> To deduct, discount.
9. 郵 Yu.<sup>2</sup> To convey, postal service.  
 政 Chêng.<sup>4</sup> Government, administration.  
 郵政局 Yu-chêng-chü. The post office.  
 報 Pao.<sup>4</sup> Report, announce, inform.  
 電報 Tien-pao. Telegram.  
 打電報 Ta-tien-pao. To send a telegram.  
 內 Nei.<sup>4</sup> Inside, within.  
 內人 Nei-jen. Wife, my wife.
11. 掛號 Kua-hao. To register, letters, parcels, etc.  
 一封 I-feng-hsin. A letter.  
 信  
 司 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Manage, board, company.  
 公司 Kung-ssu. A public company.  
 大班 Ta-pan. Manager, chief.
12. 貼 T'ieh.<sup>1</sup> To stick on, as stamps.  
 郵票 Yu-p'iao. Postage stamps.

13. A. Na wo pu hsiao tê.      13. That I don't know.  
     Wo mên shang  
     chü tzu li ch'ü,  
     wên i wên.  
     But we will go to the  
     office to inquire.
14. B. Hao. Ai, kuo lai      14. Good. Hello, here's  
     ti chiu shih i  
     ko t'ung hsiang.  
     Hao ya, hsiang  
     pu tao tsai chô li  
     p'êng chien ni. Ni  
     mang shêm-mo.  
     a fellow-townsmen  
     coming along. Hello!  
     I did not expect to  
     come across you  
     here. What's your  
     hurry?
- “Hsiang pu tao”, used of anything that *unexpectedly* happens.  
     “Ni mang shêm-mo”—you hurry what? What is your hurry?
15. C. Ai, liao pu tê. Wo      15. Ah, terrible! My  
     ti tsu fu pei ch'i  
     ch'ê pan tao la.  
     Shou la chung  
     shang. Wo hsien  
     tsai shang i yüan  
     k'an t'a ch'ü.  
     grandfather has been  
     knocked down by a  
     motor car. He has  
     sustained severe in-  
     juries, and I am just  
     going to the hospital  
     to see him.
- “Liao pu tê”—terrible—may be applied to propitious as well as  
     unpropitious events, but more generally it is used of the latter.  
     “Pei”, the normal passive sign; translated “by”.
16. B. K'o hsi, k'o hsi. Pu      16. I am sorry (what a  
     kan liu lan ni, t'i  
     wo wên hou ling  
     tsu pa.  
     pity). I mustn't de-  
     tain you. Greetings  
     to your grandfather  
     (lit. inquiries on my  
     behalf to . . .).
17. C. Hsieh hsieh. Tsai      17. Thank you. Goodbye.  
     chien.
18. B. Tsa mên tao kuan      18. Let's go along to a  
     tzu li, ch'ih tung  
     hsi pa. Wo tu  
     tzu o la.  
     restaurant, and have  
     something to eat. I  
     am hungry (lit. my  
     stomach is hungry).



14. 同鄉 T'ung-hsiang. Fellow-villager, townsman.  
 想不到 Hsiang-pu-tao. Unexpected (think not arrive).
15. 了不得 Liao-pu-tê. Expression of emotion, elation, grief.  
 祖 Tsu.<sup>3</sup> Ancestors.  
 受傷 Shou-shang. To receive an injury.  
 醫院 I-yüan. Hospital.
16. 留攔 Liu-lan. To detain.  
 令祖 Ling-tsu. Your grandfather.
18. 肚 Tu<sup>4</sup> (tzu). Stomach, belly.

19. A. K'o i. Wo pu hsiang ch'ih shih mo tung hsi. K'o shih wo tsui kan la. Wo yao ho i pei p'i chiu. 19. All right. I don't feel like eating anything. But I am thirsty (my lips are dry). I shall have a glass of beer.
20. B. Ai, chē ko kuan tzu pu ts'o, hai yu yin yo tui t'ing. 20. Ah, this is a very good restaurant, and there is a band to listen to.
21. A. Na pu shih yin yo tui, pu kuo shih liu shēng chi ti hsiang shēng. 21. That isn't a band, it is only a gramophone('s noise).
22. B. Wo k'an shih wu hsien tien kuang po ti yin yo. 22. I think it is the wireless broadcasting music.
23. A. K'o pu shih ma. Wo t'ing shuo chē'rh ch'a pu to mei wan shang tou yu t'iao wu. Ni hui t'iao wu pu hui. 23. Of course it is. I hear that almost every evening there is dancing here. Can you dance?
24. B. Hui shih hui. Wo chin t'ien t'ai lei la, pu hsiang t'iao wu. 24. Yes I can, but I am tired to-day and don't feel like dancing.
25. A. Na mo, wo mēn chiu ch'ü k'an tien ying pa. I mien hsiu hsi, i mien chang chih shih. 25. Then let's go to the pictures. On the one hand we can take a rest and on the other increase our knowledge.

"I mien . . . i mien"—on the one hand . . . and on the other.

19. 嘴乾 Tsui-kan. Thirsty (lips dry).  
 啤 P'i<sup>2</sup> (chiu). Beer.
20. 樂 Yo. Yüeh.<sup>4</sup> Music.  
 音樂 Yin-yo. Music.  
 音樂隊 Yin-yo-tui. Band.
21. 留聲機 Liu-shêng-chi. Gramophone (retain-voice-machine).  
 響聲 Hsiang-shêng. Noise, sound.
22. 無線電 Wu-hsien-tien. Wireless (no-wire-electric).  
 廣 Kuang.<sup>3</sup> Wide, broadcast.  
 播 Po.<sup>1</sup> To spread abroad.  
 廣播電台 Kuang-po-tien-t'ai. A broadcasting station.
23. 跳 T'iao.<sup>4</sup> To dance, jump.  
 舞 Wu.<sup>3</sup> To posture, brandish, dance.
24. 累 Lei.<sup>3</sup> Tired, fatigued.
25. 一面 I-mien. On the one hand.

26. B. Pu ts'o. Wo i wei      26. Very good. I think  
na tao kêng yu                      that will be more  
hsing ch'ü (ch'ü                      interesting.  
wei).

26. 趣 Ch'ü.<sup>4</sup> Interesting, amusing.  
興趣 Hsing-ch'ü. Interesting, interest.

## DIALOGUE No. 40

## On War and Peace

Two friends, *A* and *B*

1. *A.* Wo chē i pei tzu ti kung fu, chiu p'êng tao la liang tz'u ti shih chieh ta chan.      1. I have experienced (lit. met with) two world wars in my lifetime.

2. *B.* Wei shih mo shih chieh shang pu nêng kou wei ch'ih ho p'ing ni.      2. How is it that peace cannot be organised on earth?

“ Nêng i ”, synonym for “ nêng kou ”—can, be able to.

3. *A.* Kên pên chiu shih yin wei kuo chia kên kuo chia, chung tsu kên chung tsu chih chien, fa hsien pu kung p'ing ti shih hsiang.      3. At bottom it is because between nations and races, certain injustices arise.

“ Kên pên ”—the root, source, etc., or

“ Tao ti ”—really, lit. arrive at bottom.

“ Chih chien ”. “ Chih ” the possessive goes better with “ chien ” than “ ti ”.

“ Fa hsien ”, lit. become evident, so reveal.

4. *B.* Ni ti i ssu shih shuo, pi hsien ch'ü hsiao i ch'ieh pu kung p'ing ti      4. Do you then mean, that in order to obtain a peaceful world, we must first eliminate

## VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 40

1. 輩            Pei.<sup>4</sup> Generation.
  
2. 維            Wei.<sup>2</sup> To maintain, organise.  
  持            Ch'ih.<sup>2</sup> To organise, maintain.  
  維持        Wei-ch'ih. To organise and keep going.
  
3. 之            Chih.<sup>1</sup> Like "ti", the sign of the possessive, only with a slightly literary flavour.  
  事項        Shih-hsiang. The details of affairs, affairs.
  
4. 取消        Ch'ü-hsiao. To cut out, eliminate.

shih, ts'ai nêng  
p'an wang tê tao,  
yu i ko ho p'ing  
ti shih chieh ma.

everything that is  
unjust?

"Ni ti i ssu shih shuo"—in exact terms your meaning is.

"Ts'ai"—of logical sequence. Cf. Dial. 39, sen. 7.

5. A. Shih chieh shang fa  
shêng chan shih,  
to pan shih yin  
wei wo kang ts'ai  
shuo kuo ti yüan  
ku. Pu kuo jên  
jên tou yu i ko  
tzu ssu ti hsin.  
Chê yeh pu k'o  
pu chu i ti.

5. The majority of wars  
that arise on this  
earth are due to the  
reason I have just  
mentioned. But the  
fact that every man  
is selfish is something  
that cannot be ig-  
nored.

"To i pan"—mainly, the majority.

"Pu k'o pu . . .", another example of the double negative for emphasis.

6. B. Pu ts'o. Jên ti tzu  
ssu hsin, shih tsai  
nan yü ch'ü tiao.

6. Quite right. The sel-  
fish instincts of man  
are certainly hard to  
eradicate.

7. A. K'o shih hsien tsai  
ti, ti êrh tz'u ta  
chan i ching wan  
la. Tê Kuo, I  
Kuo, Jih Pen,  
tou i ching t'ou  
hsiang la.

7. But the second Great  
War is now over.  
Germany, Italy and  
Japan have all sur-  
rendered.

"Hsiang", also read "chiang", but not in the sense of surrender.

8. B. Ai ya. Chung Kuo  
ti k'ang Jih Pên  
ti ch'in lüeh, i  
ching pa nien  
liao.

8. Ah! China has been  
resisting Japanese  
aggression for eight  
years now.



5. 私            Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Selfish, private.  
     自私        Tzu-ssu. Selfish.
6. 去掉        Ch'ü-tiao. To eliminate, get rid of.
7. 德國        Tê-kuo. Germany.  
     意國        I-kuo. Italy.  
     日本        Jih-pen. Japan.  
     投降        T'ou.<sup>2</sup> To hand in, surrender.  
     降          Hsiang.<sup>2</sup> To submit, surrender (with the  
                  preceding).
8. 抵抗        Ti.<sup>3</sup> To resist.  
     抗          K'ang.<sup>4</sup> To resist, oppose (with the pre-  
                  ceding).  
     侵          Ch'in.<sup>1</sup> To invade.

9. A. Liang pien ssu shang ti jên, tou fei ch'ang ti to la. 9. The killed and wounded on both sides are extremely (unusually) many.
10. B. Shih tsai pu shao. Fang tzu pei cha tan cha huai la ti, yeh shih hên to. 10. Very many indeed. And the number of buildings that have been destroyed by bombing is tremendous.

"Pei", another instance of the Passive voice expressed in this way. See Dial. 39, sen. 15.

11. A. Mêng chün i ching chan shêng la, Tê Kuo ho Jih Pen i ching ta pai la. Ni hsiang Chiang lai hai hui fa shêng chan shih ma. 11. Now that the Allies are victorious, and Germany and Japan have been defeated, do you think there will be another war?

"Chan shêng"—fight-win, get the victory.

12. B. Pu kan shuo i ting. Tan shih chê i tz'u chan chêng yung ti wu ch'i, fei ch'ang ti ts'an pao. Yeh hsü Ko kuo tou shou la chê chung k'ung hsia (ho), tsai pu kan hsüan chan liao. 12. One cannot say for certain. But the weapons used during this war have been so cruel and terrifying, that perhaps as each nation has been so intimidated by the terror, no one will dare to proclaim war again.

"Chê i tz'u"—this, this instance of . . .

"Fei ch'ang". "Fei" is not; "ch'ang" is usual, so extraordinary.

"Huo cho"—perhaps, possibly.

8. 略 侵 略  
Liao.<sup>2</sup> To plunder.  
Ch'in-liao. Aggression.
10. 炸 彈 炸 彈 炸 彈 炸 彈  
Cha.<sup>2</sup> Smash, explode.  
Tan.<sup>4</sup> Bomb, bullet.  
Cha-tan. Bomb.  
Huai.<sup>4</sup> Ruin, destroy, spoil.
11. 盟 盟 軍 勝 敗  
Mêng.<sup>2</sup> Covenant, alliance.  
Mêng-chün. The Allied Forces.  
Shêng.<sup>1</sup> Victory, conquer.  
Pai.<sup>4</sup> Defeat, spoil.
12. 武 器 殘 暴 恐 嚇 宣 宣 戰  
Wu-ch'i. Weapons.  
Ts'an.<sup>2</sup> Injure, cruel.  
Pao.<sup>4</sup> Violent, fierce, cruel.  
K'ung.<sup>3</sup> To terrify, fearsome.  
Hsia.<sup>4</sup> Alarm, startle.  
Hsüan.<sup>1</sup> To proclaim, make public.  
Hsüan-chan. To declare war.

13. A. **Wo hsiang hsin shih** 13. I believe that it will be  
 " chē yang, ping so. Moreover more  
 ch'ieh chin nien than sixty nations  
 liu shih to kuo, have organised a  
 tsu chih la i ko League, with the  
 lien ho hui, yao idea of exerting  
 chin li ti wei every effort to main-  
 ch'ih shih chieh tain the peace of the  
 ho p'ing. world.

"Hsiang hsin"—to believe. The use of "hsiang" here is probably an instance of its reflective use, forming the middle voice form of the verb.

14. B. **Ting hao. Tan shih** 14. Excellent. But I think  
 wo k'an tsai pi that we shall have  
 yao shih, hai tê to use the united  
 yung lien ho ti Forces, Navy, Army  
 chün li, ju hai and Air Forces, in  
 chün, lu chün, case of necessity, to  
 k'ung chün ti li help make it possible  
 liang, lai pang for this Assembly to  
 chu, hui i ts'ai function effectively.  
 neng yu mei man  
 ti hsiao kuo.

"Lien ho", or "lien pang"—connected or Allied States. Cf. 11, where we have "mêng chun"—the covenanted or allied forces.

"Mei-man". "Mei" is good, excellent; "man" is full, satisfactory.

15. A. **T'ung i la. Hsien** 15. Agreed. There exists  
 tsai ti chêng chih at the present time  
 chu i hên fu tsa. a great variety of  
 Yu min chu chu political theories.  
 i, kung ch'an chu We have Democracy,  
 i, hai yu ch'i t'a Communism, and  
 ti ko ming ti ho Progressive (revolutionary) and Conser-  
 shou chiu ti, ko vative parties in  
 chung chêng chih Government circles.  
 shang ti p'ai pieh.

"T'ung i"—same meaning, so agreed.

13. 信  
相 信  
組  
織
- Hsin.<sup>4</sup> To believe.  
Hsiang-hsin. To believe, have faith.  
Tsu.<sup>3</sup> To organise, cord.  
Chih.<sup>1</sup> To weave, but with the preceding means to organise.
14. 聯  
海  
海 軍  
陸 軍  
空 軍  
美 滿  
效 果  
效 果
- Lien.<sup>3</sup> To connect, unite.  
Hai.<sup>3</sup> The sea.  
Hai-chün. The Navy.  
Lu-chün. The Army.  
K'ung-chün. The Air Force.  
Mei-man. Complete, satisfactory.  
Hsiao.<sup>4</sup> Effect, effective.  
Hsiao-kuo. Result, effect.
15. 治  
政 治  
複 雜  
複 雜  
產 產  
共 產  
主 義  
其 他
- Chih.<sup>4</sup> To govern.  
Chêng-chih. Political, Government.  
Fu.<sup>4</sup> Double.  
Tsa.<sup>2</sup> Confused, complicated.  
Fu-tsa. Complex, confused.  
Ch'an.<sup>3</sup> Property.  
Kung-ch'an. Communist (public or common property).  
Chu-i. -ism, ideology.  
Ch'i-t'a. Others, other.

"Chu-i", equal to our -ism theory, ideology, etc.; e.g., "San Min Chu I", the "Three People's Principles" of Sun Yat Sen.

"Fu-tsa". "Fu" is double; "tsa" confused, so complex, complicated, many and varied.

"Ko-ming", lit. change the decree, revolutionary..

16. *B.* Na tao pu yao chin.      16. But that is unimportant. We need not fear multiple political parties. What is to be feared is that the mass of the people pay no attention to politics.
- Pu p'a chêng chih  
shang ti tang p'ai  
to, chih p'a chung  
jên pu chu i  
chêng chih shang  
ti shih ch'ing.

"Tang p'ai"—parties, factions, observe that.

"Chia" is used to indicate a certain class or cross-section of people: "chêng-chih-chia"—politicians; "wên-hsüeh-chia"—literary man, author ("wên" being letters, literature).

"Chu i" is a verb here, to pay attention or heed to. Cf. 15 above.

15. 革 命 Ko.<sup>2</sup> To change, alter.  
    革 命 Ko-ming. Revolutionary (change the de-  
        cree).  
    守 舊 Shou-chiu. Conservative (guard the old).  
    派 別 P'ai.<sup>4</sup> Party, separate, branch.  
    派 別 P'ai-pieh. Parties.
16. 黨 人 Tang.<sup>3</sup> Party, association, faction.  
    衆 人 Chung-jên. Everybody, the people.





## CHINESE TEXT OF THE DIALOGUES

## HINTS FOR THE STUDENT

As the aim of this book is to give the student a basic knowledge of both the written and spoken forms of the Chinese language, the forty dialogues have been prepared in Romanised and Chinese characters.

The student should use the Chinese characters from the very outset of his studies, and turn to the Romanised form only as a last resort.

Here are a few hints to aid the student in acquiring a mastery of the dialogues, *viz.* :—

1. Write out the sentences in the Chinese characters repeatedly.
2. Do not attempt to absorb too many sentences at any one session, especially at the beginning. Learn thoroughly what you do.
3. Constantly revise your past work.
4. As you write the sentences, repeat the separate sounds aloud. The actual hearing of the sounds is an additional aid to memory.
5. Frequently close the book and repeat the sentences without its aid.
6. Constantly compare your efforts at memorising with the text.
7. Vary the sentences by altering the pronouns, and the number and tense of the verbs.
8. Think of the "opposite" of adjectives, adverbs, etc., *e.g.*, "black" and "white"; "long" and "short"; "quickly" and "slowly", etc., and make new sentences along this line.
9. As you have opportunity of conversing, use what you have learnt. Do not be afraid of making mistakes.

Listen attentively to the response especially if it is from a Chinese. This will often be preceded by a repetition of your question, probably in better "Chinese" !

10. Repeat the reply to yourself, and write down in a note-book anything that is new.
11. Finally, let me repeat advice given in the Introduction. Think of each sentence as a whole, as representing an "idea", and do not be too anxious to analyse the sentence into its component parts. Ability to do this will come naturally as you acquire more of the language.

第一課

- 354      \*      TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE
- 1 門口有人。      2 誰？      3 我。      4 是誰？      5 不知道。
- 6 我去看一看。      7 不用，我叫隆福去。      8 隆福。
- 9 哎。      10 來吧。      11 哎。      12 門口有人，你去看一看是誰。
- 13 哎。      14 先生貴姓？      15 我姓李，王先生在家嗎？
- 16 在家，請進來。      17 好。      18 李先生來了。      19 請進
- 來吧。      20 呀，李先生好哎。
- 21 好，王先生張先生都好哎？
- 22 好，好，請坐請坐。      23 謝謝。      24 泡茶。      25 說話，就來。
- 26 請李先生喝茶。      27 不敢當。      28 再坐一會兒。
- 29 對不住，有人等着，我得回去。      30 不送不送。
- 31 那兒的話。      32 再見，再見。

## 第二課

- 1 王先生來了。 2 請他進來。 3 王先生好呀？ 4 好  
太太喫過飯沒有？ 5 喫了。先生喫了嗎？ 6 還沒有喫。  
或偏過了。 7 請先生坐。或先生請坐。 8 請太太先  
坐。 9 先生太客氣。 10 不客氣，是理當的。 11 可以給  
先生泡茶。或沏茶。 12 哎，預備好了。 13 請先生喝茶。  
14 謝謝。 15 中國話，我不大懂。 16 太太幾時到敝國來  
的？ 17 我是上月才到貴國來的。 18 太太的中國話說  
得好。 19 過獎過獎。 20 真的實在好 21 中國話容易  
學不容易學？ 22 並不太難。 23 我願意把中國話學好。  
24 我盡心的教你就是了。

## 第三課

- 1 這個是什麼？ 2 那是一本書。 3 是什麼書？  
 4 是一本字典。 5 那個東西叫什麼。 6 那是一管  
 鉛筆。 7 我們可以做什麼？ 8 我們可以唸書。  
 9 我們可以唸什麼書？ 10 我們可以唸這個讀本。  
 11 請先生唸、我聽。 12 那個法子不大好。 13 那麼、先  
 生先唸、我就跟着唸、行不行？ 14 行、這個法子很好。 15 要  
 是我唸錯了、請先生告訴我。 16 理當理當。 17 現在  
 唸完了書、我們還可以做什麼？ 18 我們可以寫字。  
 19 好、我喜歡寫字。 20 會寫字不會？ 21 不會、可是我願  
 意學。 22 那麼、我就盡心的教你。 23 寫字用什麼東西？

24 我們用一管筆、一張紙、一塊墨、和一方硯台、再加上一點  
 兒水、研墨。 25 我把這些東西拿來、我們就寫字。  
 26 好、我們寫字吧。

#### 第四課

1 這個東西叫什麼？ 2 那是一個茶盃(碗)。

3 茶盃和茶碗有什麼分別？ 4 茶盃有把兒、茶碗沒有把兒。

5 那是什麼東西？ 6 那是一個(把)茶壺。

7 茶壺和水壺一樣不一樣？ 8 不一樣、茶壺是泡茶用的、水壺是燒水用的。

9 這些煙捲兒是誰的？ 10 那些煙捲兒是我的。

11 有洋火(火柴)沒有？ 12 有、你要不要？

- 13 不要、我不喫(抽)煙。 14 這兩管筆是你的嗎？ 15 這一管鋼筆是我的。 16 那一管呢？ 17 那一管毛筆是不是你的呀？ 18 不是我的、是我朋友的。 19 那一瓶墨水也是他的嗎？ 20 不是他的、是先生的。 21 這些煙捲兒好不好？ 22 不大好。 23 你在那兒買的？ 24 在市場上買的。 25 在這裡有賣的沒有？ 26 在這裡沒有賣的。 27 在那裡有賣的呢？ 28 上大街上去、或者可以買。 29 咱們倆可以上街去買幾個吧。 30 好、咱們一塊兒去。



## 第五課

- 1 他來了沒有？ 2 他沒有來。 3 你來不來？ 4 我  
來。 5 昨天他們來了麼？ 6 他們來了。 7 明天你  
們來不來？ 8 明天我們不來。 9 今天你去不去？  
10 我去。 11 明天你回來不回來？ 12 明天不回來。  
13 明天她回去不回去？ 14 是的，明天她回去。 15 你  
上那裡去？ 16 我上街去。 17 我也去。 18 你去幹  
什麼？ 19 我去買東西。 20 買什麼東西？ 21 買一頂  
帽子和一雙鞋。 22 到過北京沒有？ 23 沒有到過。  
24 起來，我們走吧。 25 等一等，得拿幾個錢。 26 那不

要緊，我帶得有錢。 27 可是借人的錢不大好。 28 那要看情形怎樣。 29 有的時候好，有的時候不好，是不是？ 30 對了。

### 第六課

1 太太叫我吧？ 2 是的，叫廚子和看門的（門房）來，我要和你們說幾句話。 3 他們就來。哎，來了。 4 坐下吧。

5 不用坐，我們站着的好。 6 今天我很忙，要大家幫忙。

7 太太叫我們做什麼，我們照辦就是了。 8 先把喫飯的家具拿來，我要看一看。 9 太太是叫我們把刀子、叉子、調匙和勺子，都要拿來嗎？ 10 是的，也要拿茶盃、碗。

碟子、和盤子。 11 這些東西拿來了，叫我們放在那裡呢。

12 把他們都放在桌子上。 13 太太今天晚上不是請客

嗎？ 14 不是晚上請客，是今天下午請幾個人來喝茶。

15 那麼太太得叫廚房多烤麪包和點心。 16 黃油和菓

子醬多不多？ 17 這些都夠十來個客人喫。 18 家具

也夠十來個人用嗎？ 19 不大夠，要是刀子叉子不夠的

時候，可以預備筷子叫他們使。 20 只怕有的人不會使

筷子。 21 那倒沒有法子了。

## 第七課

1 先生好嗎？

2 謝謝、先生你好。(P)承問承問。

3 先

- 生(您)喫了飯沒有? 4 喫了,先生(您)喫了嗎? 還沒有喫。
- 5 偏過了。(P) 6 貴姓。(P) 姓什麼?(C) 7 賤或敝姓王。(P)
- 我姓王。(C) 8 台甫? 9 草字清長。(P) 10 名字叫什麼或什麼名字。(C) 11 名叫清長或清長。(C) 12 先生多大年紀?或先生多大歲數? 13 五十五或五十五歲。
- 14 先生貴庚?或先生貴甲子?。(P) 15 先生高壽? 16 兄弟還小,虛度了五十五歲。(P) 17 先生貴國?或貴國是那一個?或貴國是那裡?。(P) 18 不敢當,敝國英國。(P) 19 先生是那裡來的?。(C) 20 我是南京來的。 21 先生貴處?或府上在那裡?。(P) 22 不敢當,敝處北平。 23 北平離這裡多遠?。(P) 24 三百多里路。 25 先生往那裡去? 26 我上漢

口去。 27 閣下是走水路、還是走旱路來的呢？ 28 我  
 沒有走水路、也沒有走旱路、我是坐飛機來的。 29 走了幾  
 天的工夫？ 30 一共四天的工夫。 31 哎呀、非常的快。

## 第八課

1 家裡有幾個人？ 2 統共六個。 3 父母還在嗎？或父  
 母都在不在？ 4 父親在、母親不在了。 5 令尊高壽？(P)  
 6 八十二歲。 7 令堂去世是多大年紀？(P) 8 五十六歲。  
 9 可惜可惜。 10 先生有寶眷沒有？(P) 11 還沒有成  
 家。(P) 12 先生訂了婚沒有？ 13 訂了。 14 先生結了  
 婚嗎？ 15 結了婚了。 16 先生有幾個孩子？ 17 四個。

18 男的有幾個。(位)<sup>(P)</sup> 19 兩個男的、兩個女的。 20 好

福氣。 21 托福托福。<sup>(P)</sup> 22 先生令郎幾位。<sup>(P)</sup> 23 小

犬兩個。<sup>(P)</sup> 24 令媛有幾位。<sup>(P)</sup> 24a 小女兩個。 25 先生

貴幹或先生有什麼差事或先生辦什麼公幹或先生幹什麼

事。<sup>(C)</sup> 26 我是個商人或我做買賣。 27 先生奉了教沒

有。 28 在教。 29 是耶穌教、還是天主教呢。 30 我是

耶穌教(或基督教)。 31 這裡有耶穌教堂或這裡有福音

堂。 32 有牧師女教士在這裡嗎。 33 有女教士、沒有

牧師。 34 先生什麼時候到的中國。 35 我是三個月以

前來的。 36 哎呀先生說的中國話真好。 37 過獎過

獎。我不過會講幾句。

38 再見再見。

## 第九課

### A 數目字

TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE	
1	一。
2	二。
3	兩。
4	三。
5	四。
6	五。
7	六。
8	七。
9	八。
10	九。
11	十。
12	兩個人。
13	兩本書。
14	十一。
15	十二。
16	十三。
17	十四。
18	十五。
19	十六。
20	十七。
21	十八。
22	十九。
23	二十。
24	二十一。
25	二十二。
26	二十三。
27	二十四。
28	二十五。
29	二十六。
30	二十七。
31	二十八。
32	二十九。
33	三十。
34	三十一。
35	三十二。
36	三十三。
37	三十四。
38	三十五。
39	三十六。
40	三十七。
41	三十八。
42	三十九。
43	四十。
44	四十一。
45	四十二。
46	四十三。
47	四十四。
48	四十五。
49	四十六。
50	四十七。
51	四十八。
52	四十九。
53	五十。
54	五十一。
55	五十二。
56	五十三。
57	五十四。
58	五十五。
59	五十六。
60	五十七。
61	五十八。
62	五十九。
63	六十。
64	六十一。
65	六十二。
66	六十三。
67	六十四。
68	六十五。
69	六十六。
70	六十七。
71	六十八。
72	六十九。
73	七十。
74	七十一。
75	七十二。
76	七十三。
77	七十四。
78	七十五。
79	七十六。
80	七十七。
81	七十八。
82	七十九。
83	八十。
84	八十一。
85	八十二。
86	八十三。
87	八十四。
88	八十五。
89	八十六。
90	八十七。
91	八十八。
92	八十九。
93	九十。
94	九十一。
95	九十二。
96	九十三。
97	九十四。
98	九十五。
99	九十六。
100	九十七。
101	九十八。
102	九十九。
103	一百。
104	一百一十。
105	一百一十(或一百一)。
106	一百一十二。
107	一百一十三。
108	一百一十四。
109	一百一十五。
110	一百一十六。
111	一百一十七。
112	一百一十八。
113	一百一十九。
114	一百二十。
115	二百。
116	二百零一。
117	二百零二。
118	二百零三。
119	二百零四。
120	二百零五。
121	二百零六。
122	二百零七。
123	二百零八。
124	二百零九。
125	二百一十。
126	二百一十一。
127	二百一十二。
128	二百一十三。
129	二百一十四。
130	二百一十五。
131	二百一十六。
132	二百一十七。
133	二百一十八。
134	二百一十九。
135	二百二十。
136	三百。
137	三百零一。
138	三百零二。
139	三百零三。
140	三百零四。
141	三百零五。
142	三百零六。
143	三百零七。
144	三百零八。
145	三百零九。
146	三百一十。
147	三百一十一。
148	三百一十二。
149	三百一十三。
150	三百一十四。
151	三百一十五。
152	三百一十六。
153	三百一十七。
154	三百一十八。
155	三百一十九。
156	三百二十。
157	四百。
158	四百零一。
159	四百零二。
160	四百零三。
161	四百零四。
162	四百零五。
163	四百零六。
164	四百零七。
165	四百零八。
166	四百零九。
167	四百一十。
168	四百一十一。
169	四百一十二。
170	四百一十三。
171	四百一十四。
172	四百一十五。
173	四百一十六。
174	四百一十七。
175	四百一十八。
176	四百一十九。
177	四百二十。
178	五百。
179	五百零一。
180	五百零二。
181	五百零三。
182	五百零四。
183	五百零五。
184	五百零六。
185	五百零七。
186	五百零八。
187	五百零九。
188	五百一十。
189	五百一十一。
190	五百一十二。
191	五百一十三。
192	五百一十四。
193	五百一十五。
194	五百一十六。
195	五百一十七。
196	五百一十八。
197	五百一十九。
198	五百二十。
199	六百。
200	六百零一。
201	六百零二。
202	六百零三。
203	六百零四。
204	六百零五。
205	六百零六。
206	六百零七。
207	六百零八。
208	六百零九。
209	六百一十。
210	六百一十一。
211	六百一十二。
212	六百一十三。
213	六百一十四。
214	六百一十五。
215	六百一十六。
216	六百一十七。
217	六百一十八。
218	六百一十九。
219	六百二十。
220	七百。
221	七百零一。
222	七百零二。
223	七百零三。
224	七百零四。
225	七百零五。
226	七百零六。
227	七百零七。
228	七百零八。
229	七百零九。
230	七百一十。
231	七百一十一。
232	七百一十二。
233	七百一十三。
234	七百一十四。
235	七百一十五。
236	七百一十六。
237	七百一十七。
238	七百一十八。
239	七百一十九。
240	七百二十。
241	八百。
242	八百零一。
243	八百零二。
244	八百零三。
245	八百零四。
246	八百零五。
247	八百零六。
248	八百零七。
249	八百零八。
250	八百零九。
251	八百一十。
252	八百一十一。
253	八百一十二。
254	八百一十三。
255	八百一十四。
256	八百一十五。
257	八百一十六。
258	八百一十七。
259	八百一十八。
260	八百一十九。
261	八百二十。
262	九百。
263	九百零一。
264	九百零二。
265	九百零三。
266	九百零四。
267	九百零五。
268	九百零六。
269	九百零七。
270	九百零八。
271	九百零九。
272	九百一十。
273	九百一十一。
274	九百一十二。
275	九百一十三。
276	九百一十四。
277	九百一十五。
278	九百一十六。
279	九百一十七。
280	九百一十八。
281	九百一十九。
282	九百二十。
283	一千。
284	一千零一。
285	一千零二。
286	一千零三。
287	一千零四。
288	一千零五。
289	一千零六。
290	一千零七。
291	一千零八。
292	一千零九。
293	一千一十。
294	一千一十一。
295	一千一十二。
296	一千一十三。
297	一千一十四。
298	一千一十五。
299	一千一十六。
300	一千一十七。
301	一千一十八。
302	一千一十九。
303	一千二十。

怎樣的唸呢?

26 一百零五。

27 二百零九。

28 兩千

23 一百七。

24 七百六十八。

25 這個數目字翻出來是

或二千。 29 一千零八十九或一千八十九。 30 三千九

百零三。 31 三千九百三。 32 一萬。 33 一萬一千零

四十二。 34 三萬零五十六。 35 四萬零七個或四萬

零零七。 36 第一(頭一個)。 37 第十八。 38 第一百三

十五。 39 一半。 40 十分之一。 41 四分之三。

42 八分之七。 B 1 在地下有幾件東西。 2 等一等我

數數吧。 3 東西夠數不夠數呢。 4 我看少(差、短)着

一個。 5 那麼，他們必需補上。 6 今天是星期(禮拜)

幾。 7 今天是星期(禮拜)三。 8 今天初幾。今天十

幾。今天二十幾。 9 今天是初八。 10 頭一個月叫正



- 月、末一個月(或第十二個月)叫臘月。 11 其餘那幾個月  
 叫什麼? 12 二月、三月、四月、一直到十一月、都是一樣(都  
 是照例的)。 13 可是十一月也叫冬月。 14 年底是什  
 麼意思? 15 年底就是臘月最後幾天的意思。 16 過  
 年是什麼意思? 17 過年就是新年頭一天的意思。  
 18 把這些玩藝兒分開給孩子玩。 19 把這些糖也分給  
 他們。 20 可以每個人給他一份。 21 我已經分了兩次。

## 第十課

- 1 你身上帶了表沒有?  
 2 沒有但是對面兒有鐘。  
 3 你看有幾點鐘。  
 4 我近視眼、看不清楚。  
 5 我看

見了、現在是(有)一點鐘。

6 哎、我約了一個朋友十二

點半鐘見面、已經耽誤了。

7 也許他還在等你。

8 恐怕他等不到我、走了。

9 現在幾點鐘？

10 一點

過一刻(或一點一刻)。

11 要是十二點一刻、我還可以

趕得上。

12 要是十二點差一刻、那就更好。

13 現在

幾點鐘。

14 一點二十五分、

15 那麼、再等十分鐘、就

是兩點差二十五分、是不是？

16 不錯、不錯。

17 去年

夏天你上那兒避暑去的？

18 去年我們那兒也沒有去、

前年我們到嶗山去避暑的。

19 你從嶗山回來以後、做

了什麼？

20 什麼也沒有做、我在家裡閒着。

21 從前

你不是愛打網球嗎？  
 22 那個時候、打網球、踢足球都是我喜歡的。  
 23 那麼、你後天來和我打網球好嗎？  
 24 大後天行不行？  
 25 不敢說、因為前天我和一個朋友約好、大後天和 he 打牌。  
 26 那麼、就是後天吧。  
 27 好、你帶兩個球拍子來。

### 第十一課

1 你有表沒有？  
 2 沒有、但是我家裡有一座鐘。  
 3 那個鐘對不對？  
 4 不對、那個鐘走得慢。  
 5 我的表走得快。  
 6 那麼、得把快慢改一改。  
 7 改了也沒有用。  
 8 怎樣沒有用呢？  
 9 我的表走的沒有準。  
 10 那麼、

你的表得修理。 11 不錯，可是不知道誰能替我修理。

12 我認得一個鐘表匠。 13 好，你拿我的表，叫他看看，好

不好。 14 可以，不過今天上午我沒有工夫。 15 下午

你有工夫沒有？ 16 不一定，你把表給我，要是後半天有

工夫，我就給你送去。 17 勞駕勞駕。 18 那沒有什麼。

19 今天晚上，我請幾個朋友喫飯，你能來不能來？

20 不敢當，我還有事。 21 你最好能來。我請你陪客？

22 喫飯要幾個鐘頭？ 23 大概用兩個鐘頭。 24 喫了

飯以後要打牌嗎？ 25 隨便，我自己倒想下幾盤棋。

26 你們下棋，大家可以出去逛一逛。 27 那倒不行，女客

可以做針線、男客喫煙譚吧。 28 咱們不到半夜以前  
不會分手的。 29 十一黑鐘以前回去就好。

## 第十二課

- 1 把窗戶關上。 2 恐怕關不上。 3 怎麼關不上。  
4 有毛病。 5 有什麼毛病。 6 這幾天天氣發潮、叫  
窗戶框子走了縫。 7 那麼得叫木匠來修理修理。  
8 是的、我叫李司夫來看一看。 9 前門鎖上了沒有？  
10 鎖上了、或鎖不上、那個鎖上了銹。 11 拿鑰匙來、試  
一試。 12 最好先塗一點兒油。 13 你說的對、先塗一  
點兒油吧。 14 把後門開開吧。 15 那個門我已經開了。

- 16 不要再關上。 17 要是把門敞開，恐怕小偷進來偷東西。
- 18 可不是嗎，不如把門關上。 19 這個瓶子的塞子，我取不出來。 20 那是因為沒有合式的東西，得用一個螺絲轉。
- 21 把這個箱子（匣子、盒子、筒子）打開。 22 開這個箱子很費事。 23 怎樣費事呢？ 24 釘子太多，全都上銹了。 25 那個好辦。你上王先生那裡去借他的鉗子。 26 要是王先生不在家，問誰去借呢？
- 27 他家裡總有用人，就向他借好了。 28 是的，我就去。 29 你經過園子的時候，看看水井蓋上了沒有。 30 我今天清早打完了水，就把井蓋上了。 31 你那幾個桶子都

盛(倒)滿了水嗎。

32 家裡所有的桶子、我都盛滿了水。

33 園子裡那個大水缸裝的是髒水、你倒出去了沒有？

34 我把那個髒水、完全倒出去了、一點兒也沒有留。

35 我把一件事情忘記了。

36 是什麼事情？

37 咱們

井裡邊的水、是苦的、還是甜的呢？

38 是甜的、可以用來

煮飯泡茶。

### 第十三課

1 把這一張桌子搬到樓上去。

2 一個人搬不動、得叫

幾個人來幫忙。

3 要幾個人幫忙？

4 至少要三個

人。

5 雇三個人來抬桌子、經濟不上算。

6 可真不

上算，不如雇他們一天的工夫，還可以叫他們做別的事情。

7 那是自然的，還有什麼事叫他們做呢？ 8 事情倒不

少，他們可以打掃院子，收拾廚房。 9 雇這種人，一天得

給多少工錢？ 10 這樣的人都算小工，一天給他六毛錢

就行。 11 雇兩個人不夠嗎？ 12 不夠，這個桌子很重，

兩個人抬不動。 13 那麼就雇三個人吧，他們幾點鐘上

工？ 14 早上六點鐘上工，晚上六點鐘下工。 15 休息

幾個鐘頭？ 16 中午他們要歇一個半鐘頭。 17 就這

樣的辦吧。 18 把這幾把椅子搬到那邊去。 19 那邊

沒有空地，我想放在外頭好。 20 可是把椅子老丟



在外邊不大好，還不如拿到地蔭子裡面去。 21 我想起

一個好法子了。 22 是什麼法子？ 23 先把這一條長

桌子、搬到客房裡去。 24 是的，以後再做什麼呢？

25 再把這一條凳子掉過來，就有地方放這幾把椅子了。

26 是的，就這樣的辦吧。 27 先生得先讓我把桌子上的

東西搬走。 28 自然，再換一張乾淨的桌布。 29 晚上

請客不請客？ 30 請四位客，所以要收拾飯廳。 31 大

司夫曉不曉得？ 32 曉得，我昨天吩咐了他。 33 那麼，

我就好好兒的預備。 34 好，地毯要掃一掃，席子要翻過

來，器具要洗乾淨，端飯的時候要伶俐，什麼都要整整齊齊

的。  
35 是的、聽先生的吩咐。

### 第十四課

- 1 這個東西有多重？  
2 一石九斤半。  
3 請你給我  
稱一稱這個包裹、沒有過重吧。  
4 過了重了。  
5 究竟有多重？  
6 八斤七兩八錢。  
7 這個口袋裡有多  
少糧食。  
8 有一石六斗七升。  
9 再談一談尺寸吧。  
10 那倒容易明白、十分就是一寸、十寸就是一尺、十尺就是一丈。  
11 可是有的時候、我聽人說、幾步幾步、這是什麼意思？  
12 哎、是的、一步就是五尺。  
13 那麼、兩步也是一丈、是不是？  
14 不錯、還得知道一百八十丈、就是

一里。 15 那麼，三里就是差不多和一英里一樣遠。

16 差不多。 17 做一條褲子，得用多少材料？ 18 那看

材料的寬狹。 19 比方說，材料是二尺寬用多少？

20 二尺寬的材料，得用一丈二尺的布。 21 一個人跑一

小時（二點鐘）能跑多遠。 22 全世界最快的記錄，就是

十英里。 23 哎喲，一個人想破了這個記錄，很費事。

24 不錯，不錯。

### 第十五課

1 明天中午我要請三個客。 2 太太想喫什麼飯？

3 先預備幾個小碟子。 4 要肉湯不要？ 5 要鷄湯。

6 太太喫什麼肉？現在羊肉貴一點兒。 7 這幾天天氣

熱，喫涼菜也行，比如火腿、鷄片、牛舌頭等等。 8 再加

土豆、菠菜。 9 可是得把菜煮熟啦。 10 太太也要

喫甜的嗎？ 11 是的，預備冰淇淋和點心吧。 12 要奶

餅和餅乾不要？ 13 要，末了還要喝咖啡。 14 太太不

要水果嗎？ 15 買蘋果、梨、葡萄吧。 16 還要喝酒嗎？

17 黃酒就行，也要呂宋煙。 18 也許有一兩位客人是戒

酒的，最好先預備幾瓶汽水。 19 不錯。 20 擺桌子得

找一個幫忙的。 21 你可以找老媽到廚房幫忙好了。

22 另外預備水煙袋，也許有人想抽水煙。 23 桌子上也

要擺糖、牛奶、鹽、胡椒麪、醋、醬油、和芥末吧。

24 牙籤

也不要忘了。

### 第十六課

1 街上有洋車(或黃包車)沒有?

2 有是有、不過不很多。

3 你趕快去給我雇一輛。

4 太太上那裡去?

5 我

要上李太太那裡去。

6 太太要雇來回車嗎?

7 雇

洋車是論里數、還是論鐘點呢?

8 多半是論鐘點。

9 那麼、最好雇他三個鐘頭。

10 太太要我和他講價錢

嗎?

11 一個鐘頭、應該給他多少錢?

12 我說不準、一

個鐘頭、大概該給他五毛錢。

13 我以為五毛錢太多了

一點兒，你和他講價的時候，最好先少給他一點兒。

14 那不用說，我們做買賣，就是這樣。 15 可是我聽說

中國商界，現在都是「言不二價」。 16 大商店多半都是

定價，可是小買賣還是照舊講價。 17 那麼，你快一點兒

去，價錢越少越好。 18 那不用說，我盡力就是了。

19 也不要耽誤工夫，快快的回來吧。 20 我盡力的辦，

能早回來，我就早回來。

### 第十七課

1 趙小姐你認得不認得？ 2 認是認得，可是不大熟識。

3 她多大歲數，你知道不知道？ 4 不知道，我猜她是十

六歲上下。

5 她的父母都在世嗎？

6 她父親還在，

不過母親早去世了。

7 她早幾年去的世，你記得不記得？

8 不大清楚，我想她是五六年前去的世。

9 那麼，趙小

姐是可憐的。

10 實在可憐。

11 她家裡一共幾個人？

12 通共八個人。

13 他弟兄幾位？

14 三個弟兄，三個

姊妹。

15 趙小姐是行幾？

16 她行二，她有一個哥哥，

兩個兄弟，兩個妹妹。

17 那麼，照你的話，她也沒有姐

姐，也沒有母親。

18 不錯，她早就擔負家裡邊兒的責任，

也很懂家事。

19 趙小姐跟人訂了婚沒有？

20 不知

道，我可以給你打聽。

21 我很喜歡托你替我辦這件事。

22 盼望我能辦得妥當，不給你丟臉就是了。 23 咱們倆

是多年的老朋友，你也很懂禮貌，我看你不會叫我丟臉的。

24 豈敢豈敢，可是她親戚不少，不得罪一兩個人，是不容易

哪。 25 無論如何，你不要說謊，要是你碰見什麼難處，恐

怕過不去的時候，你回來詳詳細細的告訴我，就得了。

26 你那樣的出主意，我很佩服，我不會對你失信的。

27 好，事情辦成了，我就好好兒的酬謝你。 28 別提那

個，我不過是盡力幫朋友的忙吧了。

## 第十八課

1 這個東西好。

2 但是這個比那個好。

3 所以我



們說這個更好。 4 據我看，這是最好的東西。 5 也

可以說是頂(挺)好。 6 這個布不好，可是和那個一般

好。 7 這樣的布，不如那個好。 8 也可以說，這個

更不好。 9 還有一個說法，就是這個比那個壞。

10 可是頭一個說法比第二個說法強。 11 拿這一塊布

和那一塊比一比。 12 要叫我比一比那一方面呢？

13 先比一比長短，再把布的好歹比一比，再比一比顏色，掉

色不掉色。 14 這個布太貴，我買不起。 15 這個箱

子太重，我挪不動。 16 就是我們倆想抬也抬不動。

17 這裡有根棍子，不過是太粗，我們拿不住。 18 我們

買的東西太多、一個小車裝不下。

19 貨物實在太多、

兩個馬車也拉不動。

20 我們回到家的時候、恐怕一個

屋裡也放不下這些東西。

21 把他們堆起來、也許就裝

得下了。

22 可是得小心、把東西堆起太高、恐怕夠不着。

23 不過站在椅子上、或是小台子上、就夠着了。

24 有

台子這麼高、也就行。

25 可是也得看台子的寬狹怎

樣。

26 要是你比我先到家、可以和用人商量、怎麼辦

怎麼好。

27 要是我比你晚到怎樣呢？

28 要是我

比你先到家、必是因爲你走錯了路。

29 那麼、誰先到、

誰辦就是了。

## 第十九課

- 1 掌櫃的、恭喜發財。
- 2 托福、沒有什麼生意。
- 3 我要買綢子、有沒有？
- 4 有、先生要什麼樣兒的綢子、要好的、還是要次一點兒的呢？
- 5 要好的、綢子是怎樣買的、是論尺、還是論斤。
- 6 綢子是論尺買的、茶是論斤、信封是論個買的。
- 7 領教領教、讓我看幾樣綢子吧。
- 8 這個綢子頂好、材料耐久、也不掉色。
- 9 多少錢一尺？
- 10 七毛錢一尺。
- 11 未免稍微貴了一點兒、還有比這個賤一點兒的（便宜一點兒的）沒有？
- 12 有是有、可是別忘了「一分價錢一分貨」。
- 13 我雖是捨不得花那麼多的錢、不過這

個綢子的材料跟顏色都很好，給我量一丈五吧。 14 裁

縫做好了，太太穿上身，一定是很好看的。 15 櫃上有多

少人。 16 有二十多，都是懶的。 17 拿尺來量一量這

個綢子。 18 你有沒有做蚊帳的材料。 19 有哪，上中

下三等都有，太太喜歡那一種呢。 20 看看中等的吧，這

個材料，也可以做簾子嗎。 21 分量輕了一點兒，再重

一點兒的材料好。 22 我還要幾丈耐使一點兒的，做鋪蓋。

23 那倒好辦，我們也有很結實的布，做縲子很合式。

24 教我看看吧，可是你們快要關店門，不是嗎。 25 那沒

關係，關了店門還得清算當天的賬

## 第二十二課

- 1 要一雙鞋。  
 2 請坐，要的是幾號？  
 3 大概是八號。  
 4 先生要皮鞋，還是布鞋呢？  
 5 要皮鞋，穿布鞋不能擋泥水。  
 6 不錯，可是在家裡閒着，穿布鞋是很舒服的。  
 7 先把皮鞋拿來，試一試吧。  
 8 這一雙，我看大小合式。  
 9 太緊，再試一雙大一點兒的。  
 10 好，這雙正合式，舒服不舒服？  
 11 舒服，我就拿這一雙。在那兒可以買領子、領帶和帽子？  
 12 在對面兒興隆記商店。  
 13 你能夠把這雙鞋送到我的家裡去嗎？  
 14 行，先生府上在那兒？  
 15 上馬街四十六號。  
 16 那不遠，我就打

發一個夥計給先生送去。 17 叫他坐洋車、我給他開車費。 18 不必、給他幾個酒錢就得了。

### 第二十一課

1 你看一看這個地毯乾淨不乾淨？ 2 這屋子太暗、我看不大清楚。 3 把燈點上、就看得清楚了。 4 這一盞燈裡沒有油、點不亮。 5 家裡沒有安電燈、實在可惜。 6 不要緊、我就點一枝蠟燭。 7 有洋火沒有？ 8 我想口袋裡有一盒、可是找不着啦。 9 那就沒有法子。 10 我就把地毯拿到外邊兒去抖一抖。 11 好、我就給你幫忙把毯子捲起來（或疊起來）。 12 現在天氣涼、家裡

應當生火。

13 院子裡有炭(煤)沒有?

14 一點兒也、

沒有、今年還沒有買啦。

15 廚房有柴火沒有?

16 有、我就放在火爐裡去點。

17 沒有洋火怎樣辦呢?

18 我上隔壁人家去借去。

19 快去吧、我身上覺得冷、一

回來就生火吧。

20 太陽快下去的時候、人人都覺得冷。

21 你看那櫃子裡面有絨毯、拿出兩牀來。

22 先生躺一

躺、多蓋上一點兒、再多喝開水、出一點兒汗、過兩天就好啦。

23 開開那個抽屜、裏邊兒有發汗葯、我喫三兩顆、再把燈

滅了、我要睡覺。

第二十二課

- 1 拿熱水來、我要洗臉。      2 先生不要洗澡嗎？      3 恐  
怕熱水不夠洗澡。      4 也夠了、水很熱、添點冷水就不  
大離。      5 可是我也得刮臉、用冷水不行。      6 先生  
渴了嗎？我把一盃涼開水拿到樓上去了。      7 明天我要早  
早的起來、你五點鐘來叫我。      8 我看先生乏了、還是  
早點睡的好。      9 我明天起來的時候、要給我送溫水、洗  
手。      10 昨天你把牀沒有鋪好、我沒有睡好覺。      11 對  
不起先生、昨天事情太多、忙不過來。      12 要是你的事  
情太多、幹不過來的時候、我就該給你找一個幫忙的。



13 叫先生費心、不過還有一件事情和先生說。 14 是什

麼事情、你說吧。 15 現在城裡頭生活程度太高、過日子

很難。 16 你一個月掙多少錢？ 17 八塊錢一個月、不

夠用。 18 那麼、我就給你加三塊錢一個月、行不行。

19 勉強、謝謝。

### 第二十三課

1 我就把你天天應當辦的事說給你聽、每禮拜一、要洗衣服。  
2 把不乾淨的衣服送到洗衣店去、行不行？

3 教洗衣店洗衣服、不上算、乾淨的衣服送回來的時候、全是窟窿。  
4 那麼、叫裁縫補一補。  
5 是的、你看這

一件汗衫擗的地方太多。 6 洗衣店的工人不加小心、

不如家裡洗的好。 7 每禮拜二要收拾家裡的房屋、樓

上和樓下。 8 收拾客房和洗澡房是我的事、收拾飯廳

和廚房、是厨子的事、是不是。 9 另外還有書房和廁

所、這些歸誰辦呢。 10 平常這些都是看門的或是馬夫

幹的。 11 無論誰幹、家裡總得要乾淨整齊。 12 聽先

生的吩咐。 13 每禮拜六要擦銀子和玻璃器具、全房子

的地毯要抖一抖、或者挂在院子裡揮一揮。 14 這樣做、

灰塵很大、叫鄰居不喜歡。 15 那不相干、家裡得講究衛

生。 16 各人要講究各人的衛生、但是可不要妨碍人家

的衛生。

17 你說的有理、現在不要多說話、幹你的去吧。

18 先生給我一塊乾淨的抹布、我就去抹桌子、椅子、鏡子、  
一切的傢具。

19 好、也不要忘了抹傢具的時候、要把窗

戶開開換換空氣。

20 天氣好的時候、可以這樣辦、括

風下雨的時候、恐怕不行。

### 第二十四課

1 大司夫來算賬。

2 太太稍微等一等我拿賬簿和

鉛筆。

3 這個禮拜、你買了什麼東西、慢慢的說吧。

4 這個禮拜、我買了羊肉、白菜、地蛋、紅蘿蔔、雞蛋、花生

5 沒有買牛肉、鴨子、野鷄嗎。

6 這幾天市場上沒有這些東西、後天趕集、也許有賣的。

7 多日沒有喫白菜花、不是沒有呢。 8 有是有、可是

價錢太大、我不敢買。 9 大概因為不是時候、留心、

價落的時候就買。 10 太太喜歡喫生菜嗎、現在又

多又便宜。 11 喜歡喫、可是得小心、生菜總得先用開

水洗過、才敢喫。 12 今天我身上不舒服、發燒、恐怕

傷了風了。 13 我請大夫(醫生)來看一看、好不好。

14 不要請西醫、請中國先生給我開方子就行。 15 可是

賬還沒有算、統共花了多少錢。 16 統共花了十一塊

五毛六。 17 恐怕這個賬算錯了、你再算算。 18 我看沒

有算錯，我還剩下兩塊七。  
 19 恐怕你腦經不清楚，我  
 看你還下欠九毛。  
 20 也許太太算的對，我的腦子就  
 是昏一點兒。

## 第二十五課

1 明天我要出門。  
 2 先生上那兒去？  
 3 打算上普  
 天池去看一個朋友。  
 4 好，我願意陪您去，行不行？  
 5 但是你要帶你自己在路上喫的東西。  
 6 那不成問題，  
 先生幾點鐘起身？  
 7 在清早太陽剛上來的時候動身。  
 8 先生坐轎車，還是騎牲口呢？  
 9 也不坐轎車，也不  
 騎馬，我們步行吧。  
 10 那太費事，怎麼不坐汽車呢？

11 坐公共汽車不舒服、路道不平、顛簸的厲害。 12 普天

池離這裡多麼遠？ 13 大約十五里路。 14 那倒不遠、

步行也可以。 15 可是可以、但是必須帶一個冷熱水瓶子、

裝滿了開水去喝。 16 那個我倒忘不了、還有什麼該帶

的呢？ 17 也帶一個雨傘或雨衣「伏天肯下雨」。 18 先

生預料得好、我照辦就是了。 19 我們已經跑了十來

里路、我們在旅館停一會兒好不好？ 20 這條路上的旅

店不怎麼好、倒不如坐在路旁歇一會兒。 21 同意、我

們也可以喝一口水、喫幾塊餅乾。 22 哎、老先生、倒普

天池還有幾里路？ 23 不遠、還有五六里路。 24 前面

兒的路、好走不好走？

25 好走、不過村子外邊兒有幾個

泥坑就是了。

26 村子裡邊兒有飯館沒有？

27 沒有

好的、賣的也不過是家常便飯。

28 飯館好找不好找

呢？ 29 好找、一進村門、在路東的就是了。

30 勞駕

勞駕。

31 沒有什麼、理當的。

## 第二十六課

1 這個車是往北京開的車不是？

2 不是、這是往漢口

開的車。

3 往北京開的火車、是在那一個月台呢？

4 是第三號月台。

5 先生要打那一等的票？

6 這

一趟是快車還是慢車呢？

7 是慢車、可是頭二等都有。

8 挂的飯(餐)車沒有?

9 沒有飯(餐)車,可是有廚房。

10 車上能買什麼飯?

11 能買牛肉排、鷄子湯、炒鷄蛋等

等。

12 可以,找脚夫給我搬東西。

13 搬行李有一定

的價錢嗎?

14 兩個銅子一件,是定價,另外還得給幾個

酒錢。

15 那麼,我們上車吧。

16 一路平安。

17 替

我問候家裡邊兒的人。

18 火車是幾點鐘到北京?

19 那得看路上通不通。

20 這幾天貨車很多。

21 客

人也是不少。

22 看光景時局像要變更。

23 不錯,運

的隊伍也是多啦。

24 先生聽的什麼消息(新聞)?

25 沒有什麼可靠的消息,不過謠言倒不少。

26 盼望再



不要打戰、老百姓是苦極了。 27 軍閥不管那些、只打算擴充自己的地盤。 28 哎、才過的是通縣、還有兩個車站就到了北京。 29 跟先生談話、時間不覺得過的那麼快。 30 領過教不少。 31 那兒的話呢。

## 第二十七課

1 幾點鐘開船？ 2 聽說六點鐘開船。 3 現在幾點鐘？ 4 三點半鐘。 5 那麼、時候還早。 6 不錯。但是開船以前、我有些事情幹。 7 你打了船票沒有？ 8 打了票、不過行李還沒有收拾好啦。 9 那麼樣、你心裡自然有一點兒着急。 10 是的、幸虧有幾個朋友幫

忙。

11 好，先生趕快去辦吧，我不再耽誤您的工夫。

12 咱們船上再見。

13 再見。

14 先生暈船不暈船？

15 頭幾天，我覺得不很舒服，但是船上慣了，就不覺得怎樣。

16 先生到過外國沒有？

17 英國、法國、美國、

我都到過。

18 先生會說法國話嗎？

19 會說幾句通

常的話？

20 服那邊兒的水土不服？

21 將就吧。

22 那邊兒天氣怎麼樣？

23 夏天不像中國熱，冬天不像

中國冷。

24 先生也喫得慣法國飯嗎？

25 法國飯沒

有中國飯的滋味，不過喫上幾天，也就對付。

26 哎，

今天刮大風，船上不大穩當。

27 你看波浪怎樣的翻騰

起來、船搖擺得厲害。 28 別怕、只賸下三天的海路、船

就到了碼頭。 29 希望越早越好。 30 放心吧。

## 第二十八課

1 他跑的太快、我趕不上。 2 這個磚牆沒有縫兒、螺

絲轉鑽不進去。 3 這個水壺已經盛滿、再也裝不進

了。 4 我的事情太多、辦不到了(或忙不過來)。 5 你

要記得、俗語說的好、「忙者不會、會者不忙」。 6 這個桶

子裝的太緊、我拿不出來。 7 今天我帶的東西太多、賣

不出去。 8 這一塊木頭太硬、釘子也打不進去。 9 心

裡面的意思多、可是說不出來。 10 中國人有句俗話說、

「茶壺煮鷄蛋，倒不出來，就是這個意思。」

11 我的耳朵

聾了，他說話，我聽不出來。

12 他的眼睛瞎了，他什麼

也看不見。

13 他是近視眼，看不大清楚。

14 他是

個啞吧，話也不會說，人家說話，他也聽不見。

15 要是

瞎了眼，什麼也看不見。

16 他的胳膊發麻，你摩他他

也不覺得。

17 他失了知覺。

18 這一件衣裳太髒，我

洗不乾淨。

19 多使胰子，大大的使勁，就可以洗乾淨了。

### 第二十九課

1 天冷，我們穿棉袍或外套。

2 你們不穿皮襖嗎？

3 皮襖倒穿不起。

4 年輕的人喜歡洋裝。

5 那是

自然的。

6 夏天多穿夏布、綢子。

7 冬天穿皮鞋。

夏天穿布鞋。

8 戴的是草帽或遮陽帽。

9 女人的

衣裳、摩登一點兒才好。

10 袖子、掛子、都是短的。

11 襪子現在是很長。

12 學生有穿西裝的嗜好。

13 理髮也是洋裝的多。

14 辮子是老不見了。

15 梳

一梳頭髮。

16 刷一刷頭髮和牙齒。

17 衣服要齊整。

掛子要扣好。

18 指甲要修整、手、臉要保持乾淨。

19 出門要帶洗臉盆、擦臉布、和手絹、也不要忘了帶牙刷。

20 早起早睡、每天運動、是保持康健的好方法。

21 把自

己所學的教給別人、也是長知識的法子。

22 你碰見窮

苦人、要體恤他們。

23 人沒有飯喫、該賑濟他們。

24 要飯的未必然是窮。

25 孩子們要教訓他們守規矩。

### 第三十課

1 中國話難學不難學呢？

2 寫字不難、說話不容易。

3 說話怎樣不容易、難處在那兒呢？

4 外國人說中國話、

難處在四聲的多。

5 這四聲是什麼、或什麼叫做四聲？

6 第一叫上平（或陰平）、第二叫下平（或陽平）、第三叫上

（賞）聲、第四叫去聲。

7 我聽說、說中國話有五聲、對

不對？

8 也不能說不對、因為有的地方、他們加上一個

人聲。

9 學中國話、用什麼法子好呢？

10 請一位中

國人當先生，你一句一句的跟着他唸。

11 我跟着他唸的

時候，盡心的效法他的口音，對不對？

12 對了，不過是

有的人說國語，也有不少的人說土話。

13 外國人還

是學國語好，是不是？

14 不錯，現在各處都通行國語。

15 領教先生，寫中國字是用那樣的筆好？

16 寫中國

字，還是用毛筆的好。

17 用鋼筆行不行？

18 行是

行，不過沒有毛筆好。

19 我看見過有人用鉛筆。

20 有

的是，不過我還是勸你從起頭要用毛筆。

21 領教領教。

### 第三十一課

1 我請先生費心替我做一件事。

2 不客氣，你要我替

你做什麼？<sup>3</sup> 我向來沒有向先生求過什麼。<sup>4</sup> 現在

你究竟要什麼呢？<sup>5</sup> 盼望將來先生提拔我的兒子。

<sup>6</sup> 他現在做什麼事？<sup>7</sup> 從前他在辦公室當書記。

<sup>8</sup> 爲什麼他要另外找工作？<sup>9</sup> 起初的時候，他們對他

很好，以後就漸漸的冷淡起來了。<sup>10</sup> 他們對待他的態

度改變，必定有一個緣故。<sup>11</sup> 他們以前待他厚，以後待

他薄，沒有什麼道理。<sup>12</sup> 也許他們經濟上有困難吧。

<sup>13</sup> 先生說的對，所以他們減少了他的薪水。<sup>14</sup> 他們還

沒有打發他走吧？<sup>15</sup> 到現在還沒有，恐怕不久他們就

一定不要他了。<sup>16</sup> 既然如此，我也不能不幫忙。



17 千萬請先生費心。

18 沒有什麼，這是理所當然的。

19 他要是將來找到一個好事情，真是托先生的福。

20 那兒的話，慢慢走。

### 第三十二課

1 先生會說英國話嗎？

2 會一兩句，太不夠用，先生

會講中國話嗎？

3 我正在學呢，還不大會。

4 先生

很知道敝國的風俗。

5 知道的有限，我來領教領教。

6 先生太謙虛，太客氣。

7 我來打聽貴縣人民的情

形。

8 很好，先生想知道那一方面的事情？

9 先談

教育一方面。

10 每個村子有初等小學，大一點的鎮子

有高等小學、縣裡有中學。 11 學校裡也收女生嗎？

12 不錯，各學校都是男女在一塊兒上學。 13 老百姓都

識字嗎？ 14 識字的不多，今年要提倡一個識字運動。

15 教師是在那兒畢業的？ 16 教師是本省師範學校畢

業的多。 17 也有女教師嗎？ 18 有是有，不過不多。

19 今年莊稼怎麼樣？ 20 今年年頭很豐盛，百姓都很平靜。

21 這邊兒種的是什麼莊稼多？ 22 麥子多，不過也有小

米、油、麥、棉花、旱烟。 23 那麼，百姓納糧不費事。 24 也

很難說，不過比別的縣分強。 25 貴處人民也很講究衛

生嗎？ 26 不大講究，常常發生時症。 27 這邊兒有

土匪沒有。<sup>28</sup> 沒有這邊兒的警察和軍官都盡職。  
<sup>29</sup> 我想貴縣不愧模範縣。  
<sup>30</sup> 過獎過獎。

## 第三十三課

1 你要是願意，就可以醫治我的病。  
 2 雖然我願意，還是不能治你的病。  
 3 你既是不能治我的病，你該介紹我給別的大夫。  
 4 我也給你寫介紹信，也送你到大夫那裡去。  
 5 這樣做，一定對我很有益，可是我不想去。  
 6 爲什麼你不想去？  
 7 因爲我不認識他，和他不熟習。  
 8 你縱然和他不熟，你也可以放心，因爲我知道

他是一個好大夫、擔保他能醫治你。 9 你既然這樣的

勸我、我就遵命就是了。 10 你這樣的聽我勸、我也很高

興。 11 我不得不照着你所說的去做。 12 你要小心、

不要把我給你的信丟了。 13 不怕、我不會丟掉的。

14 要是你跌倒了、就不敢擔保怎樣。 15 信要是掉下來

了、我就趕快把他拾起來。 16 大夫來到我這裡、或者我

到他那裡去、不是一樣的嗎。 17 不一樣、因為他那裡

有藥品、有藥布。 18 可是大夫還沒有給我看脈、也沒

有用溫度表量。 19 你也沒有告訴我、你身上那兒疼

啦、我看你熱度並不高、伸出舌頭來看一看。 20 疼、是

肚子疼啦、頭也疼啦。

21 大小便怎麼樣、通不通？

22 小便通啦、大便不通。

23 那麼、我給你配瀉藥、你不

要喝濃茶、常常喝淡茶吧。

24 請大夫給我配一副丸

藥吧、我不能喫藥粉。

### 第三十四課

1 趙先生的脾氣如何？

2 他是一個心平氣和的人。

3 聽說他的太太的脾氣不好。

4 你說的對、但是她的

丈夫給她立了一個好榜樣。

5 一個人要是不忍氣、常

常會發生麻煩。

6 不過趙先生是個好人、不願意家裡

邊發生囉唆。

7 他們家裡邊打過架沒有。

8 沒有。

但是有的時候、免不了起一點兒衝突。 9 有的時候、聽

見他們大聲吵嘴。 10 哎喲、這是家裡面常見的事。

11 先生看怎樣能把這種事減少。 12 一個人要是驕傲、

常常看不起別人。 13 一個人要是謙卑、就不會發生這

樣的事情。 14 他的太太總喜歡談論人家的長短。

15 那麼、我想她的丈夫和他不容易處。 16 不錯、但是

他盡量的忍耐、不惹她。 17 趙先生必定是一個聰明

通達的人。 18 對了、他深通儒學。

### 第三十五課

1 拿刀子來、割掉這一條繩子。 2 這條繩子太粗、用

刀子割不斷。

3

那麼、另外找一條比較細的繩子、或

是拿剪刀來絞一絞。

4

裁縫把剪子借去了。

5

他

借了我們的剪子去做什麼？

6

他說他自己的剪子太

鈍、得磨一磨。

7

裁縫是不是現在給我們做衣服？

8

是的、他是在給太太裁短外衣和長袍。

9

我知道太

太急於想穿短外衣、所以他借剪刀也有理由。

10

可是

有一件、恐怕裁縫把剪刀留起來了。

11 那算不了什

麼、最要緊的是要他早早的把短外衣做好、叫太太喜歡。

12 你怎麼不早給我說。

13

因為我不知道您在那裡。

14 不是因為你太懶、沒有用心找我吧。

15

不是的、我實

在找不着先生。 16 我並沒有離開這個地方、怎麼你說找不着我呢？ 17 那倒奇怪、我到處找您、那兒也找不着。 18 罷了、幹你的去吧。

### 第三十六課

1 把你們的書打開。 2 看第幾章第幾節。 3 你唸到第幾頁？ 4 每個學生、都要唸第二十五頁的第二章第一節。 5 所有的先生都要到會。 6 我和你們在一起的時、候、你們要盡量的發表你們的意見。 7 他和我們同行、做我們的領導。 8 我在諸位面前說這樣的 9 話、是不配的。 10 長官在軍隊中走來走去。 11 他在



路旁觀看。

11 那個房子正在對面兒。

12 領路的在前

面兒走。

13 護送的在後邊兒走。

14 朋友們並排的

向前走。

15 你站在當中吧。

16 不要往一塊兒擠。

17 大家要散開。

18 相離遠一點兒的好。

19 彼此

讓步。

20 大家前進吧。

21 這幾年他進了步。

22 他的妹妹退了步。

23 官長一進來，大家就站起來，

脫帽鞠躬。

24 向左向右，都是聽教師的命令。

25 衣、食、住、三要素。

26 穿得暖、喫得飽，是人人所要。

### 第三十七課

1 今天過節，各機關放假，我們旅行，好不好？

2 很好。

我們下鄉去一同喫野餐。

3 贊成、盼望天氣要暖利。

4 就是陰天也不要緊、最可怕的就是閃電、打雷。

5 可

是夏天不會下雪的。

6 不錯、可是難保不下雹子。

7 冬天下霜、山上的樹多麼好看。

8 好看是好看、

不過河跟湖裡邊兒都結了凍、很不方便。

9 可是現

在是秋天、不是冬天、我們又不打算坐船、我們要步行。

10 今晚的月亮、應該是圓的、天氣清朗的時候、星星又該多麼的好看。

11 要不起霧才好、好不好我們現在就走吧。

12 可以、哎喲、天氣涼快、景緻也好、花都開了、在草地上面走、多麼舒服。

13 你看山坡上的廟、山頂上的塔、多麼

好看。

14 我們上廟上去跟和尚談一談。

15 我看這

座廟是道教，不是佛教。

16 那沒有關係，咱們上去再

說吧。

17 哎，這些蒼蠅和螞蟻，討厭不討厭。

18 幸虧

這裡沒有蚊子，蚊子咬人咬得厲害。

19 哎，看看駱駝、

驢子、毛驢可多啦。

20 總是廟上開香會，客人倒不少。

21 可不是嗎，有人抱孩子，有人背着行李，還有人挑水。

22 很熱鬧，必是在唱戲。

23 咱們上廟上去看看。

24 哎，借光借光。

25 看戲有什麼好處？

26 或去或

不去，你得拿定主意。

27 不如趁着這個機會，去看一次

戲吧。

28 我看沒有別的辦法，人這樣的湧擠，想回也

回不去。 29 幸虧我們沒有多扛東西，那裡有人牽了  
一匹馬，怕踩了人。 30 危險得很。

### 第三十八課

- 1 在家千日好，在外時時難。 2 受得苦中苦，方爲人上人。  
3 真金子不怕火煉。 4 種瓜得瓜，種豈得豈。  
5 啞子喫黃連，雖苦不能言。 6 路遙知馬力，日久見人心。  
7 吹毛求疵。 8 不怕慢，只怕站。 9 遠水救不了近  
火。 10 坐井觀天。 11 騎虎難下。 12 一個人腳踏  
兩隻船。 13 不到河邊不脫鞋。 14 前人栽樹，後人乘  
涼。 15 十鳥在樹，不如一鳥在手。 16 人是舊的好，衣

服是新的好。

17 謀事在人、成事在天。

18 今天脫了

鞋和襪、不知明天穿不穿。

19 瞎貓碰死老鼠。

20 善有善報、惡有惡報、善惡不報、時候未到。

21 善門

難開、善門難閉。

### 第三十九課

1 對面兒那座石頭造的房子是什麼。

2 你問的是插

旗桿的那個房子嗎？

3 是的、挂國旗的那個房子。

4 哎、那是愛國電影院、你要看電影嗎？

5 城裡的銀行

幾點鐘關門？

6 銀行三點鐘關門、錢舖一直開到九點

鐘。

7 我這裡有一張滙票、(支票)要兌成現錢、才能看

電影。

8

錢店也給你換，也不扣錢。

9

那麼，我們

先上郵政局，我要打電報給我內人。

10 郵政局離這兒

遠呀，還是電報局比較近。

11 不過我一定要把這兩封

掛號信，寄給我公司的大班。

12 一封掛號信，貼多少

郵票？

13 那我不曉得，我們上局子裡去問一問。

14 好，哎，過來的就是一個同鄉，好呀，想不到在這兒碰見

你，你忙什麼？

15 哎，了不得，我的祖父給汽車絆倒了，受

了重傷，我現在上醫院看他去。

16 可惜可惜，不敢留

攔你，替我問候令祖吧。

17 謝謝，再見。

18 咱們到

館子裡喫東西吧，我肚子餓了，

19 可以，我不想喫什

麼東西，可是我嘴乾了，我要喝一盃啤酒。

20 哎，這個館

子不錯，還有音樂隊聽。

21 那不是音樂隊，不過是留聲

機的響聲。

22 我看是無線電廣播的音樂。

23 可不

是嗎，我聽說這兒差不多每晚上都有跳舞，你會跳舞不會？

24 會是會，我今天太累了，不想跳舞。

25 那麼，我們就

去看電影吧，一面休息，一面長知識。

26 不錯，我以為

那倒更有興趣（趣味）。

#### 第四十課

1 我這一輩子的工夫，就碰到了兩次的世界大戰。

2 爲

什麼世界上不能夠維持和平呢？

3 根本就是因爲國家

跟國家、種族跟種族之間、發現不公平的事項。<sup>4</sup> 你的

意思是說必先取消一切不公平的事、才能盼望得到一個和平的世界嗎？<sup>5</sup> 世界上發生戰事、多半是因為我剛

才說過的原故、不過人人都有了一個自私的心、這也不可不注意的。<sup>6</sup> 不錯、人的自私心、實在難於去掉。<sup>7</sup> 可

是現在的第二次大戰已經完了、德國、意國、日本、都已經投降了。<sup>8</sup> 哎喲、中國抵抗日本的侵略、已經八年了。

<sup>9</sup> 兩邊死傷的人、都非常的多啦。<sup>10</sup> 實在不少、房子

被炸彈炸壞了的、也是很多。<sup>11</sup> 盟軍已經戰勝了、德國

和日本、已經打敗了、你想將來還會發生戰事嗎、



12 不敢說一定，但是這一次戰爭用的武器，非常的殘暴，也許各國都受了這種恐嚇，再不敢宣戰了。

13 我相信是

這樣，並且今年六十多國，組織了一個聯合會，要盡力的維持世界和平。

14 頂好，但是我看在必要時，還得用聯

合的軍力，如海軍、陸軍、空軍的力量來幫助，會議才能有美滿的效果。

15 同意啦，現在的政治主義很複雜，有

民主主義、共產主義，還有其他的革命的，和守舊的各種政治上的派別。

16 那倒不要緊，不怕政治上的黨派

多，只怕衆人不注意政治上的事情。

•

## GRAMMAR

## GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1. The Article.

The INDEFINITE article, *i.e.*, a, or an, is expressed by the numerical adjective “I” (one), followed by a “classifier”, which varies according to the noun it precedes, or which may be understood. (See 8, below.)

The most frequently used “classifier” is “ko” 個 which may be translated “piece”, *e.g.*, “I ko jên”, a man.

Other “classifiers” in common use are given in a separate paragraph below. (See 8.)

The DEFINITE article, *i.e.*, the, appears only in relative clauses, and then, as in all other cases, its place is taken by the distinguishing adjectives “chê ko” 這個 This, and “na ko” 那個 That. *E.g.*, The man whom I mentioned is “Wo so shuo ti na ko jên”. This man is “Chê ko jên”. That man is “Na ko jên”.

### 2. Distinguishing Adjectives.

We have already pointed out that “chê ko” means “this” and “na ko” means “that”. If the plurals “these” and “those” are required, they are formed by the addition of “hsieh” 些 to “chê” and “na” respectively, *e.g.*, These men, “Chê hsieh jên”. Those men, “Na hsieh jên”.

If you wish to distinguish definitely this group of men from another, you say “Chê i hsieh jên”, 這一些人 This group of men, or “Na i hsieh jên”, 那一些人 That group of men.

### 3. Personal Pronouns.

The personal pronouns are as follows: “Wo”, 我 I, me. “Ni”, 你 You. “T’a”, 他 He, she, it.

The plural of these is formed by the addition of "mên", 們: "Wo-mên", 我們 We, us. "Ni-mên", 你們 You. "T'a-mên", 他們 They, them.

Formerly there was no distinction of gender in these pronouns, but more recently the distinction is sometimes made by writing the character "nü" 女 at the left-hand side of the characters, especially for "ni" 妳 and "t'a" 她 to express the feminine gender.

#### 4. The Possessive Sign.

The most commonly used mark of the possessive is "ti" 的, which is added to the pronoun or noun which it qualifies, *e.g.*, "Wo ti mao tzu", My hat. "Ni-mên ti tung-hsi", Your (pl.) things. "Na ko jên ti shu", That man's book.

There is another mark of the possessive "chih" 之 but this has a somewhat literary flavour, and is only occasionally used in common speech. It is used in exactly the same way as "ti".

Frequently the possessive is expressed in other ways, one of the more common being to use the distinguishing adjectives "chê ko", "na ko", etc., after the personal pronouns, *e.g.*, "Wo chê ko tung hsi", This thing of mine. "T'a na hsieh yen chüan'rh", Those cigarettes of his.

#### 5. Interrogative Pronouns.

Who? is "Shui", 誰. Whose? is "Shui ti", 誰的 *e.g.*, Who is that? "Na ko jên shih shui". Whose are those things? "Na hsieh tung hsi shih shui ti".

Which? is expressed by "Na ko", the "na" being in the third tone, *e.g.*, "Na<sup>3</sup> ko shih ni ti", Which is yours?

When you wish to distinguish one of two things, or one of more, you should say "Na<sup>3</sup> i ko shih ni ti", Which one is yours?

What? is usually expressed by "Shih mo", which is the popular form of "shên mo", *e.g.*, What is this? is "Chê ko shih shih mo".

## 6. Nouns.

Nouns are not divided artificially into different genders as in French or other Continental languages. But unless the gender is self-evident from the word itself, there are words for male and female of persons and animals, which are prefixed to the noun. *E.g.*, "Ni yu chi ko hai tzu", How many children (no sex indicated) have you? "Wo yu san ko nan hai tzu", I have three boys ("nan" meaning male). "Ni yu nü hai mei yu", Have you any girls? ("nü" being female).

Note that "nan", male, and "nü", female, are applied only to persons. The words to distinguish the sex of animals are "mu", 牡 male, and "p'in", 牝 female.

Usually the plural of nouns is indicated by the plural form of the distinguishing adjective which precedes them, *e.g.*, "Na hsieh jên shang na erh ch'ü", Where are those men going?

But "mên", the sign of the plural with personal pronouns, is sometimes applied to nouns denoting persons; rarely, if ever, to "things". *E.g.*, you can say "nan jên mên", males, "nü-jên mên", females, "hai-tzu mên", children, but you cannot say "kou mên", dogs.

*Abstract Nouns* are formed chiefly in two ways, as follows:—

(1) By joining together two adjectives of exactly opposite meaning; *e.g.*, "Ta-hsiao" (big-little) is size. "Ch'ang-tuan" (long-short) is length. "Yüan-chin" (far-near) is distance. "Kuei-chien" (dear-cheap) is price.

(2) By the addition of the word "ch'u" 處, meaning state or condition, to adjectives, *e.g.*, "hao ch'u",

benefit, advantage, "hai ch'u", harm, injury, "yung ch'u", use, usefulness, "nan ch'u", difficulty, etc.

7. **Cases of Nouns and Pronouns** are usually distinguished by the position of the word in the sentence; e.g., "Wo ai ni" is I love you, and "Ni ai wo" is You love me, as far as the Nominative and Objective or Accusative Cases are concerned.

It should, however, be noted that the Objective Case often precedes the verb of which it is the object. In such instances the object of the verbal action is usually prefixed by "pa", or "na", to take, e.g., "Pa ché ko tung hsi, fang tsai ché li", which means Put this thing here.

Many illustrations of this are given in the Dialogues.

*The Dative Case* is usually expressed by the words "kei", give, "t'i", instead of, or "wei", for, e.g., "Kei wo tso ché ko", Do this for me. "Wo pu nêng pa wo ti shu sung kei t'a", I cannot present my book to him. "Ni t'i wo wên hou ni chia li pie'rh ti jên", Inquire about the well-being of your family for me.

### 8. Classifiers.

This is a class of words, as has been indicated above, which is used with nouns, to help to distinguish them one from the other. Quite a number will be found in the Dialogues. Examples are given below:—

1. Ko, 個 Piece, the most common, used almost for anything.
2. Ting, 頂 Used with caps, hats, etc.
3. Kuan, 管 Used with slender long things, like pipes, pencils; etc.
4. Chan, 盞 Used with lamps, wine cups, etc.
5. Pa, 把 Used with teapots, teacups, etc.
6. Tso, 座 Used with hills, temples, towers, etc.
7. T'ou, 頭 Used with animals.

8. Chien, 件 Used with affairs, details.  
 9. K'o, 顆 Used of small round things, like pearls, beads, etc.  
 10. Ts'êng, 層 Used of layers, strata, anything piled up, in tiers, etc.  
 11. Chang, 張 Used with tables.

There are many others, which will be found in any good dictionary. The student should exercise care in using the right classifier with nouns, as this is a mark of a good speaker.

#### 10. Adjectives of Quality.

A whole Dialogue has been given to the subject of adjectives and their degrees of comparison. (See Dialogue 18.) There is therefore no need to go into any detail in this section. Note however that the adjectives are very simple, and do not change whatever their position in the sentence might be. You may say "Chê ko jên hao", This man is good, or "Chê shih i ko hao jên", This is a good man. "Ti" 的 is sometimes used when the adjective is in the predicative position, e.g., "Na ko tung hsi shih ko hao ti", That is a good thing.

11. **Adverbs of Manner** are formed from adjectives usually by the duplication of the adjective and the addition of "ti", 的, e.g., "Hao hao ti", Well. "Man man ti", Slowly. "Wan wan ch'üan ch'üan ti", Completely.

*Adverbs of Place and Time* have been fully illustrated in the Dialogues and do not call for special consideration here.

*Adverbs of Approximation*, nearly, about, etc., are usually formed by a phrase like "Ch'a pu to", "Ch'a pu li", "Pu ch'a shih mo", "Ch'a pu to shao", "Ta kai", "Ta yüeh", "Ta lüeh". Words like



“generally” by “Ta kai shuo”, “Lüeh lüeh ti shuo”. Other expressions like “shang hsia”, up, down, or “tso yu”, left, right, are used for approximate figures.

## 12. The Auxiliary Verbs “to be” and “to have”.

The verb “to be” is represented by the one word “shih” 是 and is the same for all persons and numbers. Changes in TENSE or MOOD are expressed by additional words or phrases of temporal, conditional or imperative significance.

Likewise the verb “to have” is represented by the one word “yu” 有 and remains the same for all persons and numbers, the tenses and moods being expressed by additional words or phrases.

## 13. The Regular Verb.

Taking the verb “to come” 來 as an example, the following concise paradigm applies to all, *viz.*:—

*Number and Person.* No change, the differences being expressed by the pronouns or adjectives which accompany the verb.

*Tense.*

*The Present Tense* is the simple form of the verb, *e.g.*, “Wo lai”, I come, or I am coming.

*The Past or Perfect Tense.* “Wo lai liao” (la), or “Wo lai kuo”, I came, or I have come.

*N.B.*—While these two enclitics “liao” (la) and “kuo” are both used in most parts of China as indicated, you should use “kuo” and not “liao” (la) when you wish to refer to the distant past of completed action, *e.g.*, Have you ever been to Peking? or Did you ever go to Peking? is “Ni ch’ü kuo Pei-ching mei yu”.

*The Future Tense* is formed by preceding the verb with a word of future significance, like “chiang”, 將

“yao”, 要 “chiu” 就 etc.; e.g., “T’a Chiang lai”, “T’a yao lai”, “T’a chiu lai”, or by two of these words in combination; e.g., “T’a chiu yao lai”, “T’a Chiang yao lai”, etc. There are other ways of expressing the relative immediacy of a person’s coming; e.g., “T’a li k’o chiu lai”, He is coming immediately, or, as in Dialogue No. 1, “Shuo hua chiu lai”, As you speak he comes, etc.

*Compound Tenses* like the Pluperfect, Future Perfect, can also be expressed, chiefly by the addition of phrases of Past or Future Past significance, to the verb; e.g., “T’a mei yu lai i ch’ien, wo i ching tsou la”, I had gone before he arrived (Pluperfect). “Kan hsia li pai êrh wo shih i ching tsou la”, I shall have gone by next Tuesday (Future Perfect).

*Present Participle.* This is by adding the word “cho” 著 to the verb, and frequently by adding a phrase of time; e.g., “Kên cho t’a yu san ko jên”, Accompanying him were three men. “T’a lai cho ti shih hou”, At the time of his coming.

### Moods.

The *Indicative Mood* has been adequately dealt with above.

The *Imperative Mood* is the same as the indicative, with or without additional words implying command, exhortation, etc.; e.g., “Lai” or “Lai pa” is Come! “Wo mên tsou pa”, Let us go! “Chiao t’a ch’ü”, Tell him to go.

The *Infinitive Mood* is the same as the Indicative, usually of course accompanied by some main verb; e.g., “Wo yüan i ch’ü”, I am willing to go.

The *Conditional Mood* again is as the Indicative, usually preceded by a word or phrase implying Condition, such as doubt, fear, probability, uncertainty, etc.; e.g., “Jo shih t’a ch’ing ni, ni chiu ying tang ch’ü”, If he

invites you, you ought to go. "Yao shih", 要是 If. "T'ang jo", 倘若 Supposing. "Huo cho", 或者 Perhaps. "Yeh hsü", 也許 Perhaps. "K'ung p'a", 恐怕 I fear, lest. "Pu i ting", 不一定 Uncertain. "Pu kan shuo", 不敢說 Cannot say, are a few instances of the possibilities of the language to express the Conditional or Subjunctive Mood.

*Other Auxiliary Verbs* like "lai", 來, "ch'u", 出 "tao", 到, "liao", 了, "shang", 上, "hsia", 下 "chao", 着, "tiao", 掉, are all found in the text, in combination with main verbs.

The student will note particularly the frequent references in the Dialogue Notes to the way in which these auxiliaries express possibility or impossibility of the completion of the action of the main verb.

Note further that "tê", 得, when used as an auxiliary, carries with it a sense of "oughtness", "fitness", etc.

*The Passive Voice.* This is most commonly expressed by the words "chiao", written either 叫 or 教, but chiefly 叫; by "pei", 被, or "shou", 受, and less frequently "ai", 挨.

Examples are as follows:—

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Na hsieh tung hsi pei<br>huo shao la. | Those things were burned<br>by fire. |
| 2. Wo ti mao tzu chiao<br>fêng kua la.   | My hat was blown off by<br>the wind. |
| 3. Yeh su shou jên ti ling<br>ju.        | Jesus was insulted by men.           |
| 4. Na t'iao kou ai liao ta.              | That dog was beaten.                 |

#### 14. Negatives and Prohibitions.

The principal Negatives are "pu", 不 and "mu", 沒 also pronounced "mei" or "mo". The student will be helped by knowing that "pu" is usually used with "shih", to be, while "mu" is used with "yu". The



not be observed. Practically everything that has been said above, or in the Notes which accompany the Dialogues, on the subject of Grammar, is open to modification. But the student will at least have observed from what has been written that there is such a thing as Chinese Grammar!



## CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM

## CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM

The 1,200 odd characters included in the Dialogues are reproduced in this Section, in the written form, with the Romanised equivalent, tone mark, and main meanings alongside.

Chinese characters, when written, differ in several respects from the printed forms. It is therefore useful for the student, at the very beginning of his studies, to become acquainted with the written forms.

In the Vocabularies accompanying the Dialogues and Exercises the printed form of the characters is used. By comparing these with the written equivalents the student will readily discern the differences and be ready to tackle a simple Chinese letter.

I strongly recommend the student to learn to write the Chinese characters in the form in which they are found in this Section. I think the effort will be found to be worth while, not only in the greater interest and pleasure which will result, but also in the help to memory which writing the characters affords.

The following hints will guide and help the student in this branch of the study. As is well known, the writing of Chinese characters is an art, just as much as the painting of pictures. So Chinese writers use the brush (mao pi), as only by that means can the artistic possibilities of the characters appear. But nowadays large numbers of the younger generation of Chinese students use fountain pens. Students of this book who have artistic gifts should get accustomed to using the brush. But probably the great majority will be content to use the fountain pen. Get one with a soft nib, which will allow of gradation of thick and thin in the strokes, and also permit of a flowing free-hand style. Even a good





*E.g.*, if we want to write the character “k’ou”, for mouth, which is written 口, the order of strokes is 1. 丨, 2. 冂 3. 一; and in “li”, 里, Chinese mile, the order is 1. 丨, 2. 冂, 3. 一, 4. 一, 5. 一, 6. 丨, 7. 一

Write each character several times before proceeding to fresh ones. You will gradually discover that certain parts of many characters recur frequently. These are probably I. Radicals, of which there are 214, a list of which follows the Character Index, and which give a clue to the meaning, or II. Phonetics, of which Soothill, for instance, selects 888,† and which afford a clue to the sound of the character. By this type of analysis we trace the characters in the dictionaries, as will be pointed out in the final Section. By this means also the student will be able to group the characters into classes, either according to Radical or Phonetic, which will accelerate progress in learning to write and read large numbers of characters.

*E.g.*, as an interesting test, pick out from the Index all those characters in which you can detect the Radical “mu”, 木, wood, or tree, or again the Radical “chin”, 金, metal, “yü”, 雨, rain, etc., and note how the rest of the character indicates differences in species while the genus remains the same, or akin.

Likewise trace common Phonetics like 者, “chu”, the characters 猪, pig, 諸, all, 煮, boil, etc.

Or again, “ch’ing”, 青, in 情, disposition, 清, pure, 請, invite.

In these ways the burden of memorising will be greatly lightened and keener interest developed.

The Index to the characters in written form follows.

† “The Students’ Four Thousand Characters and General Pocket Dictionary”, W. E. Soothill, M.A.

## Characters 1—20

第	Ti <sup>4</sup> Number, degree. Used to introduce ordinal numbers.	不	Pu <sup>1</sup> No. Not.
一	I <sup>1</sup> One.	知	Chih <sup>1</sup> To know.
課	K'o <sup>4</sup> Task, Exercise.	道	Tao <sup>4</sup> Way, Truth.
門	Mên <sup>2</sup> Door, Gate.	去	Ch'ü <sup>4</sup> To go.
口	K'ou <sup>3</sup> Mouth, Opening.	看	K'an <sup>4</sup> To look. To look at To think. To con- sider.
有	Yu <sup>3</sup> There is, there are. Has, have.	用	Yung <sup>1</sup> Need, Use.
人	Jên <sup>2</sup> Man.	叫	Chiao <sup>4</sup> To call, cause, order.
誰	Shui <sup>2</sup> Who, Whom.	隆	Lung <sup>2</sup> Eminent. Prosper- ous.
我	Wo <sup>3</sup> I, Me	福	Fu <sup>2</sup> Happiness.
是	Shih <sup>4</sup> Is, are, am, etc.	哎	Ai <sup>3</sup> An exclamation.

## Characters 21—40

來	Lai <sup>2</sup> To come.	嗎	Ma <sup>1</sup> Interrogative.
吧	Pa <sup>4</sup> Final particle.	請	Ch'ing <sup>3</sup> Invite, please, call, engage.
先	Hsien <sup>1</sup> Before, formerly, first.	進	Chin <sup>4</sup> Enter, advance.
生	Shêng <sup>1</sup> Born, to beget, life. Raw. A scholar.	好	Hao <sup>3</sup> Good, well, com- plete.
貴	Kuei <sup>4</sup> Honourable, dear, costly.	了	Liao, <sup>3</sup> Lo, <sup>3</sup> La <sup>3</sup> To end, finish. Sign of past tense.
姓	Hsing <sup>4</sup> Surname, clan.	呀	Ya <sup>1</sup> Particle. Exclamation, initial or final.
李	Li <sup>3</sup> A surname. Plum.	張	Chang <sup>1</sup> A surname. Also classifier of nouns.
王	Wang <sup>2</sup> A surname. King, prince.	都	Tu, <sup>1</sup> Tou <sup>1</sup> Both, all, together.
在	Tsai <sup>4</sup> At, in, on, present, living.	坐	Tso <sup>4</sup> To sit. A seat.
家	Chia <sup>1</sup> Home, house, fam- ily, class.	謝	Hsieh <sup>4</sup> To thank, thanks.

## Characters 41—80

泡	P'ao <sup>4</sup> To brew, soak, bubble, infuse.	兒	Erh <sup>1</sup> Enclitic, added to nouns, suffix.
茶	Ch'a <sup>2</sup> Tea.	對	Tui <sup>4</sup> To face, pair, opposite.
說	Shuo <sup>1</sup> To speak, say, narrate.	住	Chu <sup>4</sup> To dwell, to stop.
話	Hua <sup>4</sup> Words, language. speech.	等	Têng <sup>3</sup> To wait, a class
就	Chiu <sup>4</sup> Immediately, then, so, etc.	着	Cho <sup>2</sup> Particle, sign of present participle.
喝	Ho <sup>1</sup> To drink.	得	Tê <sup>2</sup> Must, ought, get.
敢	Kan <sup>3</sup> Dare, presume.	回	Hui <sup>2</sup> To return, 'go back.
當	Tang <sup>1</sup> To bear, act as, ought.	送	Sung <sup>4</sup> To send, escort, accompany.
再	Tsai <sup>4</sup> Again, repeat.	那	Na <sup>3 4</sup> Where, how, why? There, that.
會	Hui <sup>3</sup> A time, a turn, able to. A so- ciety. To meet.	的	Ti <sup>1</sup> Sign of possessive, 's.

## Characters 61—80

見	Chien <sup>4</sup> To see, perceive.	偏	P'ien <sup>1</sup> Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.
二	Erh <sup>4</sup> Two, Second.	客	K'o <sup>4</sup> Guest, traveller.
他	T'a <sup>1</sup> He, she, it.	氣	Ch'i <sup>4</sup> Breath, air, vapour, flavour.
太	T'ai <sup>4</sup> Too, very, superlative, exalted.	理	Li <sup>3</sup> Right, principle, arrange, fitting.
喫	Ch'ih <sup>1</sup> To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.	可	K'o <sup>4</sup> May, might, can, be able.
過	Kuo <sup>4</sup> Sign of past tense, to pass over	以	I <sup>3</sup> To take, by means of.
飯	Fan <sup>4</sup> Rice, food.	給	Kei, Chi <sup>3</sup> Give, for, to. Sign of dative.
沒	Mei, Mu, Mo <sup>4</sup> Negative, used with the verb "Yu", to have.	沏	Ch'i <sup>3</sup> Infuse, brew. Alternative for "p'ao".
還	Huan, Hai <sup>2</sup> Still, yet, — precedes negative.	預	Yü <sup>4</sup> Beforehand.
或	Huo <sup>4</sup> Perhaps, if, someone.	備	Pei <sup>4</sup> Prepare, ready.

## Characters 81—100

中	Chung <sup>1</sup> Middle.	才	Ts'ai <sup>2</sup> Just, thereupon, scarcely.
國	Kuo <sup>2</sup> Country. Kingdom.	獎	Chiang <sup>3</sup> Praise, commend.
大	Ta <sup>4</sup> Big. Great. Much.	真	Chên <sup>1</sup> True, real.
懂	Tung <sup>3</sup> To understand.	實	Shih <sup>2</sup> Solid, sincere, true, real.
幾	Chi <sup>3</sup> Many. How much? How many?	容	Yung, <sup>2</sup> Jung <sup>2</sup> Easy, contain, face, looks.
時	Shih <sup>2</sup> Time, Season.	易	I <sup>4</sup> Easy.
到	Tao <sup>4</sup> Arrive, reach.	學	Hsüeh <sup>2</sup> Learn.
敝	Pi <sup>4</sup> Humble, my (polite).	並	Ping <sup>4</sup> Together, all, abreast.
上	Shang <sup>4</sup> The last point of time, above, on, go up.	難	Nan <sup>2</sup> Difficult.
月	Yüeh <sup>4</sup> Month, moon.	願	Yüan <sup>4</sup> Wish, willing.

## Characters 151—160

歡	Huan <sup>1</sup> Rejoice. Take pleasure.	水	Shui <sup>3</sup> Water.
紙	Chih <sup>3</sup> Paper.	研	Yen <sup>2</sup> To grind, as ink on a slab. To inquire.
塊	K'uai <sup>4</sup> Piece.	些	Hsieh <sup>3</sup> A few, some, sign of plural, with adjectives.
墨	Mo, Mei <sup>4</sup> Ink.	拿	Na <sup>2</sup> To take.
和	Ho <sup>2 4</sup> With, together, harmony.	四	Ssü <sup>4</sup> Four.
方	Fang <sup>1</sup> Square, classifier of pieces of Chinese ink.	盃	Pei <sup>1</sup> Cup, with or with- out handle. Glass.
硯	Yen <sup>4</sup> Ink-slab.	杯	As No. 156.
台	T'ai <sup>2</sup> Slab.	碗	Wan <sup>3</sup> Cup, bowl, with or without handle.
加	Chia <sup>1</sup> To add.	分	Fên <sup>1 4</sup> (1) Verbal form, to divide. (4) Part, tenth.
點	Tien <sup>3</sup> A little, point, dot.	別	Pieh <sup>2</sup> To distinguish; also "do not".



## Characters 161—180

壺	Hu <sup>2</sup> Kettle, pot.	兩	Liang <sup>3</sup> Two, preceding nouns.
樣	Yang <sup>4</sup> Pattern, way, manner.	鋼	Kang <sup>2</sup> Steel.
燒	Shao <sup>1</sup> To burn, bake (to boil).	呢	Ni <sup>1</sup> Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.
煙	Yen <sup>1</sup> Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.	毛	Mao <sup>2</sup> Hair.
烟	As No. 164.	朋	P'êng <sup>2</sup> Companion, friend mate.
捲	Chüan <sup>3</sup> A roll, to roll up.	友	Yu <sup>3</sup> Intimate acquaintance, friend.
洋	Yang <sup>2</sup> Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.	瓶	P'ing <sup>2</sup> Bottle.
火	Huo <sup>2</sup> Fire.	也	Yeh <sup>3</sup> Also.
柴	Ch'ai <sup>2</sup> Firewood, fuel.	買	Mai <sup>3</sup> To buy.
抽	Ch'ou <sup>1</sup> To draw, to pull out.	市	Shih <sup>4</sup> The market.

## Characters 181—200

場	Ch'ang <sup>2</sup> An open place, square.	天	T'ien <sup>1</sup> Day, Heaven.
裡	Li <sup>3</sup> In, inside, within.	明	Ming <sup>2</sup> The dawn, bright, clear, open.
裏	' As No. 182.	今	Chin <sup>1</sup> Now, the present.
賣	Mai <sup>4</sup> To sell.	她	T'a <sup>1</sup> She.
街	Chieh <sup>2</sup> Street.	幹	Kan <sup>4</sup> To do, manage, Ability.
者	Chê <sup>3</sup> Particle, to form adverbs, ab- stract nouns, etc.	頂	Ting <sup>3</sup> Classifier of hats, caps, etc. Top, button.
咱	Tsa <sup>2</sup> We (familiar).	帽	Mao <sup>4</sup> Hat, cap.
倆	Lia <sup>3</sup> Two.	雙	Shuang <sup>1</sup> A couple, both, pair.
五	Wu <sup>3</sup> Five.	鞋	Hsieh <sup>2</sup> Shoe.
昨	Tso <sup>3</sup> Yesterday.	北	Pei <sup>3 4</sup> North.

## Characters 201—220

京	Ching <sup>1</sup> Capital city.	候	Hou <sup>4</sup> A period, a time, to wait, to expect.
起	Ch'i <sup>3</sup> To get up, rise, mount.	六	Liu <sup>4</sup> Six.
走	Tsou <sup>3</sup> To walk, to go.	厨	Ch'u <sup>2</sup> Kitchen, cook.
錢	Ch'ien <sup>2</sup> Money.	房	Fang <sup>2</sup> Room, house.
緊	Chin <sup>3</sup> Tight, pressing.	司	Ssü <sup>1</sup> An officer, to manage.
帶	Tai <sup>4</sup> To carry on the person.	站	Chan <sup>4</sup> To stand, station, post, etc.
借	Chieh <sup>4</sup> To borrow, to lend.	忙	Mang <sup>2</sup> Busy.
情	Ch'ing <sup>2</sup> Facts affairs, feel- ings, nature.	幫	Pang <sup>1</sup> Help, assist.
形	Hsing <sup>4</sup> Form, appearance.	句	Chü <sup>4</sup> Sentence, phrase.
怎	Tsên <sup>3</sup> How? In what way?	傢	Chia <sup>1</sup> Utensils.

## Characters 221—240

具	Chü <sup>4</sup> Utensils.	棹	Cho <sup>2</sup> Table.
刀	Tao <sup>1</sup> Knife, blade.	桌	As No. 231.
叉	Ch'a <sup>1</sup> Fork.	晚	Wan <sup>3</sup> Evening, late.
調	T'iao <sup>2</sup> To stir, to mix.	下	Hsia <sup>4</sup> Beneath, to descend, to begin, under.
羹	Mei <sup>4</sup> Ink black.	午	Wu <sup>3</sup> Ngon.
匙	Shih, <sup>2</sup> Ch'ih <sup>2</sup> Spoon, key.	多	To <sup>1</sup> Much, many.
勺	Shao <sup>2</sup> Scoop, ladle.	烤	K'ao <sup>2</sup> To bake, roast.
碟	Tieh <sup>2</sup> Plate, saucer.	麵	Mien <sup>4</sup> Flour, bread.
盤	P'an <sup>2</sup> Plate, dish.	包	Pao <sup>1</sup> Parcel, wrap.
放	Fang <sup>4</sup> Put, place.	黃	Huang <sup>2</sup> Yellow.

Characters 241—260

油	Yu <sup>2</sup> Oil.	七	Ch'i <sup>1</sup> Seven.
果	Kuo <sup>3</sup> Fruit, consequences, etc.	承	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> To receive.
醬	Chiang <sup>1</sup> Thick, paste, etc.	問	Wên <sup>2</sup> To inquire, ask, a question.
夠	Kou <sup>4</sup> Enough, sufficient.	您	Nin <sup>2</sup> You, Sir. (A polite form.)
十	Shih <sup>2</sup> Ten.	賤	Chien <sup>4</sup> Humble, mean, low, cheap.
筷	K'uai <sup>4</sup> Chopsticks.	甫	Fu <sup>3</sup> Title or rank, surname.
使	Shih <sup>3</sup> To employ, use.	草	Ts'ao <sup>3</sup> Gross, humble.
只	Chih <sup>3</sup> Only.	清	Ch'ing <sup>1</sup> Clear.
怕	P'a <sup>4</sup> To fear.	長	Chang <sup>4</sup> A staff. Ch'ang <sup>2</sup> Long.
倒	Tao <sup>3</sup> On the contrary, to fall over.	名	Ming <sup>2</sup> Name, fame.

## Characters 261—280

年	Nien <sup>2</sup> Year, years.	小	Hsiao <sup>3</sup> Small, young.
紀	Chi <sup>4</sup> To record.	虛	Hsü <sup>1</sup> In vain, empty, useless.
歲	Sui <sup>4</sup> The year, years.	度	Tu <sup>4</sup> To ford, pass, pass over.
數	Shu <sup>4</sup> Number, to count.	英	Ying <sup>1</sup> Brave, illustrious, England.
庚	Kêng <sup>1</sup> Age.	南	Nan <sup>2</sup> South.
甲	Chia <sup>3</sup> First.	處	Ch'u <sup>3</sup> Place, dwelling place.
高	Kao <sup>1</sup> High.	府	Fu <sup>3</sup> Home, residence, a prefecture.
壽	Shou <sup>4</sup> Age, old age, long life.	平	P'ing <sup>2</sup> Peace, level, ordinary.
兄	Hsiung <sup>1</sup> Elder brother.	離	Li <sup>2</sup> Apart from, sepa- rated from.
弟	Ti <sup>4</sup> Younger brother.	遠	Yüan <sup>3</sup> Far, distance, distant.

Characters 281—300

百	Pai, Po <sup>3 2 4</sup> Hundred.	夫	Fu <sup>1</sup> A man.
里	Li <sup>3</sup> "Li" (about one-third of a mile).	常	Ch'ang <sup>2</sup> Usual, ordinary.
路	Lu <sup>4</sup> Road.	快	K'uai <sup>4</sup> Quick, lively.
往	Wang <sup>3 4</sup> Towards.	八	Pa <sup>1</sup> Eight.
漢	Han <sup>4</sup> Name of a dynasty. Part of Hankow.	統	T'ung <sup>2</sup> Together, connected.
旱	Han <sup>4</sup> Dry, dry land.	共	Kung <sup>4</sup> Together, combined.
非	Fei <sup>1</sup> Not, bad.	父	Fu <sup>4</sup> Father.
飛	Fei <sup>1</sup> To fly.	母	Mu <sup>3</sup> Mother.
機	Chi <sup>1</sup> A machine, opportunity.	親	Ch'in <sup>1</sup> Close relationship.
工	Kung <sup>1</sup> Work.	令	Ling <sup>4</sup> Honourable.

## Characters 301—320

尊	Tsun <sup>1</sup> Honourable (used in ceremonial language).	孩	Hai <sup>2</sup> Child, children.
堂	T'ang <sup>2</sup> The hall, principal room.	男	Nan <sup>2</sup> Male (of human beings).
世	Shih <sup>4</sup> The world, this life, generation.	位	Wei <sup>4</sup> Classifier of per- sons.
惜	Hsi <sup>1</sup> To pity, sym- pathise.	女	Nü <sup>3</sup> Female (of human beings).
寶	Pao <sup>3</sup> Precious, valuable.	托	T'o <sup>4</sup> Rely upon, due to, depend on.
眷	Chüan <sup>4</sup> Family, wife.	相	Hsiang <sup>1</sup> Mutual.
成	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> Complete, finish become.	郎	Lang <sup>2</sup> Prince, your son.
訂	Ting <sup>4</sup> Fix, settle.	犬	Ch'üan <sup>3</sup> Dog, pup.
婚	Hun <sup>1</sup> Marriage, marry.	媛	Ai, <sup>4</sup> Ngai <sup>4</sup> Loved, beloved.
結	Chieh <sup>2</sup> To tie a knot, to join together.	差	Ch'a <sup>1</sup> To err. Ch'ai <sup>1</sup> To send.



## Characters 321—340

事	Shih <sup>4</sup> Affair, matter, business.	音	Yin <sup>1</sup> Sound.
辦	Pan <sup>4</sup> To do, to manage.	牧	Mu <sup>4</sup> Shepherd, pastor.
公	Kung <sup>1</sup> Public, official.	師	Shih <sup>4</sup> Teacher.
商	Shang <sup>1</sup> Commerce.	士	Shih <sup>4</sup> Scholar.
奉	Fêng <sup>4</sup> To join, attach oneself to.	前	Ch'ien <sup>2</sup> Before, formerly.
教	Chiao <sup>1</sup> Instruction, Church.	講	Chiang <sup>1</sup> Expound, preach.
耶	Yeh <sup>1</sup> Used in transli- terating.	九	Chiu <sup>3</sup> Nine.
穌	Su <sup>1</sup> To revive.	目	Mu <sup>4</sup> Index, list, eye.
基	Chi <sup>1</sup> A foundation, a base.	繙	Fan <sup>1</sup> To translate, turn over.
督	Tu <sup>1</sup> To oversee, to superintend.	翻	Fan <sup>1</sup> To upset, to over- turn.

## Characters 341—360

零 <sup>Ling</sup><sup>2</sup>  
Nought, cipher.

千 <sup>Ch'ien</sup><sup>1</sup>  
Thousand.

萬 <sup>Wan</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Ten thousand.

頭 <sup>T'ou</sup><sup>2</sup>  
Head, first, beginning.

半 <sup>Pan</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Half.

分 <sup>Fên</sup><sup>1</sup>  
A tenth, a portion.

之 <sup>Chih</sup><sup>1</sup>  
Sign of possessive.

地 <sup>Ti</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Earth, floor, locality.

少 <sup>Shao</sup><sup>3</sup>  
Few, little, short of.

必 <sup>Pi</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Must, certainly, necessary.

須 <sup>Hsü</sup><sup>1</sup>  
Necessary, must, wait, a moment.

補 <sup>P'u</sup><sup>3</sup>  
Patch, repair, mend.

星 <sup>Hsing</sup><sup>1</sup>  
Star, spark.

期 <sup>Ch'i</sup><sup>2</sup>  
Date, appointed time, expect.

禮 <sup>Li</sup><sup>3</sup>  
Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.

拜 <sup>Pai</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Worship, pay respect.

初 <sup>Ch'u</sup><sup>1</sup>  
Beginning, first.

正 <sup>Chêng</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Right, correct, chief, first month.

末 <sup>Mo</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Last, end, dust, not.

腊 <sup>La</sup><sup>4</sup>  
Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.

## Characters 361—380

臘	As No. 360.	耍	Shua <sup>3</sup> To play, to trifle.
其	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> He, she, it.	糖	T'ang <sup>2</sup> Sugar, sweets.
餘	Yü <sup>2</sup> Surplus.	每	Mei <sup>3</sup> Each, every.
致	Chih <sup>4</sup> To cause, to extend to, to send.	份	Fên <sup>1</sup> A portion.
隨	Sui <sup>2</sup> Comply with, according to, to follow.	經	Ching <sup>1</sup> Pass through, manage.
冬	Tung <sup>1</sup> Winter.	身	Shên <sup>1</sup> Body, self.
思	Ssü <sup>1</sup> To think on, ponder, thought.	表	Piao <sup>3</sup> Watch.
新	Hsin <sup>1</sup> New.	但	Tan <sup>4</sup> But, only, yet.
玩	Wan <sup>4</sup> Enjoy, amuse, play.	面	Mien <sup>4</sup> Face, front, side, aspect.
藝	I <sup>4</sup> Skill, craft.	鐘	Chung <sup>1</sup> Clock, bell.

## Characters 381—400

近

Chin<sup>4</sup>  
Near.

視

Shih<sup>4</sup>  
See, look.

眼

Yen<sup>3</sup>  
Eye, the eye.

約

Yüeh,<sup>1</sup> Yo<sup>1</sup>  
To make an appointment, covenant, bind.

已

I<sup>3</sup>  
Sign of perfect tense.

耽

Tan<sup>1</sup>  
Obstruct, delay, prevent.

誤

Wu<sup>4</sup>  
To thwart, hinder.

許

Hsü<sup>3</sup>  
Perhaps, maybe.

恐

K'ung<sup>3</sup>  
Fear.

怕

P'a<sup>4</sup>  
Fear, afraid.

刻

K'o<sup>4</sup>  
A quarter, fifteen minutes.

趕

Kan<sup>3</sup>  
To catch up, pursue, drive.

更

Kêng<sup>4</sup>  
Sign of comparative.

夏

Hsia<sup>4</sup>  
Summer.

避

Pi<sup>4</sup>  
Avoid, escape, flee.

伏

Fu<sup>2</sup>  
Summer heat.

暑

Shu<sup>3</sup>  
Summer heat.

勞

Lao<sup>2</sup>  
To toil, suffer, weary.

山

Shan<sup>1</sup>  
Hill, mountain.

從

Ts'ung<sup>2</sup>  
From, follow, obey.

## Characters 401—420

閒	Hsien <sup>2</sup> Leisure, idle.	牌	P'ai <sup>3</sup> Cards, dominoes.
愛	Ai <sup>4</sup> To love, to like.	拍	P'ai <sup>2</sup> To beat, clap, etc.
打	Ta <sup>3</sup> To beat, strike, to play at . . .	座	Tso <sup>4</sup> Classifier of clocks, etc.
網	Wang <sup>3</sup> Net.	慢	Man <sup>4</sup> Slow.
球	Ch'iu <sup>4</sup> Ball.	改	Kai <sup>3</sup> Alter, change.
踢	T'i <sup>1</sup> To kick.	準	Chun <sup>3</sup> Standard.
腳	Chiao, <sup>2</sup> Chüeh <sup>2</sup> Foot.	修	Hsiu <sup>1</sup> Repair, put in order.
因	Yin <sup>1</sup> Cause, because.	能	Nêng <sup>2</sup> Can, able.
為	Wei <sup>2</sup> Because, do, make, be.	替	T'i <sup>4</sup> For, instead of substitute.
規	Kuei <sup>1</sup> Rule, fix.	認	Jên <sup>4</sup> To recognise, to acknowledge.

## Characters 421—440

匠	Chiang <sup>4</sup> An artisan.	己	Chi <sup>3</sup> Self, personal.
定	Ting <sup>4</sup> Fix, settle, certain.	盤	P'an <sup>2</sup> Plate, board, a classifier.
後	Hou <sup>4</sup> After, later.	棋	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> Chess.
駕	Chia <sup>4</sup> Chariot, progress.	逛	Kuang <sup>4</sup> Stroll, visit.
最	Tsui <sup>4</sup> Most, very.	針	Chên <sup>1</sup> Needle, needle-work.
陪	P'ei <sup>2</sup> To accompany, entertain.	鍼	As No. 435.
頭	T'ou <sup>2</sup> The head, the beginning.	線	Hsien <sup>4</sup> Thread, needle-work.
概	Kai <sup>4</sup> All, general.	綫	As No. 437.
便	Pien <sup>4</sup> Convenient. P'ien <sup>4</sup> Cheap.	談	T'an <sup>2</sup> To chat, gossip, talk.
自	Tzü <sup>4</sup> Self, natural, from.	譚	As No. 439.

## Characters 441—460

夜	Yeh <sup>4</sup> Night.	鎖	So <sup>3</sup> Lock, to lock.
窗	Ch'uang <sup>1</sup> Window.	銹	Hsiu <sup>4</sup> Rust, to rust.
戶	Hu <sup>4</sup> A hole, opening, screen.	鑰	Yao, <sup>4</sup> Yo <sup>4</sup> A key.
闕	Kuan <sup>1</sup> To close, bar, put to.	試	Shih <sup>4</sup> To try, to test, experiment.
病	Ping <sup>4</sup> Disease, illness.	塗	T'u <sup>2</sup> To grease, to oil, smear.
發	Fa <sup>1</sup> To produce, be- come.	開	K'ai <sup>1</sup> To open.
潮	Ch'ao <sup>2</sup> Damp, humid, tide.	敞	Ch'ang <sup>3</sup> To open, wide open, disclose.
框	K'uang <sup>4</sup> Frame.	偷	T'ou <sup>1</sup> To steal, a thief.
縫	Fêng <sup>2</sup> A seam, split, crack.	嗎	Ma <sup>4</sup> Interrogative particle.
木	Mu <sup>4</sup> Wood, timber.	塞	Sai, <sup>4</sup> Sê <sup>4</sup> Cork, stopper.

## Characters 461—480

取	Ch'ü <sup>2</sup> To take off or out.	筒	T'ung <sup>2</sup> A tin, a container.
出	Ch'u <sup>1</sup> To come or go out, to produce.	費	Fei <sup>4</sup> Waste, expend.
合	Ho <sup>2</sup> To close, to pair, side by side.	釘	Ting <sup>1</sup> A nail, to nail.
式	Shih <sup>4</sup> Pattern, shape, fashion.	全	Ch'üan <sup>2</sup> Perfect, complete, all.
螺	Lo <sup>2</sup> Conch, small screw.	鉗	Ch'ien <sup>2</sup> Pincers, tongs.
絲	Ssü <sup>1</sup> Wire, thread.	總	Tsung <sup>3</sup> All, general.
轉	Chuan <sup>3</sup> To turn.	向	Hsiang <sup>4</sup> Facing toward, to or from.
箱	Hsiang <sup>1</sup> Box.	園	Yüan <sup>2</sup> Courtyard, garden.
匣	Hsia <sup>3</sup> Small box, crate.	井	Ching <sup>3</sup> A well.
盒	Ho <sup>2</sup> A tin or box, casket.	蓋	Kai <sup>4</sup> To cover.



Characters 481—500

清	Ch'ing <sup>1</sup> Dawn, daybreak.	件	Chien <sup>4</sup> An article, an item. A classifier.
早	Tsao <sup>3</sup> Early.	忘	Wang <sup>2</sup> To forget.
桶	T'ung <sup>3</sup> A bucket, a barrel.	記	Chi <sup>4</sup> To remember.
盛	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> To fill, to hold. Shêng <sup>4</sup> Abundant.	邊	Pien <sup>1</sup> A side, an edge.
滿	Man <sup>3</sup> Full, to fill.	苦	K'u <sup>3</sup> Bitter.
所	So <sup>3</sup> The relative pronoun. A place, that which.	甜	T'ien <sup>2</sup> Sweet.
缸	Kang <sup>1</sup> A butt, large vessel for water, etc.	煮	Chu <sup>3</sup> To boil, to cook.
裝	Chuang <sup>1</sup> To fill up, to pack, to contain.	搬	Pan <sup>1</sup> To move, to remove.
髒	Tsang <sup>1</sup> Dirty, filthy.	樓	Lou <sup>2</sup> A second storey, tower.
留	Liu <sup>3</sup> To leave, to retain, keep.	動	Tung <sup>4</sup> To move. To excite.

## Characters 501—520

至	Chih <sup>4</sup> Extreme. Reach to. Utmost.	種	Chung <sup>3</sup> Seed, grain. A kind or sort.
雇	Ku <sup>4</sup> To hire.	重	Chung <sup>4</sup> Heavy, cumber- some.
抬	T'ai <sup>2</sup> To carry between two or more persons. To raise.	休	Hsiu <sup>1</sup> Rest, recuperate, relax.
濟	Chi <sup>4</sup> To help, save, up to the mark.	息	Hsi <sup>2</sup> Rest, to rest.
算	Suan <sup>4</sup> To reckon, calcu- late.	歇	Hsieh <sup>1</sup> To rest, ease off.
然	Jan <sup>2</sup> Certainly, really, still, although.	椅	I <sup>3</sup> A chair, couch.
掃	Sao <sup>3</sup> To sweep.	空	K'ung <sup>1</sup> Empty.
院	Yüan <sup>4</sup> A courtyard, a hall.	想	Hsiang <sup>3</sup> To think, reflect.
收	Shou <sup>1</sup> To receive, collect, gather.	外	Wai <sup>4</sup> Outside. Foreign.
拾	Shih <sup>2</sup> Arrange, pick up.	老	Lao <sup>3</sup> A long time. Old.

## Characters 521—540

丢	Tiu <sup>3</sup> To leave.	廳	T'ing <sup>1</sup> Court, Hall.
蔭	Yin <sup>1</sup> A cellar, under-ground. Secret.	曉	Hsiao <sup>3</sup> To know.
條	T'iao <sup>2</sup> Classifier of long things.	吩	Fên <sup>1</sup> To order, command.
凳	Têng <sup>1</sup> To rise, to mount, to begin.	咐	Fu <sup>4</sup> To commission, order.
掉	Tiao <sup>4</sup> To change round, turn round.	毯	T'an <sup>3</sup> Carpet, felt.
讓	Jang <sup>4</sup> To allow, permit.	席	Hsi <sup>2</sup> Mat, reed mat.
換	Huan <sup>4</sup> To change.	器	Ch'i <sup>4</sup> A vessel, a utensil, implements.
乾	Kan <sup>1</sup> Dry, clean.	洗	Hsi <sup>3</sup> To wash, bathe, rinse.
淨	Ching <sup>4</sup> Clean.	端	Tuan <sup>1</sup> A beginning. A clue. To serve.
布	Pu <sup>4</sup> Calico, cotton cloth. To notify, to publish.	伶	Ling <sup>2</sup> Clever, active, adjust.

## Characters 541—560

例	Li <sup>4</sup> Lively, quick, smart.	石	Shih <sup>2</sup> A stone.
整	Chêng <sup>3</sup> To set in order, to repair, ad- just.	斗	Tou <sup>3</sup> A peck.
齊	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> Even, regular. To arrange.	升	Shêng <sup>1</sup> A pint.
於	Yü <sup>2</sup> In, on, at, from. Than.	袋	Tai <sup>1</sup> Bag, sack.
斤	Chin <sup>1</sup> A catty, one and a third lbs.	尺	Ch'ih A foot.
釐	Li <sup>2</sup> The 1000th part of a Chinese foot; 1000th part of a "tael".	寸	Ts'un <sup>4</sup> An inch.
稱	Ch'êng <sup>1</sup> To weigh, call, style.	白	Pai <sup>2</sup> White, clear, in vain.
裹	Kuo <sup>3</sup> To bind, wrap.	文	Wên <sup>2</sup> Literature, elegant.
量	Liang <sup>2</sup> To measure, to deliberate. To buy, as grain.	步	Pu <sup>4</sup> Pace, step, five, feet.
糧	Liang <sup>2</sup> Grain, food.	意	I <sup>4</sup> Idea, intention, meaning, wish.

## Characters 561-580

思	Ssu <sup>1</sup> Think on, ponder, thought.	界	Chieh <sup>4</sup> The world, bound- ary.
褲	K'u <sup>4</sup> Trousers.	記	Chi <sup>4</sup> To record, to re- member, a sign.
材	Ts'ai <sup>2</sup> Materials.	錄	Lu <sup>4</sup> To record, copy.
料	Liao <sup>4</sup> Materials, calcu- late.	破	P'o <sup>4</sup> Break, solve.
寬	K'uan <sup>1</sup> Wide, broad, easy.	碟	Tieh <sup>2 5</sup> Saucer.
狹	Hsiu <sup>2</sup> Narrow.	肉	Jou, <sup>4</sup> Ju <sup>4</sup> Meat.
比	Pi <sup>3</sup> To compare.	湯	T'ang <sup>1</sup> Soup, gravy.
布	Pu <sup>4</sup> Cloth, to spread.	雞	Chi <sup>1</sup> Chicken.
跑	P'ao <sup>3</sup> To run, to gallop.	羊	Yang <sup>2</sup> Sheep.
世	Shih <sup>4</sup> The world, a gen- eration.	魚	Yü <sup>3</sup> Fish.

## Characters 581—600

猪	Chu <sup>1</sup> Pig, pork.	土	T'u <sup>3</sup> Earth.
排	P'ai <sup>2</sup> Chops.	豆	Tou <sup>4</sup> Beans.
骨	Ku <sup>3</sup> Chops.	菠	Po <sup>1 2</sup> Spinach.
熟	Jê <sup>4</sup> Hot.	熟	Shou, <sup>2</sup> Shu <sup>2</sup> Ripe, soft, properly cooked.
凉	Liang <sup>2</sup> Cool, pleasant.	啦	'La <sup>1</sup> A final particle.
菜	Ts'ai <sup>4</sup> Vegetables, food.	冰	Ping <sup>1</sup> Ice.
腿	T'ui <sup>3</sup> Leg, thigh, ham.	淇	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> Name of a river used in transliteration.
片	P'ien <sup>4</sup> Sliced, a slice, a strip.	淋	Lin <sup>2</sup> To drip. Used in transliteration.
牛	Niu <sup>2</sup> A cow.	奶	Nai <sup>3</sup> Milk, curdled milk, cheese.
舌	Shé <sup>2</sup> Tongue.	餅	Ping <sup>3</sup> Cake, slab.

## Characters 601—620

咖	Chia <sup>1</sup> Used in transliteration.	擺	Pai <sup>3</sup> To spread, to lay on table.
啡	Fei <sup>1</sup> Used in transliteration.	找	Chao <sup>3</sup> To seek, to look for.
蘋	P'ing, <sup>2</sup> P'in <sup>2</sup> Apple.	媽	Ma <sup>1</sup> An old woman, a mother, a waiting woman.
梨	Li <sup>2</sup> Pears.	另	Ling <sup>4</sup> Separate.
葡	P'u <sup>2</sup> The vine, a grape.	鹹	Hsien <sup>2</sup> Salt. Brackish.
萄	T'ao <sup>2</sup> Grapes.	鹽	Yen <sup>2</sup> Salt.
酒	Chiu <sup>3</sup> Wine.	胡	Hu <sup>2</sup> Pepper.
呂	Lü <sup>3</sup> A tube. The Philippines.	椒	Chiao <sup>1</sup> Pepper.
宗	Sung <sup>4</sup> Name of a dynasty.	醋	Ts'u <sup>4</sup> Vinegar.
戒	Chieh <sup>4</sup> Forbid, prohibit.	芥	Chieh <sup>4</sup> Mustard.

## Characters 621—640

牙	Ya <sup>2</sup> Tooth, teeth.	言	Yen <sup>2</sup> Words, speech.
籤	Ch'ien <sup>1</sup> Bamboo-slip.	店	Tien <sup>4</sup> An inn, a shop.
車	Ch'ê Cart, carriage, vehicle.	照	Chao <sup>1</sup> According to. To illumine.
輛	Liang <sup>4</sup> Classifier of ve- hicles.	舊	Chiu <sup>4</sup> Old—of time, per- sons, etc.
論	Lun <sup>4</sup> To discuss, ac- cording to.	越	Yüeh <sup>4</sup> The more, compa- rative sign.
價	Chia <sup>4</sup> Price, value.	力	Li <sup>4</sup> Strength, power, force.
應	Ying <sup>1</sup> Ought, should, must; suitable.	趙	Chao <sup>4</sup> A common sur- name.
該	Kai <sup>1</sup> Ought, should. To owe.	姐	Chieh <sup>3</sup> An elder sister. A young lady.
做	Tso <sup>4</sup> To make, To do, To be, To act as.	識	Shih <sup>4</sup> To know, to re- cognise.
罷	Pa <sup>4</sup> To cease. A final particle. Sign of imperative.	猜	Ts'ai <sup>1</sup> To guess.



## Characters 641—660

憐	Lien <sup>2</sup> Pitiful, pity, sym- pathise.	望	Wang <sup>4</sup> To expect, hope. To gaze at.
通	T'ung <sup>1</sup> Together with, al- together.	妥	T'o <sup>3</sup> Satisfactory.
姊	Tzu <sup>2</sup> Elder sister.	臉	Lien <sup>3</sup> Face.
妹	Mei <sup>4</sup> Younger sister.	貌	Mao <sup>4</sup> Appearance, form.
哥	Ko <sup>1</sup> Elder brother.	豈	Ch'i <sup>3</sup> How, how can it be?
擔	Tan <sup>1</sup> To carry with a pole over the shoulder. To sustain.	戚	Ch'i <sup>4</sup> Relatives.
負	Fu <sup>4</sup> To bear, to sus- tain. To carry on back.	罪	Tsui <sup>4</sup> Sin, crime, offence, offend.
責	Tsê, <sup>2</sup> Chai <sup>2</sup> Burden of office, responsibility.	無	Wu <sup>2</sup> Without, apart from. A nega- tive.
任	Jên <sup>4</sup> Office, the care or burden of office.	何	Ho <sup>2</sup> How, why.
盼	P'an <sup>4</sup> To hope for, to expect.	誑	K'uang <sup>3</sup> Lies, false.

## Characters 661—680

碰	P'êng <sup>4</sup> To meet with. To come across. To hit upon.	據	Chü <sup>4</sup> According to.
詳	Hsiang <sup>2</sup> Details.	挺	T'ing <sup>3</sup> To stick out, stiff.
細	Hsi <sup>4</sup> Fine, delicate.	壞	Huai <sup>4</sup> Bad, vicious, ruined.
主	Chu <sup>3</sup> Opinion, lord, master.	強	Ch'iang <sup>2</sup> Strong, superior, violent.
佩	P'ei <sup>4</sup> Wear at waist, respect.	短	Tuan <sup>3</sup> Short.
服	Fu <sup>2</sup> Clothes, to wear. To serve, to be willing.	歹	Tai <sup>3</sup> Bad.
失	Shih <sup>1</sup> To lose, to err.	顏	Yen <sup>2</sup> Colour, face.
信	Hsin <sup>4</sup> To believe in, to trust. A letter.	色	Sê, <sup>4</sup> Shai <sup>4</sup> Colour, beauty.
酬	Ch'ou <sup>2</sup> Reward, bestow.	挪	No <sup>2</sup> To move.
提	T'i <sup>2</sup> To lift in the hand; to raise, to mention.	根	Kên <sup>1</sup> Classifier of sticks.

## Characters 681—700

棍	Kun <sup>4</sup> Staff, stick.	恭	Kung <sup>1</sup> Reverence, offer.
粗	Ts'u <sup>1</sup> Broad, thick (or round things). Coarse.	發	Fa <sup>1</sup> To issue, to send, to manifest.
貨	Huo <sup>4</sup> Goods, wares.	財	Ts'ai <sup>2</sup> Wealth, riches.
物	Wu <sup>4</sup> Things, goods.	綢	Ch'ou <sup>2</sup> Manufactured silk.
馬	Ma <sup>3</sup> Horse.	次	Tz'ü <sup>4</sup> Inferior, second- rate, next.
拉	La <sup>1</sup> To pull, drag.	封	Fêng Classifier of let- ters, cover, seal, envelope.
屋	Wu <sup>1</sup> Room in a house. House.	領	Ling <sup>3</sup> Receive, lead.
堆	Tui <sup>1</sup> Heap, pile, to pile up.	耐	Nai <sup>4</sup> Endure, bear.
掌	Chang <sup>1</sup> To control, palm of hand.	久	Chiu <sup>3</sup> Old, long time.
櫃	Kuei <sup>4</sup> Shop counter, cupboard.	未	Wei <sup>4</sup> Not yet.

## Characters 701—720

免	Mien <sup>3</sup> Avoid, remit.	穿	Ch'uan <sup>1</sup> To wear, to put on.
稍	Shao <sup>2</sup> Somewhat, slight.	懶	Lan <sup>3</sup> Lazy, indolent, reluctant.
微	Wei <sup>1</sup> Small, minute, slight.	蚊	Wên <sup>2</sup> Mosquito.
便	P'ien <sup>2</sup> Cheap. Pien <sup>4</sup> Convenient.	帳	Chang <sup>4</sup> Curtain, net for bed.
宜	I <sup>2</sup> Right, suits, fits.	哪	Na <sup>2</sup> A final particle.
雖	Sui <sup>1 2</sup> Supposing, though, even, still.	簾	Lien <sup>2</sup> Curtain.
捨	Shê <sup>3</sup> Let go, relinquish.	輕	Ch'ing Light (in weight).
花	Hua <sup>1</sup> To spend. A flower.	鋪	P'u <sup>1</sup> To spread.
丈	Chang <sup>4</sup> Measure of length—about 10 English feet.	結	Chieh <sup>2</sup> Solid, strong, reliable, real.
裁	Ts'ai <sup>2</sup> To cut, to cut out, to plan.	綽	Ju <sup>4</sup> Mattress.

## Characters 721—740

係	Hsi <sup>4</sup> Connected with, concern, in- volve.	暗	An, <sup>4</sup> Ngan <sup>4</sup> Dark, secret.
賬	Chang <sup>4</sup> Account, bill.	燈	Têng <sup>1</sup> Lamp.
號	Hao <sup>4</sup> A mark, a sign, a name or style.	盞	Chan <sup>3</sup> Classifier of lamps.
皮	P'i <sup>2</sup> Leather, skin.	亮	Liang <sup>4</sup> Bright, light.
擋	Tang <sup>3</sup> To resist, to ward off.	安	An, <sup>1 4</sup> Ngan <sup>1 4</sup> To fix, place. Rest, peace.
泥	Ni <sup>2</sup> Mud, slush.	電	Tien <sup>4</sup> Electricity, light- ning.
舒	Shu <sup>1</sup> Comfortable at ease.	枝	Chih <sup>1</sup> Branch, classifier of candles, pens, etc.
興	Hsing <sup>1</sup> Rise, prosper.	蠟	La <sup>4</sup> Wax.
夥	Huo <sup>3</sup> Assistant, band, company.	燭	Chu <sup>2</sup> Candle.
計	Chi <sup>4</sup> To reckon, to cal- culate.	抖	Tou <sup>3</sup> To shake, shudder.

Characters 741—760

疊	Tieh <sup>4</sup> To fold up, a fold.	牀	Ch'uang <sup>3</sup> Bed, classifier of blankets, etc.
炭	T'an <sup>4</sup> Coal.	躺	T'ang <sup>3</sup> To recline, lie down.
煤	Mei <sup>2</sup> Coal.	汗	Han <sup>4</sup> Perspiration.
爐	Lu, <sup>2</sup> Lou <sup>2</sup> Stove, brazier.	屜	T'i <sup>4</sup> Drawer, in a table, etc.
隔	Ko <sup>2</sup> Partition.	藥	Yao, <sup>4</sup> Yo <sup>4</sup> Drugs, medicines.
壁	Pi <sup>4</sup> Screen, partition, wall.	葯	As No. 755.
覺	Chüeh, <sup>2</sup> Chiao <sup>2</sup> To feel, to be conscious of.	顆	K'o <sup>1</sup> Classifier of pills, seeds, pearls, etc.
冷	Lêng <sup>3</sup> Cold.	滅	Mieh <sup>4</sup> To put out, as a lamp, etc. To destroy.
陽	Yang <sup>2</sup> The sun, male principle, south.	睡	Shui <sup>4</sup> To sleep, slumber.
絨	Jung <sup>2</sup> Wool, woollen.	澡	Tsao <sup>3</sup> To bathe the body.

## Characters 761—780

添	T'ien <sup>1</sup> To add to, increase.	勉	Mien <sup>3</sup> To rouse oneself, make an effort.
刮	Kua <sup>1</sup> To scrape, to shave.	衣	I <sup>1</sup> Clothing, to dress.
乏	Fa <sup>2</sup> Fatigued, tired.	窟	K'u <sup>1</sup> Hole, cave.
温	Wên <sup>1</sup> Warm, mild, to warm up.	窿	Lung <sup>3</sup> Hole, cave.
手	Shou <sup>3</sup> Hand, hands.	衫	Shan <sup>1</sup> Shirt.
城	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> The city.	捨	Chê <sup>2</sup> To tear, rend, to fold.
活	Huo <sup>2</sup> Living, Livelihood, lively.	廁	Ts'ê, <sup>4</sup> Ssu <sup>4</sup> Private, closet.
程	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> Capacity; a journey, a career.	所	So <sup>3</sup> A place, a cause.
日	Jih <sup>4</sup> Day, the sun.	歸	Kuei <sup>1</sup> Revert to, to belong to.
掙	Chêng <sup>4</sup> To earn.	常	Ch'ang <sup>4</sup> Usual, ordinary, constant.

## Characters 781—800

馬	Ma <sup>3</sup> Horse.	居	Chū <sup>1</sup> To dwell.
擦	Ts'a <sup>1</sup> To rub, polish.	干	Kan <sup>1</sup> Concern.
銀	Yin <sup>2</sup> Silver, money.	究	Chiu <sup>4</sup> To analyse, examine, to be particular about.
玻	Po <sup>1</sup> Glass.	衛	Wei <sup>4</sup> To guard, protect.
璃	Li <sup>2</sup> Glassware.	各	Ko <sup>4</sup> Each, every, all.
挂	Kua <sup>4</sup> To hang up, to suspend.	妨	Fang <sup>1</sup> Hinder, obstruct.
揮	Tan <sup>4</sup> To dust, beat.	碍	Ai, <sup>4</sup> Ngai <sup>4</sup> Hinder, stand in the way.
灰	Hui <sup>1</sup> Ashes.	礙	As No. 797.
塵	Ch'ên <sup>2</sup> Dust, small particles.	抹	Mo <sup>3</sup> To dust, polish, rub with the hand.
鄰	Lin <sup>2</sup> Neighbouring, neighbour.	鏡	Ching <sup>4</sup> Mirror.



## Characters 801—820

切	Ch'ieh <sup>1</sup> All, everything.	鴨	Ya <sup>1</sup> Duck.
括	Kua <sup>1</sup> To blow.	野	Yeh <sup>3</sup> Wild, rustic.
風	Fêng <sup>1</sup> The wind.	集	Chi <sup>1</sup> The fair, to gather together.
雨	Yü <sup>3</sup> Rain.	落	Lo, <sup>4</sup> Lao <sup>4</sup> To come down, to fall, as prices, etc.
簿	Pu <sup>4</sup> Account book.	傷	Shang <sup>1</sup> To injure, to catch (cold).
蛋	Tan <sup>4</sup> Egg, egglike.	醫	I <sup>1</sup> To heal, cure.
芋	Yü <sup>4</sup> The taro and other edible tubers.	剩	Shêng <sup>4</sup> Remainder, left over.
紅	Hung <sup>2</sup> Red.	腦	Nao <sup>3</sup> The brain.
蘿	Lo <sup>2</sup> Carrots.	欠	Ch'ien <sup>4</sup> To be short, to owe.
蔔	Pei <sup>2</sup> Carrots.	昏	Hun <sup>4</sup> Confused.

## Characters 821—840

普	P'u <sup>3</sup> Universal.	厲	Li <sup>4</sup> Sharp, severe, oppress.
池	Ch'ih <sup>2</sup> Pool, pond.	害	Hai <sup>4</sup> Hurt, injure.
題	T'i <sup>2</sup> To mention, sub- ject of dis- course.	傘	San <sup>3</sup> Umbrella, parasol.
剛	Kang <sup>1</sup> Just now, just then.	肯	K'ên <sup>3</sup> Willing, prone to.
轎	Chiao <sup>4</sup> A sedan chair.	跑	P'ao <sup>3</sup> To run, also to walk (long dis- tances).
騎	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> To ride astride.	旅	Lü <sup>3</sup> Travel, journey.
牲	Shêng <sup>1</sup> An animal, cattle.	館	Kuan <sup>1</sup> Hostel, hotel.
步	Pu <sup>4</sup> A step, pace, on foot.	停	T'ing <sup>2</sup> To halt, stop.
顛	Tien <sup>1</sup> Upset, jolting, bumpy.	旁	P'ang <sup>2</sup> By the side of, near.
簸	P'o <sup>4</sup> Winnow, used, of the jolting movement.	坑	K'êng <sup>1</sup> Pit, hollow.

## Characters 851—860

館	As No. 837.	像	Hsiang <sup>4</sup> Like, image.
村	Ts'un <sup>1</sup> Village.	變	Pien <sup>4</sup> To change, alter.
票	P'iao <sup>4</sup> Ticket, voucher.	運	Yün <sup>4</sup> To transport, move, revolve, luck.
趟	T'ang <sup>4</sup> Time, turn, track, classifier of trains.	隊	Tui <sup>4</sup> A company, as of soldiers.
餐	Ts'an <sup>1</sup> To dine, a meal.	伍	Wu <sup>3</sup> Rank of five, mili- tary.
炒	Ch'ao <sup>3</sup> Fry, roast.	消	Hsiao <sup>1</sup> To disperse.
銅	T'ung <sup>2</sup> Copper, copper coins.	息	Hsi <sup>2</sup> Breathe, interest, news.
光	Kuang <sup>1</sup> Light.	新	Hsin <sup>1</sup> New, recent, fresh.
景	Ching <sup>3</sup> Circumstances, prospect.	聞	Wên <sup>2</sup> To hear, to smell.
局	Chü <sup>2</sup> Position, plan.	靠	K'ao <sup>4</sup> Rely, reliable trust.

## Characters 861—880

謠	Yao <sup>3</sup> Lies, false.	船	Ch'uan <sup>2</sup> Boat, ship.
戰	Chan <sup>4</sup> Fight, war, alarmed.	急	Chi <sup>2</sup> Haste, urgent.
苦	K'u <sup>3</sup> Bitter, sorrow.	幸	Hsing <sup>4</sup> Felicitous, fortunate.
極	Chi <sup>2</sup> The extreme limit.	虧	K'uei <sup>1</sup> Lucky, luckily.
軍	Chün <sup>1</sup> Army, military forces.	暈	Yün <sup>4</sup> Dizzy.
閥	Fa <sup>2</sup> Rank, class.	慣	Kuan <sup>4</sup> To be accustomed to.
擴	K'uo <sup>4</sup> Expand, extend.	美	Mei <sup>3</sup> Beautiful, admirable.
充	Ch'ung <sup>1</sup> To fill.	滋	Tzŭ <sup>2</sup> Rich (in sense of flavour).
喲	Yo <sup>1</sup> An exclamation.	味	Wei <sup>4</sup> Taste, flavour.
縣	Hsien <sup>4</sup> District of administration, county town.	穩	Wên <sup>3</sup> Steady, firm, secure, stable.

## Characters 881—900

波 Po<sup>1</sup>  
Waves of the sea.

浪 Lang<sup>4</sup>  
Waves of the sea.

騰 T'êng  
To rise up, to mount.

搖 Yao<sup>2</sup>  
To roll, as a ship.

贖 As No. 817.

海 Hai<sup>3</sup>  
The sea, maritime, vast.

碼 Ma<sup>3</sup>  
Docks, jetty.

希 Hsi<sup>1</sup>  
Hope, rare, few.

磚 Chuan<sup>1</sup>  
Brick.

牆 Ch'iang<sup>2</sup>  
A wall.

轉 Chuan<sup>3</sup>  
Revolve, to turn.

鑽 Tsuan<sup>1</sup>  
To bore, awl, gimlet.

俗 Su<sup>2</sup>  
Common, vulgar.

語 Yü<sup>3</sup>  
Words, language, proverb.

硬 Ying<sup>4</sup>  
Hard.

思 Ssu<sup>1</sup>  
To think, to consider.

耳 Erh<sup>3</sup>  
Ear.

朵 To<sup>3</sup>  
Ear, pendant, classifier of pendent things.

聾 Lung<sup>2</sup>  
Deaf, to be deaf.

睛 Ching<sup>1</sup>  
Eye, iris, pupil.

## Characters 901—920

- |    |  |   |  |
|----|--|---|--|
| 瞎  | Hsia <sup>1</sup><br>Blind.                        | 棉 | Mien <sup>2</sup><br>Cotton, cotton<br>wool.                     |
| 啞  | Ya <sup>3</sup><br>Dumb.                           | 袍 | P'ao <sup>2</sup><br>Long gown.                                  |
| 吧  | Pa <sup>1</sup><br>Dumb.                           | 襖 | Ao, <sup>3</sup> Ngao <sup>3</sup><br>Outer gown, lined<br>coat. |
| 胳膊 | Ko <sup>1</sup><br>Arm.                            | 戴 | Tai <sup>4</sup><br>To wear or carry<br>on the head.             |
| 臂  | Pei <sup>4</sup><br>Arm.                           | 遮 | Chê <sup>1</sup><br>To cover, to<br>screen.                      |
| 麻  | Ma <sup>2</sup><br>Hemp, numb.                     | 袖 | Hsiu <sup>4</sup><br>A sleeve.                                   |
| 摩  | Mo <sup>2</sup><br>To feel with the<br>hand.       | 掛 | As No. 786.  |
| 裳  | Shang <sup>2</sup><br>Clothes.                     | 襪 | Wa <sup>4</sup><br>Stockings, socks.                             |
| 胰  | I <sup>2</sup><br>Soap.                            | 嗜 | Shih <sup>4</sup><br>Fond of, addicted<br>to.                    |
| 勁  | Chin, <sup>4</sup> Ching <sup>4</sup><br>Strength. | 髮 | Fa <sup>3</sup><br>The hair of the<br>head.                      |

## Characters 921—940

辮	Pien <sup>4</sup> The queue, plait.	康	K'ang <sup>1</sup> Well, hale, hearty, peace.
梳	Shu, <sup>1</sup> Su <sup>1</sup> A comb, to comb.	健	Chien <sup>4</sup> Sturdy, strong.
刷	Shua <sup>1</sup> A brush, to brush.	窮	Ch'iuang <sup>2</sup> Poor, poverty- stricken.
齒	Ch'ih <sup>3</sup> Teeth.	體	T'i <sup>3</sup> The body, limbs, to sympathise.
扣	K'ou <sup>4</sup> A button, to but- ton.	恤	Hsü <sup>4 5</sup> Pity, to sympa- thise.
指	Chih <sup>3</sup> The fingers, to point.	賙	Chou <sup>1</sup> To be charitable, to help.
保	Pao <sup>3</sup> To guard, protect, preserve.	濟	Chi <sup>4</sup> To save, help, deliver.
持	Ch'ih <sup>2</sup> To preserve, hold, grasp.	訓	Hsün <sup>4</sup> To teach, instruct.
盆	P'ên <sup>2</sup> A basin, bowl, bath.	守	Shou <sup>3</sup> To keep, observe.
絹	Chüan <sup>4</sup> A napkin, towel, handkerchief.	矩	Chü <sup>3</sup> Rule.

## Characters 951—960

聲	Shêng <sup>1</sup> Tone, voice, repute.	將	Chiang <sup>1</sup> To take, hold; a leader.
陰	Yin <sup>1</sup> Shady, secret. The female prin- ciple.	提	T'i <sup>2</sup> To mention, raise a matter.
賞	Shang <sup>3</sup> Reward. Name of second tone.	拔	Pa <sup>2</sup> Raise, help up.
入	Ju <sup>4</sup> To enter. Name of entering tone.	室	Shih <sup>4</sup> Room, house, office.
效	Hsiao <sup>4</sup> To imitate, copy.	漸	Chien <sup>4</sup> Gradually.
語	Yü <sup>3</sup> Words, a saying.	淡	Tan <sup>4</sup> Insipid, weak (as liquids).
勸	Ch'üan <sup>4</sup> Exhort, encour- age.	待	Tai <sup>4</sup> To treat, to be- have.
向	Hsiang <sup>4</sup> Facing towards, to or from.	態	T'ai <sup>4</sup> Behaviour, bear- ing, attitude.
求	Ch'iu <sup>2</sup> To implore, to seek after.	改	Kai <sup>3</sup> To alter, to change.
竟	Ching <sup>4</sup> Really, finally.	緣	Yüan <sup>2</sup> Cause, reason.



## Characters 961—980

故	Ku <sup>4</sup> Cause, reason.	鎮	Chên <sup>4</sup> Market town, mart, to guard.
厚	Hou <sup>4</sup> Generous, thick.	倡	Ch'ang <sup>4</sup> To lead.
薄	Po <sup>2</sup> , Pao <sup>2</sup> Mean, stingy, thin.	畢	Pi <sup>4</sup> To finish, end.
困	K'un <sup>4</sup> Straitened, dis- tressed.	業	Yeh <sup>4</sup> Course, occupa- tion, profession.
減	Chien <sup>3</sup> To reduce, diminish.	省	Shêng <sup>3</sup> A province, frugal.
*薪	Hsin <sup>1</sup> Fuel, firewood.	範	Fan <sup>4</sup> Model, pattern.
既	Chi <sup>4</sup> Since, seeing that.	莊	Chuang <sup>1</sup> A farm, farm- stead, the fields.
限	Hsien <sup>4</sup> Limit, boundary.	稼	Chia <sup>4</sup> Grain, crops, to sow.
謙	Ch'ien <sup>1</sup> Humble, modest.	豐	Fêng <sup>1</sup> Luxuriant, flourishing.
育	Yü <sup>4</sup> Rear, nurture.	靜	Ching <sup>4</sup> Placid, calm.

## Characters 981—1000

麥	Mai <sup>4</sup> , Mo <sup>4</sup> Wheat.	模	Mu <sup>2</sup> , Mo <sup>2</sup> Model, pattern.
米	Mi <sup>3</sup> Millet, grain in general.	治	Chih <sup>4</sup> To cure, to treat (medically, etc.)
納	Na <sup>4</sup> To pay, to take, to receive.	介	Chieh <sup>4</sup> Introduce, announce.
糧	Liang <sup>2</sup> Taxes, rations, grains.	紹	Shao <sup>4</sup> Introduce, hand down.
症	Chêng <sup>4</sup> Disease, ailments.	益	I <sup>2</sup> Benefit, advantage.
匪	Fei <sup>3</sup> Worthless, bandits, rebels.	習	Hsi <sup>2</sup> Versed in, familiar, practiced.
警	Ching <sup>1</sup> Alarm, watch.	縱	Tsung <sup>4</sup> Although, lax.
察	Ch'a <sup>2</sup> To examine, investigate.	遵	Tsun <sup>1</sup> To accord with, follow, obey.
職	Chih <sup>2</sup> Public office, appointment.	命	Ming <sup>4</sup> A command. Fate. Life.
愧	K'uei <sup>4</sup> Ashamed.	興	Hsing <sup>1</sup> Elated, rejoice.

## Characters 1001—1020

跌	Tieh <sup>1</sup> To stumble, fall.	脾	P'i <sup>2</sup> Spleen, disposition.
品	P'in <sup>3</sup> Sort, class, kind, character.	立	Li <sup>4</sup> To stand up, to establish.
脈	Mo <sup>4</sup> The pulse.	榜	Pang <sup>3</sup> Example, pattern.
疼	T'êng <sup>2</sup> Pain, to be in pain.	忍	Jên <sup>3</sup> Endure, restrain.
配	P'ei <sup>4</sup> To mix, make up, as medicines.	麻	Ma <sup>2</sup> Hemp.
瀉	Hsieh <sup>4</sup> To purge, drain, diarrhœa.	煩	Fan <sup>2</sup> To trouble, annoy, annoyance.
濃	Nêng <sup>2</sup> , Nung <sup>2</sup> Thick, strong—of liquids.	囉	Lo <sup>2</sup> Vexatious, annoyance.
副	Fu <sup>4</sup> A dose. Classifier of medicine doses.	唆	So <sup>1</sup> To incite, discord, mischief.
丸	Wan <sup>2</sup> Pill, pills.	架	Chia <sup>1</sup> Blows, squabble, a frame.
粉	Fên <sup>3</sup> Medicinal powder, flour, meal.	衝	Ch'ung <sup>1</sup> To clash, dash against.

## Characters 1021—1040

突	T'u <sup>4</sup> Rush against.	深	Shên <sup>1</sup> Deep, profound, versed in.
吵	Ch'ao <sup>3</sup> Altercation, row, noise.	儒	Ju <sup>2</sup> Confucian, learned.
嘴	Tsui <sup>3</sup> Lips.	割	Ko <sup>1</sup> To cut.
驕	Chiao <sup>1</sup> Proud, arrogant.	繩	Shêng <sup>3</sup> Rope, string, cord.
傲	Ao <sup>4</sup> , Ngao <sup>4</sup> Haughty, proud.	粗	Ts'u <sup>1</sup> Coarse, rough, bulky.
卑	Pei <sup>1</sup> Low.	斷	Tuan <sup>4</sup> To cut off, break.
耐	Nai <sup>4</sup> To endure, be patient, bear.	較	Chiao <sup>3</sup> To compare, to test, more than.
惹	Jo <sup>3</sup> To provoke.	絞	Chiao <sup>3</sup> To cut with scis- sors, twist, crosswise.
聰	Ts'ung <sup>1</sup> Intelligent, under- standing, clever.	剪	Chien <sup>1</sup> Scissors.
達	Ta <sup>2</sup> Penetrate, inform.	鈍	Tun <sup>4</sup> Dull, blunt.

## Characters 1041—1060

磨	Mo <sup>2</sup> To grind, rub, mill.	護	Hu <sup>4</sup> To protect, guard.
由	Yu <sup>2</sup> Reason, cause.	擠	Chi <sup>3</sup> To crowd together, to press.
奇	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> Strange, wonderful, rare.	散	San <sup>4</sup> To scatter, disperse.
怪	Kuai <sup>4</sup> Extraordinary, unusual, to blame.	彼	Pi <sup>3</sup> That.
章	Chang <sup>1</sup> Chapter, essay.	此	Tz'ü <sup>3</sup> This.
節	Chieh <sup>2</sup> Verse, section.	讓	Jang <sup>4</sup> To concede, give way, yield.
頁	Yeh <sup>4</sup> Page, leaf of a book.	步	Pu <sup>4</sup> A step, on foot.
導	Tao <sup>3</sup> To lead.	退	T'ui <sup>4</sup> To retreat, retire, move back.
諸	Chu <sup>1</sup> All.	脫	T'o <sup>1</sup> To doff the hat, take off (clothes).
觀	Kuan <sup>1</sup> To look on, to observe.	鞠	Chü <sup>2</sup> To bow, bend the body.

## Characters 1061—1080

躬	Kung <sup>1</sup> The body, person.	頓	Tun <sup>4</sup> To stamp the foot, a time.
左	Tso <sup>3</sup> Left.	野	Yeh <sup>3</sup> Wild.
右	Yu <sup>4</sup> Right.	讚	Tsan <sup>4</sup> To praise, to com- mend.
素	Su <sup>4</sup> Cardinal, funda- mental, ordin- ary.	閃	Shan <sup>3</sup> Flash, lightning.
食	Shih <sup>2</sup> Food.	響	Hsiang <sup>3</sup> Sound, echo. To make a noise.
樞	Shu <sup>1</sup> A pivot, axis, fun- damental.	响	As No. 1075.
暖	Nuan <sup>3</sup> Warm, genial.	雷	Lei <sup>2</sup> Thunder.
飽	Pao <sup>3</sup> Replete, full.	雪	Hsüeh <sup>3 5</sup> Snow.
假	Chia <sup>2</sup> Holiday.	霜	Shuang <sup>1</sup> Frost.
鄉	Hsiang <sup>1</sup> The country, countryside, rural.	樹	Shu <sup>4</sup> Tree.

## Characters 1081—1100

河	Ho <sup>2</sup> River.	佛	Fo <sup>2</sup> Buddha.
湖	Hu <sup>2</sup> Lake.	蒼	Ts'ang <sup>1</sup> A fly.
凍	Tung <sup>4</sup> To freeze.	蠅	Ying <sup>2</sup> A fly.
秋	Ch'iu <sup>1</sup> Autumn, harvest.	螞	Ma <sup>3</sup> An ant.
霧	Wu <sup>4</sup> Mist.	蟻	I <sup>3</sup> An ant.
緻	Chih <sup>4</sup> Scenery, view.	討	T'ao <sup>3</sup> To beg, seek.
坡	P'o <sup>1</sup> The slope of a hill.	厭	Yen <sup>4</sup> Dislike.
廟	Miao <sup>4</sup> Temple, fair.	咬	Yao <sup>3</sup> To bite.
塔	T'a <sup>3</sup> Pagoda.	駱	Lo <sup>4</sup> Camel.
尚	Shang <sup>4</sup> Still, yet, to ascend, to be in charge of.	駝	T'o <sup>3</sup> Camel.

## Characters 1101—1120

騾

Lo<sup>3</sup>  
Mule.

驢

Lü<sup>2</sup>  
Donkey.

香

Hsiang<sup>1</sup>  
Fragrant.

抱

Pao<sup>4</sup>  
To nurse, carry in  
the arms.

背

Pei<sup>4</sup>  
To carry on the  
back.

挑

T'iao<sup>1</sup>  
To carry on a  
pole on the  
shoulder.

唱

Ch'ang<sup>4</sup>  
To sing.

戲

Hsi<sup>4</sup>  
Theatricals, play  
on stage.

鬧

Nao<sup>4</sup>  
Noise, bustle, dis-  
turb.

趁

Ch'en<sup>4</sup>  
Avail of.

湧

Yung<sup>3</sup>  
To crowd or press  
together.

擠

Chi<sup>3</sup>  
To crowd to-  
gether.

扛

K'ang<sup>4</sup>  
To carry on  
shoulder.

牽

Ch'ien<sup>1</sup>  
To lead a horse  
by the bridle.

匹

P'i<sup>3</sup>  
Classifier of  
horses.

踩

Ts'ai<sup>4</sup>  
To trample or  
step on.

危

Wei<sup>1</sup>  
Dangerous.

險

Hsien<sup>1</sup>  
Dangerous.

金

Chin<sup>1</sup>  
Gold, metal

煉

Lien<sup>4</sup>  
To refine.



## Characters 1121—1140

瓜	Kua <sup>1</sup> Melon.	栽	Tsai <sup>1</sup> To plant.
蓮	Lien <sup>2</sup> The lotus.	乘	Ch'êng <sup>2</sup> To avail of. To ascend.
遙	Yao <sup>2</sup> Distant.	鳥	Niao <sup>3</sup> Bird.
吹	Ch'ui <sup>1</sup> To blow.	舊	Chiu <sup>4</sup> Ancient, old.
疵	Tz'ü <sup>1</sup> A flaw, blemish.	謀	Mou <sup>2</sup> To plan, devise.
救	Chiu <sup>4</sup> To save, deliver.	貓	Mao <sup>2 1</sup> Cat.
近	Chin <sup>4</sup> Near, to approach.	死	Ssü <sup>3</sup> Dead, to die.
虎	Hu <sup>3</sup> Tiger.	鼠	Shu <sup>3</sup> Rat, mouse.
踏	T'a <sup>4</sup> To step on, tread.	善	Shan <sup>4</sup> Good, virtuous. To perfect.
隻	Chih <sup>1</sup> Classifier of boots, shoes, etc.	惡	O <sup>4</sup> Evil, wicked, wrong. Wu <sup>4</sup> Hate, dislike.

## Characters 1141—1160

報	Pao <sup>4</sup> To announce, to inform. A newspaper.	郵	Yu <sup>2</sup> To convey, postal service.
閉	Pi <sup>4</sup> To close, to stop up.	政	Chêng <sup>4</sup> Government, administration.
石	Shih <sup>2</sup> Stone.	內	Nei <sup>4</sup> Inside, within.
造	Tsao <sup>4</sup> To build, make.	貼	T'ieh <sup>1</sup> To stick on, as stamps.
插	Cha <sup>1</sup> To stick in.	祖	Tsu <sup>3</sup> Ancestors.
旗	Ch'i <sup>2</sup> Flag, banner.	肚	Tu <sup>4</sup> stomach, belly.
桿	Kan <sup>3</sup> A staff, a pole.	餓	O <sup>4</sup> Hungry.
影	Ying <sup>3</sup> Shadow, image.	啤	P'i <sup>2</sup> Beer.
行	Hsing <sup>2</sup> To walk, to do.	樂	Yo <sup>4</sup> , Yüeh <sup>4</sup> Music.
滙	Hang <sup>2</sup> A store, shop.	廣	Kuang <sup>3</sup> Wide, broadcast.
	Hui <sup>4</sup> To exchange money.		

## Characters 1161—1180

播 Po<sup>1</sup>  
To spread abroad.

跳 T'iao<sup>4</sup>  
To dance, jump.

舞 Wu<sup>3</sup>  
To posture,  
brandish, dance.

累 Lei<sup>3</sup>  
Tired, fatigued.

趣 Ch'ü<sup>4</sup>  
Interesting, amus-  
ing.

輩 Pei<sup>4</sup>  
Generation.

維 Wei<sup>2</sup>  
To maintain, or-  
ganise.

族 Tsu<sup>2</sup>  
A clan, a tribe,  
to collect to-  
gether.

項 Hsiang<sup>4</sup>  
The nape of the  
neck, an item.

原 Yüan<sup>2</sup>  
A source, original.

私 Ssü<sup>1</sup>  
Selfish, private.

德 Tê<sup>2</sup>  
Virtue, power.

投 T'ou<sup>2</sup>  
To hand in, sur-  
render.

降 Chiang<sup>4</sup>  
To descend.  
Hsiang<sup>2</sup>  
To surrender.

抵 Ti<sup>3</sup>  
To resist.

抗 K'ang<sup>4</sup>  
To resist, oppose.

侵 Ch'in<sup>1</sup>  
To invade.

略 Liao<sup>2</sup>  
To plunder.

被 Pei<sup>3 4</sup>  
A coverlet, sign  
of passive.

炸 Cha<sup>2</sup>  
To smash, ex-  
plode.

## Characters 1181—1200

彈	Tan 4 Bomb, bullet.
壞	Huai 4 Ruin, destroy, spoil.
盟	Mêng 2 Covenant, alli- ance.
勝	Shêng 1 Victory, conquer.
敗	Pai 4 Defeat, spoil.
械	Chieh 4 Weapons.
殘	Ts'an 2 Injure, cruel.
暴	Pao 4 Violent, fierce, cruel.
受	Shou 4 To receive, suffer.
嚇	Hsia 4 Alarm, startle.

宣	Hsüan 1 To proclaim.
組	Tsu 3 To organise.
織	Chih 1 To weave.
聯	Lien 3 To connect, unite.
陸	Lu 4 Dry land, six.
議	I 4 To discuss, con- sult.
複	Fu 4 Double.
雜	Tsa 2 Confused, compli- cated.
產	Ch'an 3 Property.
民	Min 2 The people.

## Characters 1201—1210

革

Ko<sup>2</sup>  
To change, alter.

派

P'ai<sup>4</sup>  
Party, separate,  
branch.

黨

Tang<sup>3</sup>  
Party, association,  
faction.

眾

Chung<sup>4</sup>  
All, a crowd.

楚

Ch'u<sup>2</sup>  
Clear, sharp.

套

T'ao<sup>4</sup>  
A case, a wrap-  
per, to harness.

朗

Lang<sup>3</sup>  
Clear, bright.

班

Pan<sup>1</sup>  
A class, company.

武

Wu<sup>2</sup>  
Military.

電

Pao<sup>2</sup>  
Hall.



HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY  
FROM THE RADICALS

## HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY FROM THE RADICALS

It has already been pointed out in the preceding Section that Chinese characters are readily analysed into two parts, Radical and Phonetic.

The Radicals number 214, while the number of Phonetics varies according to the predilection of the individual scholar. Soothill, as has already been noted, selects 888 to make up his Pocket Dictionary of Four Thousand Characters.

The list of Radicals is appended for the information of the student, and also to enable him to use it to find characters in any of the popular dictionaries designed to help the foreigner studying Chinese.

It will be noted that the Radicals are arranged in the order of the number of strokes of which they are composed.

The Radicals vary in importance according to the relative frequency with which they occur. It is desirable that the Radicals should be written out frequently and memorised, together with their number and meaning. The numbers are necessary, as dictionaries for foreign students are arranged on the principle of classifying characters under the Radicals in numerical order from 1 to 214.

In the list of Radicals appended the tones are indicated in the usual way, 1, 2, 3 and 4. But in addition another mark (\*) is attached to some to indicate the fifth tone, or "Ju" shêng, to which reference is made in Dialogue 30. As the writer lived in Shansi province for eighteen years, where the "Ju" shêng is in common use, I have included this particular tone for the Radicals. The student will often find in text-books opinions expressed that the "Ju" shêng, in effect, is dying out, and that no



particular attention need be paid to it. But that is true only of certain provinces. If the student travels in the north and north-west he will hear the tone frequently used. In writing out the Chinese characters of this tone in Romanised it is usual to add an "h" to the end of the words.

A list of a few specimen characters from a dictionary is also appended, to enable the student to find characters in the dictionary from the Radicals.

First of all it is necessary to discover the Radical part of the character you wish to look up. If you have made yourself familiar with the 214 Radicals this should not present any serious difficulty. The bigger dictionaries, like Giles, give a list of characters, the Radicals of which are difficult to discover. Relatively speaking these are comparatively few.

The selected characters as appended all have Radical No. 61 in them. This is the "heart" Radical, and, as you will see, it is found in characters which express thought, emotions, personal characteristics and the like.

Notice that this particular Radical is written in three forms, only two of which, 心 and 忄, are illustrated. Notice further that the position of the Radical in the characters varies. It is sometimes at the left-hand side, sometimes at the bottom, and, in one instance, in the character "ai", 愛, to love, it is found, appropriately, at the very heart of the character.

Having found that the particular character for which we are hunting has the Radical "heart" as its root, we now count the number of strokes in the rest of the character. Note "in the rest of the character". You do not include the strokes of the Radical itself in your reckoning.

Take for example the first character on our selected list. It is the character "nu", 怒, anger. This has five strokes in it in addition to the Radical. So it is listed in the dictionary under the Radical No. 61, and

## HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY FROM THE RADICALS

It has already been pointed out in the preceding Section that Chinese characters are readily analysed into two parts, Radical and Phonetic.

The Radicals number 214, while the number of Phonetics varies according to the predilection of the individual scholar. Soothill, as has already been noted, selects 888 to make up his Pocket Dictionary of Four Thousand Characters.

The list of Radicals is appended for the information of the student, and also to enable him to use it to find characters in any of the popular dictionaries designed to help the foreigner studying Chinese.

It will be noted that the Radicals are arranged in the order of the number of strokes of which they are composed.

The Radicals vary in importance according to the relative frequency with which they occur. It is desirable that the Radicals should be written out frequently and memorised, together with their number and meaning. The numbers are necessary, as dictionaries for foreign students are arranged on the principle of classifying characters under the Radicals in numerical order from 1 to 214.

In the list of Radicals appended the tones are indicated in the usual way, 1, 2, 3 and 4. But in addition another mark (\*) is attached to some to indicate the fifth tone, or "Ju" shêng, to which reference is made in Dialogue 30. As the writer lived in Shansi province for eighteen years, where the "Ju" shêng is in common use, I have included this particular tone for the Radicals. The student will often find in text-books opinions expressed that the "Ju" shêng, in effect, is dying out, and that no

particular attention need be paid to it. But that is true only of certain provinces. If the student travels in the north and north-west he will hear the tone frequently used. In writing out the Chinese characters of this tone in Romanised it is usual to add an "h" to the end of the words.

A list of a few specimen characters from a dictionary is also appended, to enable the student to find characters in the dictionary from the Radicals.

First of all it is necessary to discover the Radical part of the character you wish to look up. If you have made yourself familiar with the 214 Radicals this should not present any serious difficulty. The bigger dictionaries, like Giles, give a list of characters, the Radicals of which are difficult to discover. Relatively speaking these are comparatively few.

The selected characters as appended all have Radical No. 61 in them. This is the "heart" Radical, and, as you will see, it is found in characters which express thought, emotions, personal characteristics and the like.

Notice that this particular Radical is written in three forms, only two of which, 心 and 忄, are illustrated. Notice further that the position of the Radical in the characters varies. It is sometimes at the left-hand side, sometimes at the bottom, and, in one instance, in the character "ai", 愛, to love, it is found, appropriately, at the very heart of the character.

Having found that the particular character for which we are hunting has the Radical "heart" as its root, we now count the number of strokes in the rest of the character. Note "in the rest of the character". You do NOT include the strokes of the Radical itself in your reckoning.

Take for example the first character on our selected list. It is the character "nu", 怒, anger. This has five strokes in it in addition to the Radical. So it is listed in the dictionary under the Radical No. 61, and

again under 5, the figure at the left-hand side of the character list. The same rule applies throughout.

Take another illustration from the character "k'ung", 恐, to fear. This character has six strokes in addition to the Radical, and so is listed under 6. "Wu", 悞, has seven, "hsi", 惜, has eight, and "I", 意, nine.

The numbers at the right-hand side of the character list refer to the numbers of the Phonetics, ranging from 1 to 888 in Soothill, under which the characters are classified again, with their meanings, and other characters with which they are commonly associated, making composite characters or phrases.

After the student has discovered the character from the Radical and number of strokes, he looks up the number on the right-hand side, in the body of the dictionary, and there he will find the meaning of the character and the way in which it is used.

With these illustrations and hints to guide him, the student should have no great difficulty in finding his way through a Chinese dictionary.

SPECIMEN CHARACTERS FROM SOOTHILL'S  
DICTIONARY

5. 怒 558—Nu.<sup>4</sup> Anger.  
 怕 804—P'a.<sup>4</sup> Fear.  
 性 41—Hsing.<sup>4</sup> Nature, temper, disposition.  
 思 379—Ssü.<sup>1</sup> Think on, ponder,<sup>4</sup> thought.  
 怎 150—Tsên.<sup>3</sup> How? what? why?
6. 恐 8—K'ung.<sup>3</sup> To fear.  
 息 853—Hsi.<sup>2</sup> \* Breath, sigh, interest, rest.
7. 悞 761—Wu.<sup>4</sup> Neglect, hinder.
8. 惜 799—Hsi.<sup>1</sup> \* Pity, spare, care for.  
 情 82—Ch'ing.<sup>2</sup> Feelings, passion for.  
 惡 247—O.<sup>4</sup> Evil, wicked, low,\* hate.
9. 意 91—I.<sup>4</sup> Idea, intention, meaning, wish.  
 惹 182—Jo.<sup>3</sup> Provoke.  
 愛 411—Ai.<sup>4</sup> To love, to like.

## LIST OF RADICALS

*Arranged in order according to the number of strokes*

## 1 Stroke

- |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | 一 | I. <sup>1</sup> * One, unity.               |
| 2. | 丨 | K'un. <sup>3</sup> Downstroke.              |
| 3. | 丶 | Chu. <sup>3</sup> A point, dot.             |
| 4. | ノ | P'ieh. <sup>1</sup> * Stroke to left.       |
| 5. | 乙 | I. <sup>4</sup> * One, second of ten stems. |
| 6. | 丿 | Chüeh. <sup>2</sup> * A hook.               |

## 2 Strokes

- |     |      |  |
|-----|------|--|
| 7.  | 二    | Êrh. <sup>4</sup> Two.                   |
| 8.  | 宀    | T'ou. <sup>2</sup> Roof, cover.          |
| 9.  | 人。亻。 | Jên. <sup>2</sup> Man.                   |
| 10. | 儿    | Jên. <sup>2</sup> Man, variant of 9.     |
| 11. | 入    | Ju. <sup>4</sup> * Enter.                |
| 12. | 八    | Pa. <sup>1</sup> * Eight.                |
| 13. | 冂    | Chiung. <sup>3</sup> Limits, boundaries. |
| 14. | 冃    | Mi. <sup>4</sup> * Cover, roof.          |
| 15. | 冫    | Ping. <sup>1</sup> Ice.                  |
| 16. | 几    | Chi. <sup>1</sup> Table, stand.          |
| 17. | 凵    | K'an. <sup>3</sup> Receptacle.           |
| 18. | 刀。刂。 | Tao. <sup>1</sup> Knife.                 |
| 19. | 力    | Li. <sup>4</sup> * Strength.             |
| 20. | 勹    | Pao. <sup>1</sup> To wrap.               |
| 21. | 匕    | Pi. <sup>3</sup> Spoon, ladle.           |
| 22. | 匚    | Fang. <sup>1</sup> Basket, chest.        |
| 23. | 匸    | Hsi. <sup>3</sup> Box, conceal.          |

24. 十 Shih.<sup>2</sup>\* Ten.  
 25. 卜 Pu.<sup>3</sup>\* To divine.  
 26. 卩。卮。 Chieh.<sup>2</sup>\* A seal.  
 27. 厂 Han.<sup>4</sup> A ledge, cliff.  
 28. 厶 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Private, selfish.  
 29. 又 Tu.<sup>4</sup> Again, also hand.

## 3 Strokes

30. 口 K'ou.<sup>3</sup> Mouth.  
 31. 口 Hui.<sup>2</sup> An enclosure.  
 32. 土 T'u.<sup>3</sup> Earth.  
 33. 士 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Scholar, officer.  
 34. 夕 Chih.<sup>3</sup> A step, advance.  
 35. 夕 Sui.<sup>1</sup> Walk slowly.  
 36. 夕 Hsi.<sup>2</sup>\* Evening.  
 37. 大 Ta.<sup>4</sup> Great.  
 38. 女 Nü.<sup>1</sup> Woman, female.  
 39. 子 Tzu.<sup>3</sup> Son, child.  
 40. 宀 Mien.<sup>2</sup> A roof.  
 41. 寸 Ts'un.<sup>4</sup> An inch.  
 42. 小 Hsiao.<sup>3</sup> Small.  
 43. 尢。兀。尢。 Wang.<sup>1</sup> Lame.  
 44. 尸 Shih.<sup>1</sup> A corpse.  
 45. 屮 Ch'ê.<sup>4</sup>\* A sprout.  
 46. 山 Shan.<sup>1</sup> Hill.  
 47. 川。川。 Ch'uan.<sup>1</sup> Stream.  
 48. 工 Kung.<sup>1</sup> Work.  
 49. 己 Chi.<sup>3</sup> Self.  
 50. 巾 Chin.<sup>1</sup> Napkin.  
 51. 干 Kan.<sup>1</sup> Shield.  
 52. 幺 Yao.<sup>1</sup> Small, tender.  
 53. 广 Yen.<sup>3</sup> Roof, cover.

54. 互 Yin.<sup>3</sup> To move on.  
 55. 廿 Kung.<sup>3</sup> Folded hands.  
 56. 弋 I.<sup>4</sup> \* A dart.  
 57. 弓 Kung.<sup>1</sup> A bow.  
 58. 彡。彡。 Chi.<sup>4</sup> Pig's snout.  
 59. 彡 Shan.<sup>1</sup> Plumage, streaky.  
 60. 彡 Ch'ih.<sup>4</sup> \* A step.

#### 4 Strokes

61. 心。小。小。 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> Heart.  
 62. 戈 Ko.<sup>1</sup> A spear.  
 63. 戶 Hu.<sup>4</sup> Door, family.  
 64. 手。扌。 Shou.<sup>3</sup> Hand.  
 65. 支 Chi.<sup>1</sup> Branch.  
 66. 支。攴。 P'u.<sup>1</sup> To tap, rap.  
 67. 文 Wên.<sup>2</sup> Literature, ornament.  
 68. 斗 Tou.<sup>3</sup> A peck.  
 69. 斤 Chin.<sup>1</sup> Catty, axe.  
 70. 方 Fang.<sup>1</sup> Square.  
 71. 无。无。 Wu.<sup>2</sup> Not, without.  
 72. 日 Jih.<sup>4</sup> \* Sun, day.  
 73. 日 Yüeh.<sup>4</sup> \* To say.  
 74. 月 Yüeh.<sup>4</sup> \* Moon, month.  
 75. 木 Mu.<sup>4</sup> \* Wood, tree.  
 76. 欠 Ch'ien.<sup>4</sup> To owe, short of.  
 77. 止 Chih.<sup>3</sup> To stop.  
 78. 歹。歹。 Tai.<sup>3</sup> Bad.  
 79. 殳。殳。 Shu.<sup>1</sup> Pole-axe, kill.  
 80. 毋 Wu.<sup>2</sup> Do not!  
 81. 比 Pi.<sup>3</sup> Compare.  
 82. 毛 Mao.<sup>2</sup> Hair.  
 88. 氏 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Family, clan.



84. 气 Ch'i.<sup>4</sup> Breath, vapour.  
 85. 水。𠂔。水。 Shui.<sup>3</sup> Water.  
 86. 火。灠。 Huo.<sup>3</sup> Fire.  
 87. 爪。𠂔。 Chao.<sup>3</sup> Claws.  
 88. 父 Fu.<sup>4</sup> Father.  
 89. 交 Yao.<sup>3</sup> Crosswise, intertwine.  
 90. 爿 Ch'iang.<sup>2</sup> Frame, bed.  
 91. 片 P'ien.<sup>4</sup> A slip, strip.  
 92. 牙 Ya.<sup>2</sup> Tooth.  
 93. 牛 Niu.<sup>2</sup> Ox.  
 94. 犬。犴。 Ch'üan.<sup>3</sup> Dog.

## 5 Strokes

95. 玄 Hsüan.<sup>2</sup> Dark, obscure.  
 96. 玉。王。 Yü.<sup>4</sup> \* Gem, jade.  
 97. 瓜 Kua.<sup>1</sup> Melon, gourd.  
 98. 瓦 Wa.<sup>3</sup> A tile.  
 99. 甘 Kan.<sup>1</sup> Sweet.  
 100. 生 Shêng. Beget, live.  
 101. 用 Yung.<sup>4</sup> Use.  
 102. 田 T'ien.<sup>2</sup> Field.  
 103. 疋 P'i.<sup>3</sup> \* A roll of cloth.  
 104. 疒 Ni.<sup>4</sup> \* Sick, disease.  
 105. 𠂔 Po.<sup>4</sup> \* Back to back.  
 106. 白 Pai.<sup>2</sup> White.  
 107. 皮 P'i.<sup>2</sup> Skin.  
 108. 皿 Min.<sup>3</sup> Dish, platter.  
 109. 目。𠂔。 Mu.<sup>4</sup> \* Eye.  
 110. 矛 Mao.<sup>2</sup> Halberd, lance.  
 111. 矢 Shih.<sup>4</sup> Arrow.  
 112. 石 Shih.<sup>2</sup> \* Stone.  
 113. 示。示。示。 Shih.<sup>4</sup> To indicate.  
 114. 尗。示。示。 Jou.<sup>3</sup> \* Track, a step.

115. 禾 Ho.<sup>2</sup> Growing grain.  
 116. 穴 Hsüeh.<sup>4</sup> A cave, hole.  
 117. 立 Li.<sup>4</sup> \* To stand.

## 6 Strokes

118. 竹 Chu.<sup>2</sup> \* Bamboo.  
 119. 米 Mi.<sup>3</sup> Rice.  
 120. 糸, 纟。 Ssu.<sup>1</sup> Mi.<sup>4</sup> \* Raw silk.  
 121. 缶 Fou.<sup>3</sup> Earthenware.  
 122. 网, 罟。 Wáng.<sup>3</sup> Wang.<sup>3</sup> A net.  
 123. 羊 Yang.<sup>2</sup> Sheep.  
 124. 羽 Yü. Feather, wing.  
 125. 老 Lao.<sup>3</sup> Old.  
 126. 而 Erh.<sup>2</sup> And, yet.  
 127. 耒 Lei.<sup>3</sup> A plough.  
 128. 耳 Erh.<sup>3</sup> Ear.  
 129. 聿 Yü.<sup>4</sup> \* Pencil, brush.  
 130. 肉, 月。 Jou.<sup>4</sup> \* Flesh.  
 131. 臣 Ch'ên. A Statesman.  
 132. 自 Tzu.<sup>4</sup> Self, from.  
 133. 至 Chih.<sup>4</sup> Reach to.  
 134. 臼 Chiu.<sup>4</sup> A mortar.  
 135. 舌 She.<sup>2</sup> \* The tongue.  
 136. 舛 Ch'uan.<sup>3</sup> Oppose, contradict.  
 137. 舟 Chou.<sup>1</sup> Boat.  
 138. 艮 Kên. Perverse, limit.  
 139. 色 Sê.<sup>4</sup> \* Colour.  
 140. 艸, 艹。 Ts'ao.<sup>3</sup> Grass, herbs.  
 141. 虍 Hu.<sup>1</sup> Tiger.  
 142. 虫 Ch'ung.<sup>2</sup> Insect, reptile.  
 143. 血 Hsüeh.<sup>3</sup> \* Blood.  
 144. 行 Hsing.<sup>2</sup> To go, to do.

145. 衣。衣。I.<sup>1</sup> Clothes.  
146. 西。西。Hsi.<sup>1</sup> West.

## 7 Strokes

147. 見 Chien.<sup>4</sup> See.  
148. 角 Chio.<sup>2</sup>\* Horn, corner.  
149. 言 Yen.<sup>2</sup> Words, to speak.  
150. 谷 Ku.<sup>3</sup>\* Valley, gully.  
151. 豆 Tou.<sup>4</sup> Beans, platter.  
152. 豕 Shih.<sup>3</sup> Pig, swine.  
153. 豸 Chai.<sup>4</sup> Reptile.  
154. 貝 Pei.<sup>4</sup> Precious, cowrie.  
155. 赤 Ch'ih.<sup>4</sup>\* Flesh colour, red, naked.  
156. 走 Tsou.<sup>3</sup> Walk.  
157. 足 Tsu.<sup>2</sup> Foot, enough.  
158. 身 Shên.<sup>1</sup> Body.  
159. 車 Ch'e.<sup>1</sup> Cart, coach.  
160. 辛 Hsin.<sup>1</sup> Bitter, pungent.  
161. 辰 Ch'ên.<sup>2</sup> Time.  
162. 走。走。Cho.<sup>1</sup>\* To advance, run.  
163. 邑。邑。I.<sup>4</sup> City, district.  
164. 酉 Yu.<sup>3</sup> New wine, ripe.  
165. 采 Pien.<sup>4</sup> Separate, discern.  
166. 里 Li.<sup>3</sup> A Chinese mile.

## 8 Strokes

167. 金 Chin.<sup>1</sup> Metal, gold.  
168. 長。長。Ch'ang.<sup>3</sup> Long.  
169. 門 Mên.<sup>2</sup> Door.  
170. 阜。阜。Fou.<sup>4</sup> A mound.  
171. 隸 Tai.<sup>4</sup> Reach to.  
172. 隹 Chui.<sup>1</sup> Short-tailed birds.

173. 雨 Yü.<sup>3</sup> Rain.  
 174. 青 Ch'ing.<sup>1</sup> Green, blue sky.  
 175. 非 Fei.<sup>1</sup> Wrong, not.

## 9 Strokes

176. 面 Mien.<sup>4</sup> Face.  
 177. 革 Ko.<sup>2</sup> \* Hides.  
 178. 韋 Wei.<sup>2</sup> Leather, thong.  
 179. 韭 Chiu.<sup>3</sup> Leeks.  
 180. 音 Yin.<sup>1</sup> Sound.  
 181. 頁 Yeh.<sup>4</sup> \* A page.  
 182. 風 Fêng.<sup>1</sup> Wind.  
 183. 飛 Fei.<sup>1</sup> To fly.  
 184. 食 Shih.<sup>2</sup> \* To eat.  
 185. 首 Shou.<sup>3</sup> Head.  
 186. 香 Hsiang.<sup>1</sup> Scent, fragrance.

## 10 Strokes

187. 馬 Ma.<sup>3</sup> A horse.  
 188. 骨 Ku.<sup>3</sup> \* Bone.  
 189. 高 Kao.<sup>1</sup> High.  
 190. 髟 Piao.<sup>1</sup> Hair.  
 191. 鬥 Tou.<sup>4</sup> Strife.  
 192. 鬯 Ch'ang.<sup>4</sup> Aromatic herbs.  
 193. 鬲 Li.<sup>4</sup> Cauldron, tripod.  
 194. 鬼 Kuei.<sup>3</sup> Spirit, demon.

## 11 Strokes

195. 魚 Yü.<sup>2</sup> Fish.  
 196. 鳥 Niao.<sup>3</sup> A bird.  
 197. 鹵 Lu.<sup>3</sup> Rock, salt.

198. 鹿 Lu.<sup>4</sup>\* Deer.  
 199. 麥 Mai.<sup>4</sup> Wheat.  
 200. 麻 Ma.<sup>2</sup> Hemp.

## 12 Strokes

201. 黃 Huang.<sup>2</sup> Yellow.  
 202. 黍 Shu.<sup>3</sup> Millet.  
 203. 黑 Hei.<sup>1</sup> Hê. Black.  
 204. 黻 Chih.<sup>3</sup> Embroidery.

## 13 Strokes

205. 黽 Min.<sup>3</sup> Frog.  
 206. 鼎 Ting.<sup>3</sup> Tripod.  
 207. 鼓 Ku.<sup>3</sup> Drum.  
 208. 鼠 Shu.<sup>3</sup> Rat.

## 14—17 Strokes

209. 鼻 Pi.<sup>5</sup> Nose.  
 210. 齊 Ch'i.<sup>2</sup> Uniform, all.  
 211. 齒 Ch'ih.<sup>3</sup> Teeth.  
 212. 龍 Lung.<sup>2</sup> Dragon.  
 213. 龜 Kuei.<sup>1</sup> Tortoise.  
 214. 箛 Yo.<sup>4</sup>\* Flute, pipe.



INDEX TO CHINESE CHARACTERS  
ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED

AI	733 盞	1022 吵	484 盛	251 七
20 哎	862 戰	CHÊ	547 稱	354 期
319 媿	CH'AN	108 這	766 城	362 其
402 愛	1199 產	186 者	768 程	433 棋
797 碍	CHIANG	776 摺	1132 乘	537 器
798 礙	37 張	915 遮	CHI	543 齊
AN	689 掌	CH'Ê	77 給	597 洪
731 暗	709 丈	623 車	85 幾	655 豈
735 安	714 帳	CHÊN	262 紀	656 戚
AO	722 賬	93 真	289 機	826 騎
913 襖	1045 章	435 針	329 基	1043 奇
1025 傲	CH'ANG	436 鍼	431 己	1146 旗
CHA	181 場	971 鎮	493 記	CHIA
1145 插	259 長	CH'ÊN	504 濟	30 家
1180 炸	292 常	789 塵	572 記	149 加
CH'A	457 敞	1110 趁	578 雞	220 傢
42 茶	780 常	CHÊNG	730 計	266 甲
223 叉	972 倡	358 正	813 集	424 駕
320 差	1107 唱	542 整	864 極	601 咖
988 察	CHIAO	770 掙	872 急	626 價
CHAI	612 找	985 症	937 濟	978 稼
648 責	633 照	1152 政	967 既	1019 架
CHAN	637 趙	CH'ÊNG	1052 擠	1069 假
216 站	CH'AO	73 氣	CH'I	CHIANG
	447 潮	78 沏	73 氣	92 獎
	846 炒	252 承	202 起	243 醬
		307 成		336 講



421 匠	1046 節	364 致	1177 侵	CH'IU
951 將	1186 械	501 至		405 球
1174 降	CH'IEH	737 枝	CHING	949 求
	801 切	926 指	201 京	1084 秋
CH'IANC		989 職	375 經	CH'IUNG
674 强	CHIEN	992 治	479 井	933 窮
890 墻	61 見	1086 緻	529 淨	
	255 賤	1130 隻	800 鏡	CHO
CHIAO	491 件	1193 織	849 景	55 着
17 叫	932 健	CH'IH	900 睛	231 棹
326 教	955 漸	65 喫	910 勁	232 桌
407 脚	965 減	226 匙	950 竟	
618 椒	1039 剪	555 尺	980 靜	CHIOU
747 覺	CH'IEN	822 池	987 警	936 罽
825 轎	120 鉛	924 齒		CH'OU
1024 驕	204 錢	928 持	CH'ING	170 抽
1037 較	335 前		32 請	669 酬
1038 絞	342 千	CHIN	208 情	694 綢
	475 鈞	33 進	258 清	
CHIEH	622 籤	103 盡	717 輕	CHU
185 街	819 欠	193 今		53 住
207 借	969 謙	205 緊	CHIU	497 煮
310 結	1114 牽	381 近	45 就	581 猪
571 界	CHIH	545 斤	337 九	664 主
610 戒	12 知	910 勁	607 酒	739 燭
620 芥	142 紙	1119 金	634 舊	1049 諸
638 姐	248 只	CH'IN	699 久	
719 結	347 之	299 親	793 究	CH'U
993 介			1126 救	213 厨

276 處	512 重	CHIÜEH	230 放	277 府
357 初	1204 眾	407 脚	796 妨	291 夫
462 出		747 覺		297 父
1205 楚	CH'UNG		FEI	396 伏
	868 充	CHÜN	287 非	534 咐
CHUAN	1020 衝	865 軍	288 飛	647 負
467 轉			472 費	666 服
889 磚	CHIÜ	ERH	602 啡	1008 副
	219 句	51 兒	986 匪	1197 複
CH'UAN	221 具	62 二		
711 穿	671 據	897 耳	FÊN	HAI
871 船	791 居		159 分	311 孩
	850 局	FA	374 份	832 害
CHUANG	940 矩	128 法	533 吩	886 海
488 裝	1060 鞠	446 發	1010 粉	
977 莊		763 乏		HAN
	CH'Ü	866 闕	FÊNG	285 漢
CH'UANG	14 去	920 髮	325 奉	286 旱
442 窗	461 取		449 縫	753 汗
751 牀	1165 趣	FAN	696 封	
		67 飯	803 風	HIANG
CH'UI	CHÜAN	339 繙	979 豐	1149 行
1124 吹	166 捲	340 翻		
	306 眷	976 範	FO	HIAO
CHUN	930 絹	1016 煩	1091 佛	34 好
416 準				723 號
	CH'UAN	FANG	FU	
CHUNG	318 犬	146 方	19 福	HIÊN
81 中	474 全	214 房	256 甫	132 很
380 鐘	947 勸			
511 種				

HO	469 匣	199 鞋	HSIU	1082 湖
46 喝	566 狹	515 歌	417 修	1128 虎
145 和	901 瞎	1006 瀉	452 鏤	HUA
463 合	1190 嚇	HSIEN	513 休	44 話
470 盒	HSIANG	23 先	916 袖	708 花
659 何	316 相	137 現	HSIUNG	HUAI
1081 河	468 箱	401 閒	269 兄	673 壞
HOU	477 向	437 線	HSÜ	HUAN
211 候	518 想	438 綾	272 虛	69 還
423 後	662 詳	615 鹹	351 須	141 歡
962 厚	851 像	870 縣	388 許	527 換
HSI	1070 鄉	968 限	935 恤	HUANG
118 西	1075 響	1118 險	HSÜAN	240 黃
140 喜	1076 响	HSIN	1191 宣	HUI
304 惜	1103 香	104 心	HSÜEH	50 會
514 息	1169 項	368 新	97 學	57 回
536 席	1174 降	668 信	1078 雪	788 灰
538 洗	HSIAO	966 薪	HSÜN	1150 滙
663 細	271 小	HSING	938 訓	IIUN
721 係	532 曉	26 姓	HU	309 婚
888 希	856 消	131 行	161 壺	820 昏
996 習	945 效	209 形	443 戶	IIUNG
1108 戲	HSIEH	353 星	617 胡	808 紅
HSIA	40 謝	728 興	1051 護	HUO
234 下	139 寫	873 幸	70 或	
394 夏	153 些			

168 火	JĒN	K'AI	860 靠	757 顛
683 貨	7 人	456 開	KĒN	KOU
729 夥	420 認	KAN	130 跟	244 夠
767 活	649 任	47 敢	680 根	K'OU
I	1014 忍	195 幹	K'ĒN	5 口
2 一	JIH	392 趕	834 肯	925 扣
76 以	769 日	528 乾	KĒNG	KU
96 易	JO	792 干	225 羹	502 雇
101 意	1028 惹	1147 桿	265 庚	583 骨
370 藝	JOU	K'AN	393 更	961 故
385 已	576 肉	15 看	K'ĒNG	K'U
516 椅	JU	KANG	840 坑	495 苦
705 宜	576 肉	172 鋼	KO	562 褲
772 衣	720 縛	487 缸	109 個	773 窟
816 醫	944 入	824 剛	645 哥	KUA
909 胰	1032 儒	K'ANG	745 隔	762 刮
995 益	JUNG	931 康	795 各	786 挂
1095 蟻	95 容	1113 扛	904 酪	802 颯
1196 議	750 絨	1176 抗	1033 割	917 掛
JAN	KAI	KAO	1201 革	1121 瓜
506 然	415 改	135 告	K'O	KUAI
JANG	428 概	267 高	3 課	1044 怪
526 讓	480 蓋	K'AO	72 客	K'UAI
JĒ	628 該	237 烤	75 可	143 塊
584 熱			391 刻	

246 筴	990 愧	595 啦	183 裏	654 臉
293 快		686 拉	279 離	716 簾
KUAN	KUN	738 蠟	282 里	1120 煉
	681 棍	LAI	355 禮	1122 蓮
119 管	K'UN	21 來	541 俐	1194 聯
444 關	964 困	LAN	546 釐	LIN
837 館		712 懶	604 梨	598 淋
841 館	KUNG	LANG	636 力	790 鄰
876 慣	290 工	317 郎	785 璃	LING
1050 觀	296 共	882 浪	831 厲	300 令
K'UAN	323 公	1207 朗	1012 立	341 零
565 寬	691 恭	LAO	LIA	540 伶
KUANG	1061 躬	398 勞	188 倆	614 另
	K'UNG	520 老	LIANG	697 領
434 逛	389 恐	814 落	171 兩	LIU
848 光	517 空	LEI	549 量	212 六
1160 廣	KUO	1077 雷	550 糧	490 留
K'UANG	66 過	1164 累	585 涼	LO
448 框	82 國	LÊNG	624 輛	465 螺
660 誑	242 果	748 冷	734 亮	809 蘿
KUEI	548 裹	LI	LIAO	814 落
25 貴	K'UO	27 李	35 了	1017 囉
410 規	867 擴	74 理	564 料	1099 駱
690 櫃	LA	182 裡	1178 略	1101 駱
779 歸	360 腊	LIEN	641 憐	LOU
K'UEI	361 臘	641 憐	499 樓	
874 虧				

744 爐	184 賣	MIAO	1003 脈	NEI
LU	981 麥	1088 廟	1041 磨	1153 內
283 路	MAN	MIEH	MOU	NÊNG
573 錄	414 慢	758 滅	1135 謀	418 能
744 爐	485 滿	MIEN	MU	1007 濃
1195 陸	MANG	238 麪	298 母	NI
LUN	217 忙	379 面	332 牧	106 你
625 論	MAO	701 免	338 目	173 呢
LUNG	174 毛	771 勉	450 木	726 泥
18 隆	197 帽	911 棉	991 模	NIAO
774 窿	654 貌	MIN	NA	1133 鳥
899 雙	1136 貓	1200 民	59 那	NIEN
LÜ	MEI	MING	154 拿	125 唸
608 呂	144 墨	192 明	715 哪	261 年
836 旅	373 每	260 名	983 納	NIN
1102 驢	644 妹	999 命	NAI	254 您
MA	743 煤	MO	599 奶	NIU
31 嗎	877 美	68 沒	698 耐	589 牛
613 媽	MÊN	112 麼	NAN	NO
685 馬	4 門	144 墨	99 難	679 挪
887 碼	122 們	359 末	275 南	NAO
906 麻	MÊNG	799 抹	312 男	818 腦
1094 媽	1183 盟	907 摩	1109 鬧	1067 暖
MAI	MI	981 麥		
179 買	982 米	991 模		

NUNG	582 排	P'AO	661 碰	704 便
1007 濃	1202 派	41 泡		852 變
		569 跑	PI	921 辦
NÜ	PAN	912 袍	88 敵	
314 女	322 辦		121 筆	P'IEN
	345 半	PEI	350 必	71 偏
O	498 搬	80 備	395 避	588 片
1140 惡	1208 班	156 盃	567 比	704 便
1157 餓		157 杯	746 壁	
	P'AN	200 北	973 畢	P'IN
PA	229 盤	810 萄	1054 彼	603 蘋
22 吧	650 盼	905 臂	1142 閉	1002 品
102 把		1026 卑		
294 八	PANG	1105 背	P'I	PING
630 罷	218 幫	1166 輩	724 皮	98 並
953 拔	1013 榜	1179 被	1011 脾	445 病
			1115 匹	596 冰
P'A	P'ANG	P'EI	1158 啤	600 餅
249 怕	839 旁	426 陪		
		665 佩	PIAO	P'ING
PAI	PAO	1005 配	377 表	177 瓶
281 百	239 包		P'IAO	278 平
356 拜	305 寶	P'EN	843 票	603 蘋
557 白	927 保	113 本		
611 擺	963 薄		PIEH	PO
1185 敗	1068 飽	P'EN	593 菠	593 菠
	1104 抱	929 盆	160 別	784 玻
P'AI	1141 報			881 波
411 牌	1188 暴	P'ENG	PIEN	963 薄
412 拍	1210 雹	175 朋	494 邊	1161 播

P'O	678 色	SHĒN	334 士	1138 鼠
574 破		111 甚	382 視	
830 簾	SHAI	376 身	454 試	SHUA
1087 披	678 色	1031 深	464 式	371 耍
			510 拾	923 刷
PU	SHAN	SHĒNG	551 石	
11 不	399 山	24 生	639 識	SHUANG
352 補	775 衫	484 盛	667 失	198 雙
530 布	1074 閃	553 升	919 嗜	1079 霜
559 步	1139 善	817 剩	954 室	
805 簿		827 牲	1065 食	SHUI
	SHANG	885 賸		8 誰
P'U	89 上	941 聲	SHOU	151 水
605 葡	324 商	975 省	268 壽	759 睡
718 鋪	815 傷	1034 繩	509 收	
821 普	908 裳	1184 勝	594 熟	SHUO
	943 賞		765 手	43 說
SAI	1090 尙	SHIH	939 守	SO
460 塞		10 是	1189 受	451 鎖
	SHAO	86 時		486 所
SAN	163 燒	94 實	SHU	1018 唆
107 三	227 勺	110 什	114 書	
833 傘	349 少	180 市	264 數	SSŪ
1053 散	702 稍	226 匙	397 暑	155 四
	994 紹	245 十	594 熟	215 司
SAO		247 使	727 舒	367 思
507 掃	SHĒ	303 世	922 梳	466 絲
	590 舌	321 事	1066 樞	777 廁
SĒ	707 捨	333 師	1080 樹	1137 死
460 塞				



1171 私	1129 踏	TANG	524 凳	TIEH
SU	TAI	48 當	732 燈	228 磔
136 訴	206 帶	725 擋	T'ËNG	741 疊
328 穌	554 袋	1203 黨	883 騰	1001 跌
893 俗	676 歹	T'ANG	1004 疹	T'IEH
922 梳	914 戴	302 堂	TI	1154 貼
1064 素	957 待	372 糖	I 第	TIEN
SUAN	T'AI	577 湯	60 的	116 典
505 算	64 太	752 騎	270 弟	150 點
SUI	148 台	844 趟	348 地	632 店
263 歲	503 抬	TAO	1175 抵	736 電
365 隨	958 態	13 道	T'I	829 顛
706 雖	TAN	87 到	406 踢	T'IEN
SUNG	378 但	222 刀	419 替	191 天
58 送	386 耽	250 倒	670 提	496 甜
609 宋	646 擔	1048 導	754 雇	761 添
TA	787 揮	T'AO	823 題	TING
83 大	806 蛋	606 萄	934 體	196 頂
403 打	956 淡	1096 討	TIAO	308 訂
1030 達	1181 彈	1206 套	525 掉	422 定
T'A	T'AN	TÊ	T'IAO	473 釘
63 他	439 談	56 得	224 調	T'ING
194 她	440 譚	1172 德	523 條	127 聽
1089 塔	535 毯	TÊNG	1106 挑	531 聽
	742 炭	54 等	1162 跳	672 挺

838 停	TS'A	TSAO	TSU	1029 聽
TIU	782 擦	482 早	1155 祖	TU
521 丟	TSAI	760 澡	1168 族	38 都
TO	29 在	1144 造	1192 組	126 讀
236 多	49 再	TS'AO	TS'U	273 度
898 朶	1131 栽	257 草	619 醋	330 督
	TS'AI	TSÊ	682 粗	1156 肚
T'O	91 才	648 責	TSUAN	T'U
315 托	169 柴	TS'Ê	892 鑽	455 塗
652 妥	563 材	777 廁	TSUI	591 土
1059 脫	586 柴	TSÊN	425 最	1021 突
1100 駝	640 猜	210 怎	657 罪	TUAN
TOU	693 財	TSO	1023 嘴	539 端
38 都	710 裁	39 坐	TSUN	675 短
552 斗	1116 踩	123 作	301 尊	1036 斷
592 豆	TSAN	124 做	998 遵	TUI
740 抖	1073 讚	190 昨	TS'UN	52 對
T'OU	TS'AN	413 座	556 寸	688 堆
344 頭	845 餐	1062 左	842 村	854 隊
458 偷	1187 殘	TS'O	TSUNG	T'UI
1173 投	TSANG	134 錯	476 總	587 腿
TSA	489 髒	TSOU	997 縱	1058 退
187 咱	TS'ANG	203 走	TS'UNG	TUN
1198 雜	1092 蒼		400 從	1040 鈍

1071 頓	WAI	558 文	579 羊	1097 厭
TUNG	519 外	713 蚊	749 陽	YIN
84 懂	WAN	764 溫	YAO	331 音
117 東	138 完	859 聞	133 要	408 因
366 冬	158 碗	880 穩	453 鑰	522 蔭
500 動	233 晚	WO	755 藥	783 銀
1083 凍	343 萬	9 我	756 葯	942 陰
T'UNG	369 玩	WU	861 謠	YING
295 統	1009 丸	189 五	884 搖	274 英
471 筒	WANG	235 午	1098 咬	627 應
483 桶	28 王	387 誤	1123 遙	895 硬
642 通	284 往	658 無	YEH	1093 蠅
847 銅	404 網	684 物	178 也	1148 影
TZŪ	492 忘	687 屋	327 耶	YO
115 字	651 望	855 伍	441 夜	384 約
129 子	WEI	1085 霧	812 野	453 鑰
430 自	313 位	1163 舞	974 業	755 藥
643 姊	409 爲	1209 武	1047 頁	756 葯
878 滋	700 未	YA	YEN	869 約
TZ'ŭ	703 微	36 呀	147 硯	1159 樂
695 次	794 衛	621 牙	152 研	YU
1055 此	879 味	811 鴨	164 煙	6 有
1125 疵	1117 危	902 啞	165 烟	176 友
WA	1167 維	YANG	383 眼	241 油
918 襪	WĒN	162 樣	616 鹽	1042 由
	253 問	167 洋	631 言	1063 右
			677 顏	

1151 郵	YÜN			
YUNG	853 運			
16 用	875 傘			
95 容				
1111 湧				
YÜ				
79 預				
363 餘				
544 於				
580 魚				
804 雨				
807 芋				
894 語				
970 育				
YÜAN				
100 願				
280 遠				
478 園				
508 院				
960 緣				
1170 原				
YÜEH				
90 月				
635 越				
1159 樂				

